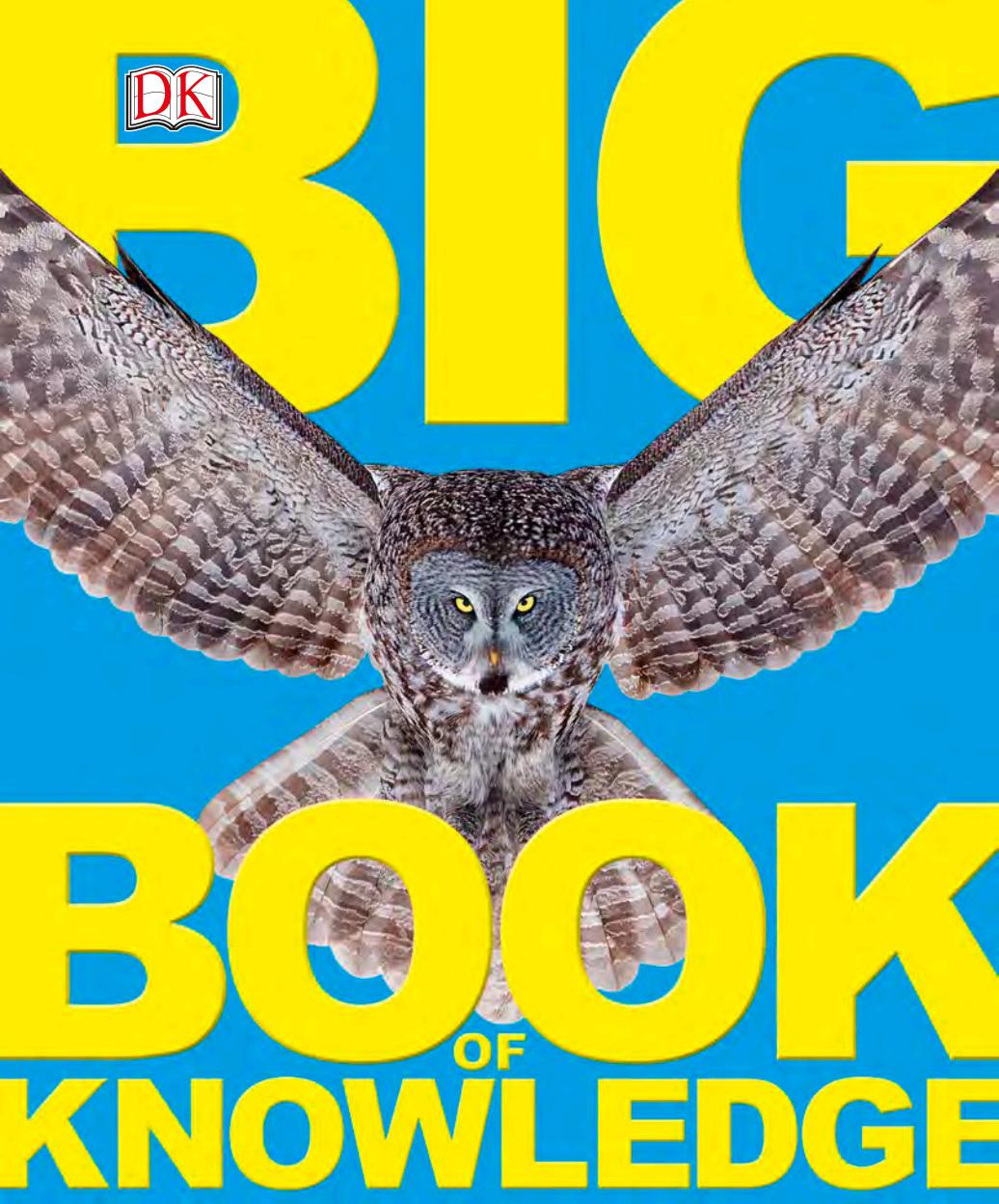


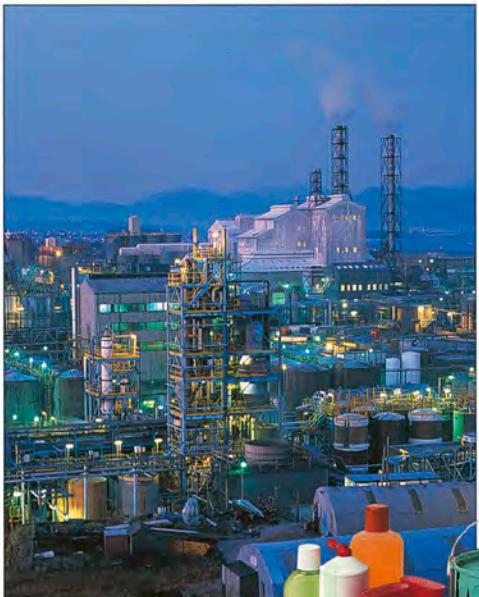


BIG BOOK OF KNOWLEDGE

A large, detailed photograph of a Great Grey Owl is superimposed on the title. The owl is shown from a slightly elevated angle, its wings spread wide, revealing intricate patterns of brown, grey, and white feathers. Its head is turned towards the camera, with intense yellow eyes and a dark, hooked beak. The owl's body and the bottom of its wings are visible at the bottom of the frame, partially overlapping the word 'KNOWLEDGE'.



BIG Book of KNOWLEDGE





Penguin
Random
House

FIRST EDITION 1994

General Editor Sarah Phillips
General Art Editors Ruth Shane, Paul Wilkinson
Subject Editors Francesca Baines, Val Burton, Deborah Chancellor, Roz Fishel, Hilary Hockman, Rosemary McCormick, Sarah Miller, Sean O'Connell, Jean Rustane, Anna de Verteuil
Subject Art Editors Flora Awolaja, Liz Black, Amanda Carroll, Richard Clemson, Ross George, Sarah Goodwin, Sara Nunan, Ron Stobart, Andrew Walker, Sonia Whillcock
Designers Wayne Blades, Alison Greenhalgh, James Hunter, Marianne Markham, Tuong Nguyen, Alison Verity, Samantha Webb
Picture Researchers Lorna Ainger, Caroline Brook, Venetia Bullen, Anna Lord, Miriam Sharland, Paul Snelgrove
Subject Consultants Dr Michael Benton, Nicholas Booth, Martyn Bramwell, Roger Bridgman, Eryl Davies, Liza Dibble, John Farndon, Adrian Gilbert, Alan Harris, Paul Hilyard, Dr Malcolm MacGarvin, Diana Maine, Margaret Mulvihill, Dr Fiona Payne, Chris Pellett, Dr Richard Walker, Shane Winsler
Production Manager Ian Paton
Production Assistant Harriet Maxwell
Editorial Director Jonathan Reed
Design Director Ed Day

This American Edition, 2019
First American Edition, 2002

Published in the United States by DK Publishing
1450 Broadway, 8th Floor, New York, NY 10018

Copyright © 2002, 2019 Dorling Kindersley Limited
DK, a Division of Penguin Random House LLC
19 20 21 22 23 10 9 8 7 6 5 3 4 2 1
001-312776-Mar/2019

All rights reserved.

Without limiting the rights under the copyright reserved above, no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Photographers: Peter Anderson, Steve Bartholomew, Peter Chadwick, Tina Chambers, Andy Crawford, Colour Company, Geoff Dann, John Downes, Michael Dunning, John Edwards, Lynton Gardiner, Steve Gorton, Colin Keates, Tim Kelly, Gary Kevin, Chris King, Dave King, Cyril Laubscher, Kevin Mallett, Ray Moller, David Murray, Tim Ridley, David Rudkin, Karl Shone, James Stevenson, John Swift, Harry Taylor, Andreas von Einsiedel, Jerry Young. **Illustrators:** Graham Allen, Norman Barber, David Bergen, Roby Braun, Peter Bull, Joanna Cameron, Jim Channell, Bob Corley, Sandra Doyle, David Fathers, Roy Flocks, Tony Gibbons, Mike Gillah, Tony Graham, Peter Griffiths, Terry Hadler, Edwina Hannah, Charlotte Hard, Kaye Hodges, Keith Hume, Ray Hutchins, Aziz Khan, Pavel Kostal, Norman Lacey, Stuart Lafford, Kenneth Lilly, Linden Artists, Steve Lings, Mike Loates, Chris Lyon, Alan Male, Richard Manning, Janos Marffy, Josephine Martin, Annabel Milne, Sean Milne, Patrick Mulray, Richard Orr, Alex Pang, Darren Pattenden, Liz Pepperell, Jane Pickering, Gill Platt, Maurice Pledger, Sebastian Quigley, Christine Robins, Eric Rome, Michelle Ross, Simon Roulstone, Colin Salmon, John Searl, Pete Serjeant, Rob Shone, Clive Spong, Roger Stewart, John Temperton, Grose Thurston, Graham Turner, Brian Watson, Phil Weare, Sonia Whillcock, John Woodcock, Michael Woods. **Models:** Celia Allen, Roby Braun, Atlas Models, Cheltenham Cutaway Exhibits Ltd, Crystal Palace Park, London, Arril Johnson, Donks Models, Centaur Studios, Norrie Carr Model Agency, Peter Griffiths, John Holmes, Scallywags Model Agency, Truly Scrumptious Child Model Agency.

THIS EDITION 2019

Produced for DK by
Dynamo Limited
Second Floor, Exeter Bank Chambers, 67 High Street, Exeter EX4 3DT

Project Editor Ben Ffrancon Davies
US Editor Karyn Gerhard
Subject Consultants Peter Chrish, Penny Johnson, Susan Partie, Kristina Routh, Chris Woodford, John Woodward
Jacket Editor Emma Dawson
Jacket Designer Parthanna Dixit, Surabhi Wadhwa-Gandhi
DTP Designer Rakesh Kumar
Jackets Editorial Coordinator Priyanka Sharma
Managing Jackets Editor Saloni Singh
Jacket Design Development Manager Sophia MTT
Producer, Pre-production Robert Dunn
Producer Meskerem Berhane
Managing Editor Lisa Gillespie
Managing Art Editor Owen Peyton Jones
Publisher Andrew Macintyre
Associate Publishing Director Liz Wheeler
Art Director Karen Self
Publishing Director Johnathan Metcalf

Published in Great Britain by Dorling Kindersley Limited
A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress.
ISBN: 978-1-4645-8041-5

DK books are available at special discounts when purchased in bulk for sales promotions, premiums, fund-raising, or educational use. For details, contact: DK Publishing Special Markets, 1450 Broadway, 8th Floor, New York, NY 10018
SpecialSales@dk.com
Printed and bound in Malaysia

A WORLD OF IDEAS:
SEE ALL THERE IS TO KNOW

www.dk.com



BIG Book OF KNOWLEDGE



CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 EARTH AND SPACE 8



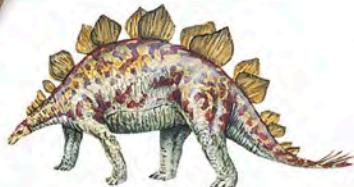
EARTH 10



SPACE 34



INSECTS AND
SPIDERS 108



DINOSAURS 132



BIRDS 152



PLANT LIFE 58



MAMMALS
186



SEA LIFE
84

THE
HUMAN
BODY
218



CHAPTER 3 **OUR WORLD** 248

PEOPLE
IN THE
PAST 250



ARTS AND
ENTERTAINMENT
294



FOOD AND
FARMING 320



PEOPLE AND PLACES 348

CHAPTER 4 **SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY** 392

SCIENCE
AND
MACHINES
394



ENERGY AND INDUSTRY 428

TRANSPORTATION 452



INDEX 474

HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

It's easy to use the *Big Book of Knowledge*. Start by looking at the contents page. There you will see that the book has four chapters, which are divided into different subject areas. Find a subject or a picture that interests you, and turn to that page. If you can't find what you want on the contents page, look it up in the index at the back. This is an alphabetical list of everything covered in the book. After each entry, there is a list of all the pages on which that topic is mentioned.

See how the index works by looking up "butterflies." Turn to all the pages listed after the entry until you find the main page for Butterflies shown here.

This page uses a picture of that section to tell you about some of the regular features you will find in the *Big Book of Knowledge*.

Title and Introduction

Each double page deals with a different subject. The title tells you exactly what the subject is, and the introduction gives you some basic information about it.

BUTTERFLIES

Butterflies are perhaps the most beautiful of all insects. It is amazing to think that a fat, leaf-eating caterpillar can become a brightly colored, fluttering creature of the air. The change happens in the butterfly chrysalis. The caterpillar's body is broken down and completely changed. After about four weeks, a fully formed butterfly emerges.

Time to wake up
The butterfly comes out of the chrysalis in three stages. During this time it is very open to attack by hungry birds or spiders.

1. No longer a caterpillar, a butterfly comes out of the chrysalis to its wings crumpled up.

2. The butterfly must stay still for many hours, as blood is pumped from the abdomen to stretch the wings. Later it holds its wings up to let them harden.

3. When its wings have hardened, the butterfly can fly off to find its first meal of nectar.

BUTTERFLIES

Butterflies are perhaps the most beautiful of all insects. It is amazing to think that a fat, leaf-eating caterpillar can become a brightly colored, fluttering creature of the air. The change happens in the butterfly chrysalis. The caterpillar's body is broken down and completely changed. After about four weeks, a fully formed butterfly emerges.

Time to wake up

The butterfly comes out of the chrysalis in three stages. During this time it is very open to attack by hungry birds or spiders.

1. No longer a caterpillar, a beautiful butterfly comes out of the chrysalis with its wings crumpled up.

Monarchs on the move
Most butterflies are born, live, and die in one place. The Monarch butterfly flies to the eastern and western coasts of North America. Millions of monarchs fly south to the forests of California and Mexico. When warm weather returns to their first home, they fly north again.

116

Captions

Most double pages feature one large, exciting picture. All around it, captions point out important details. They will help you to look carefully at the picture and understand it.

Measurements

In most cases, units of measurement are spelled out, but in some places you will come across the following abbreviations.

cm = centimeters

m = meters

km = kilometers

km/h = kilometers per hour

l = liters



117



Scaly wings

The wings of both butterflies and moths are covered with tiny scales, which overlap like the tiles on a roof. Bright colors can either be used to attract a mate, or to warn predators that the butterfly, or moth, is not good to eat.

Close-ups

Occasionally, you will find an image that shows you something in more detail. This picture, for instance, shows you what a butterfly's wing looks like up close!

In the background

Some butterflies make a tasty meal for birds. But if they are able to blend in with their background, they may avoid being eaten. The open wings of the Indian leaf butterfly have a striking orange pattern. But when its wings are closed, the butterfly looks exactly like an old, dry leaf.

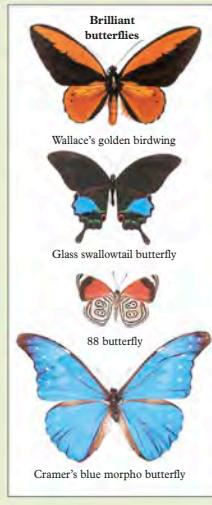


Stories in a Box

Amazing facts or stories appear in a box. Sometimes boxes suggest experiments to try, or things to do that will help you understand the subject better.

Picture Catalogs

On some pages, you will find a row of small pictures that are similar to the large one. Try to figure out the differences between them.







CHAPTER 1

EARTH AND SPACE

To us, our planet Earth seems enormous, but if we were able to gaze at it across the vastness of space, it would look like a tiny speck. It is one of the eight planets that are constantly hurtling around a star—our sun—along individual elliptical paths called orbits.

Together, the sun and its planets are known as the solar system. This, in turn, is part of a cluster of millions of stars and planets, called a galaxy. Our Galaxy, which is shaped like a spiral, is called the Milky Way. It is so huge that a jet would take more than 100 billion years to fly across it. Scientists think that there are at least 200 billion different galaxies in our universe.

Stars are made from layers of burning gas around a dense core. Some planets are also mostly gas, but other planets and moons are rocky, like Earth.

Earth Space



EARTH



Imagine you are an astronaut looking at Earth from your spacecraft. What you see is a big blue ball covered with swirling clouds that hide features such as continents and mountains. The ball looks so blue because more than two-thirds of it is covered with water in the form of oceans, seas, lakes and rivers.

The surface of Earth, called the crust, moves all the time, but this movement is so slow that we are not aware of it. Eventually, however, pressure builds up and causes earthquakes. Changes also happen when the crust is worn away by water or huge blocks of moving ice called glaciers, or when volcanoes erupt.

Our planet can support life only because it gets light and heat from the sun. Without it, the Earth would be a cold, dark and dead place.

The Himalaya mountains in Nepal look very different from far out in space.





Stalactites
form in
caves.



Sandstone



Pumice



Green
marble



Uluru in Australia is made of sandstone.



Earth photographed
from a satellite

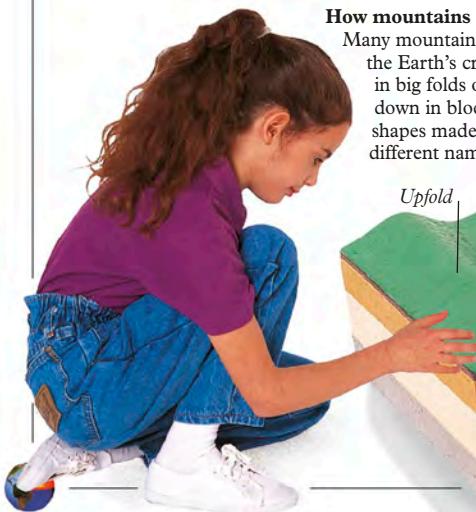


EARTH'S CRUST



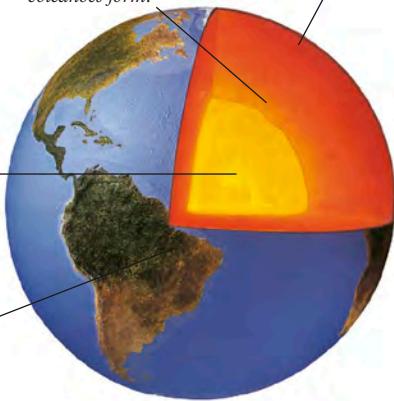
Just like you, Earth has a very thin skin. It is so thin that if you compare it to the whole Earth, it is thinner than the skin of an apple.

Earth's skin, or crust, is made up of rock, built up in layers over millions of years. The layers look like blankets on a bed, with lots of lumps and bumps in them.



The crust is a thin layer of rock between 3.7 and 43.5 miles (6 and 70 kilometers) thick.

The mantle is the layer below the crust. Parts of it are molten where volcanoes form.

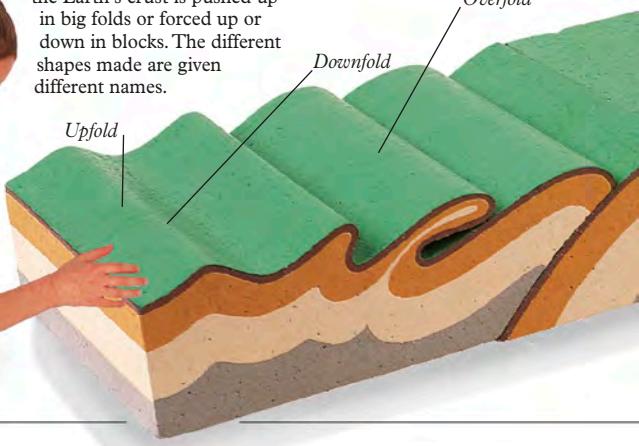


The outer core is made of iron and nickel that have melted to form a liquid.

The inner core is a ball of iron and nickel. It is hotter here than at the outer core, but the ball stays solid.

How mountains are made

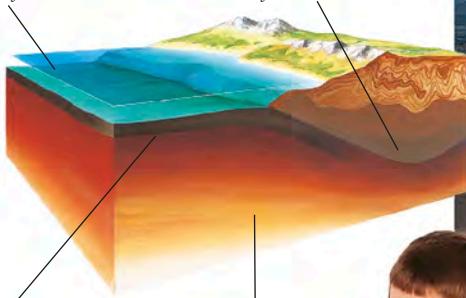
Many mountains are made when the Earth's crust is pushed up in big folds or forced up or down in blocks. The different shapes made are given different names.





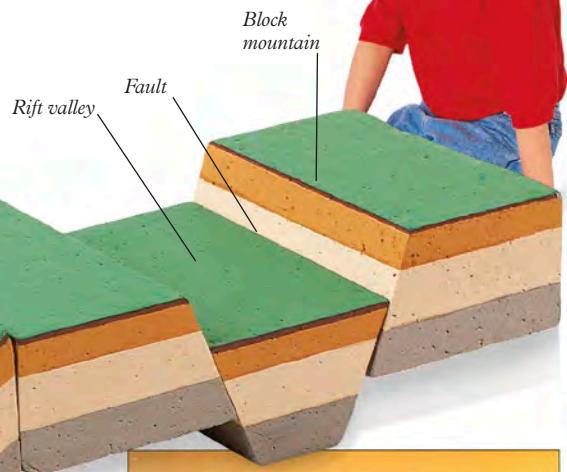
The sea lies on top of the oceanic crust. Some of it is found underneath the edge of the continental crust.

The land is made out of the continental crust. It is thickest where mountains are found.



Under the oceans the crust is as little as 3.7 miles (six kilometers) thick, but under the continents it is up to 43.5 miles (70 kilometers) thick.

The mantle



A long way to go

Did you know that the deepest hole ever drilled into Earth's crust is only 7.5 miles (12 kilometers) deep? To reach the center of the Earth, you would have to drill 500 times deeper.



Going down

This is a rift valley. It was made when a block of land sank down between two long breaks, called faults, in the Earth's crust.



Going up

Here the land has been pushed into giant folds by movements in the Earth's crust. You can see how the crust is made up of lots and lots of layers of rock.





MOVING PLATES



The Earth's surface is not one unbroken piece. It is made up of many pieces that fit together like a giant jigsaw puzzle. These pieces, called plates, move as the mantle slowly moves beneath them. The movement of the plates can cause spectacular effects—earthquakes split the crust, volcanoes form, new land is made, and huge mountain ranges are pushed skyward.

On the move

The plates are never still, they are always moving. In one year they can move about 1 inch (2.5 centimeters), about as much as your fingernails grow in the same amount of time.



The red dots show you the places where earthquakes happen.



All scrunched up
Sometimes, two plates push against each other and then crumple the land to make huge mountain ranges.



Going down
Sometimes, one plate slides under another. It is pushed down into the mantle and melts.



Doing the splits
Sometimes, two plates split apart and lava bubbles up to fill the gap. It hardens and makes new land.



Slip sliding away
Sometimes, two plates slip past each other. This is another kind of movement that causes earthquakes.

Past, present, future

Have you ever wondered what Earth looked like in the past? These pictures show you how the continents have moved over the last 300 million years, and how the world may look 50 million years from now.



The restless Earth

This spot in Iceland is where two plates are moving apart, forming new land in the gap.

These lines show where two plates meet.



Changing places

The land is coming together to make one gigantic continent.



200 MILLION YEARS AGO



200 MILLION YEARS AGO

Worlds apart

The land is drifting apart again. Pangaea is splitting into two, Laurasia and Gondwanaland.

TODAY



Familiar ground

Today, the world looks like this, but the continents are still moving.

50 MILLION YEARS' TIME



Looking Ahead

This is how the world may look in 50 million years. Can you spot how the land has changed its shape? To start you off, find Africa on the globe and see how it has joined up with Europe.



VOLCANOES

When you shake up a can of soda pop and open it, the contents shoot out with a great whoosh! Some volcanoes act a bit like this. With tremendous force, molten (melted) rock bursts through weak parts in the Earth's crust and is hurled high into the sky. This molten rock is called magma when still inside the Earth, and lava after it has erupted.

Volcanoes can be quiet and not erupt for a long time..

Hot springs are often found near volcanoes.



Nature's fireworks

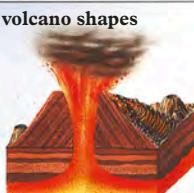
This volcano is putting on its own spectacular fireworks display. The explosions of red-hot lava and ash from the crater look like gigantic "Roman Candles."

The spotter's guide to volcano shapes



Spreading out

The lava from shallow shield volcanoes is runny, so it spreads out in a thin sheet.



Short and plump

Cinder cones are a bit bigger. They are made of ash, which is lava that has turned to dust.



Going up

Composite volcanoes have pointed cones. Their lava is thick and sticky.



River of fire

The red-hot molten rock that is streaming down the sides of this volcano is beautiful but deadly. It is so hot that it can melt steel.



Clouds of ash and gas pour out from the crater.

Molten rock, called magma, rises up the main pipe and any branch pipes.

A volcano builds up from layers of ash and lava.

Branch pipe

Mixed bunch

When lava cools and hardens, it can make rocks with different shapes. Here are three types:



Aa lava



Pahoehoe lava



A volcanic 'bomb'

Magma collects in a chamber found deep underground. It is forced up through cracks and holes in the ground.

EARTHQUAKES



Our planet is a restless place. Several hundred times a day, the ground suddenly rumbles and trembles. Most of the movements are so slight that they are not felt. Others bring disaster.

Big cracks appear in the land, streets buckle, and buildings crumble. Whole towns and cities can be destroyed. Then everything settles down but is totally changed. Earth has shaken and an earthquake has happened.

Fires are started by broken gas pipes and broken electrical cables.



Unsafe ground

This is the San Andreas Fault in California. Earthquakes regularly happen here.

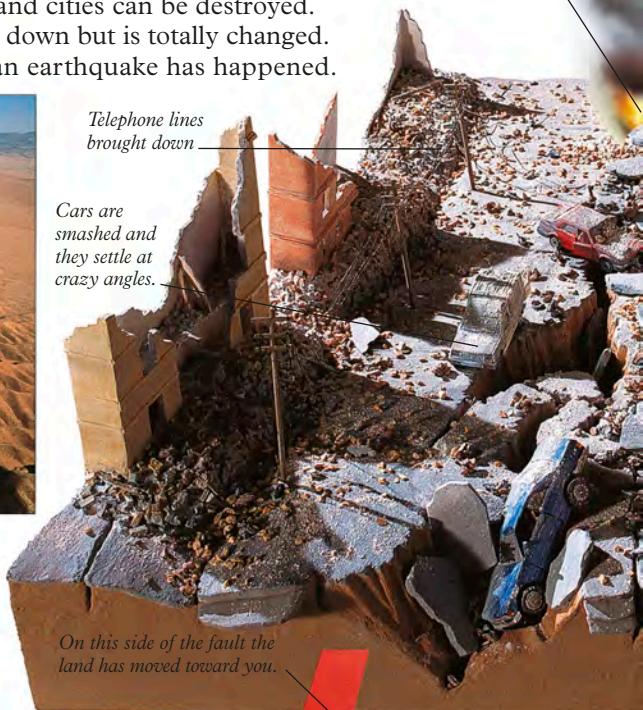
Terror from the sea

Earthquakes under the sea can cause long, giant, destructive waves called tsunamis.

Telephone lines brought down

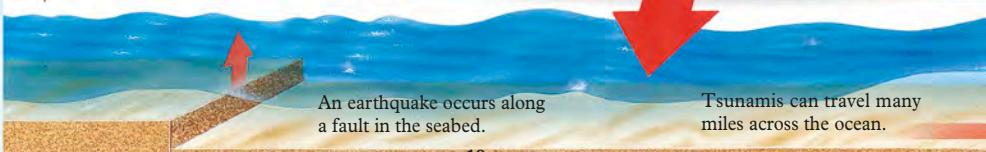
Cars are smashed and they settle at crazy angles.

On this side of the fault the land has moved toward you.



An earthquake occurs along a fault in the seabed.

Tsunamis can travel many miles across the ocean.



Why earthquakes happen

You may think that your feet are firmly on the ground, but Earth's crust is moving all the time. It is made of moving parts called plates. When the plates slide past or into each other, the rocks jolt and send out shock waves.



Shaken up

The Mercalli Scale measures how much the surface of the Earth shakes during an earthquake. There are 12 intensities, or grades. At intensity 1, the effects are not felt, but by intensity 12, the shock waves can be seen and there is total destruction.



What to do in an earthquake

Indoors, lie down under a bed or heavy table, or stand in a doorway or a corner of a room. After a minute, when the tremors will usually have finished, go outside, away from buildings, to a wide-open space.



Earthquake words

The place within the Earth where an earthquake starts is called the focus.

The earthquake is usually strongest at the epicenter. This is the point on the Earth's surface directly above the focus. The study of earthquakes and the shock waves they send out is called seismology.

Destructive force

A tsunami piles up and gets very tall before it crashes onto the shore. It is so powerful that it can smash harbors and towns and sweep ships inland.

A tsunami can be more than 98 feet (30 meters) high and can travel as fast as a jet.





ROCKS



Movements in the Earth's crust are slowly changing the rocks that make up the surface of our planet. Mountains are pushed up and weathered

away, and the fragments moved and made into other rocks. These rocks may be dragged down into the mantle and melted by its fierce heat. When a volcano erupts, the melted rock is thrown to the surface as lava, which cools and hardens as rock. This is broken down by weathering, and so the cycle starts again.



Sedimentary rocks

These are made from bits of rock and plant and animal remains. They are broken into fine pieces and carried by rivers into the sea. They pile up in layers and press together to make solid rock. The Painted Desert, in Arizona, is made of sedimentary rocks.



Limestone



Conglomerate



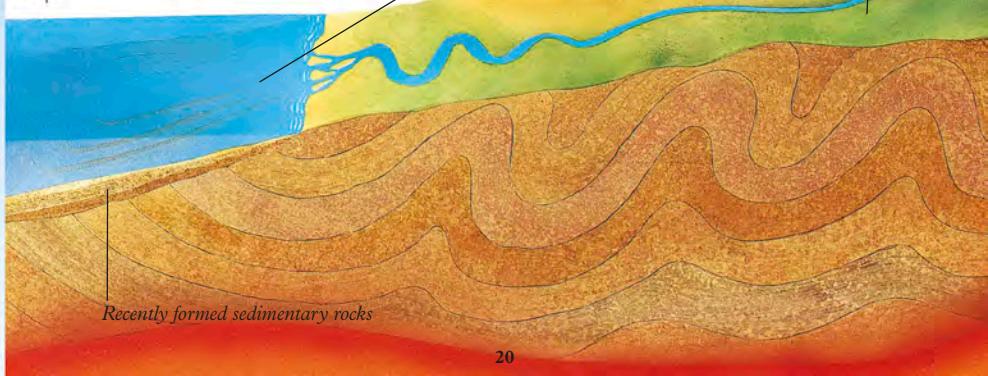
Red sandstone

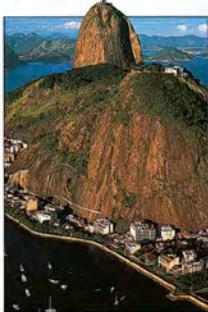
In the beginning

Rocks belong to three basic types. Igneous rocks are made from magma or lava. The word igneous means "fiery." Sedimentary rocks are made in layers from broken rocks. Metamorphic rocks can start off as any type. They are changed by heat and weight and the word metamorphic means "changed."

In time, material moved by rivers and piled up in the sea will become sedimentary rocks.

Rock fragments called sediments are carried by rivers, glaciers, the wind, and the sea,





Igneous rocks

These are made from magma or lava. It cools and hardens inside the Earth's crust or on the surface when it erupts from a volcano. Sugarloaf Mountain in Brazil was once igneous rock under the crust. The rocks above and around it have been worn away.



Obsidian



Granite



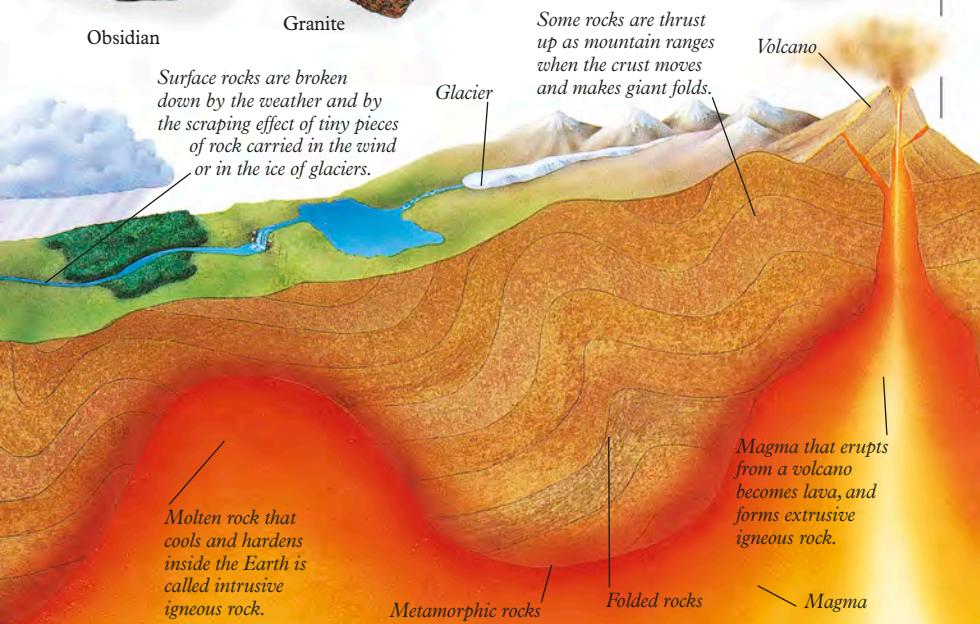
Marble

Metamorphic rocks

These are igneous or sedimentary rocks that are changed by underground heat, underground weight, or both. This marble was once limestone, a sedimentary rock. It was changed into marble by intense heat.



Slate



CAVES

Caves are hollows beneath the surface of the Earth. The biggest ones are all found in rock called limestone and some are huge. The world's biggest cave, in Sarawak, is so large that you could fit 800 tennis courts in it. Yet these caves began simply as cracks or holes in the rock that, over thousands of years, were made bigger by rainwater trickling into them and dissolving the surrounding rock.



Drip ...

The rainwater that seeps into the ground is very slightly acidic and begins to dissolve the limestone.



Drip ...

The rainwater continues to dissolve the rock. It widens the cracks into pits, passages and caves.



Drip

Over thousands of years, the passages and caves may join up to make a huge underground system.

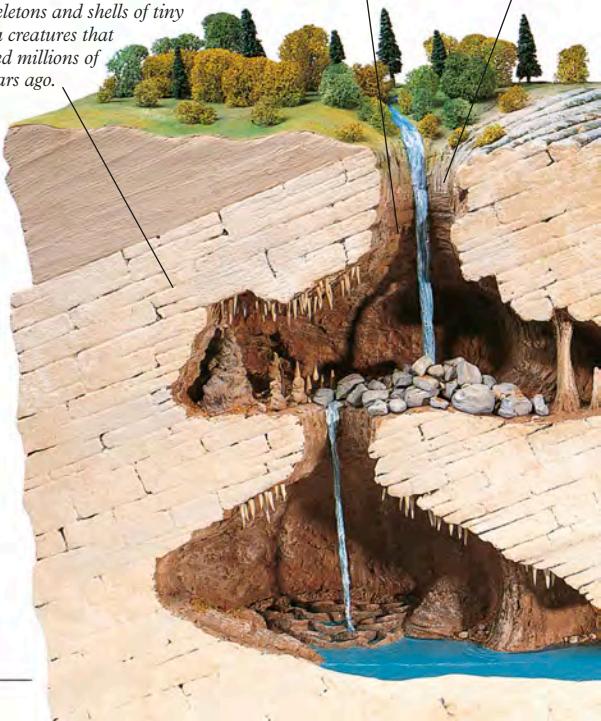
Going down

Water dripping from the ceiling of a cave leaves behind a mineral called calcite. Very slowly, this grows downward in an icicle shape that is called a stalactite.

The stream disappears underground into a pothole.

Limestone is a very common rock. It is made from the skeletons and shells of tiny sea creatures that died millions of years ago.

This pothole, or tunnel, leads straight down through the rock. It was made by a stream wearing away the rock.



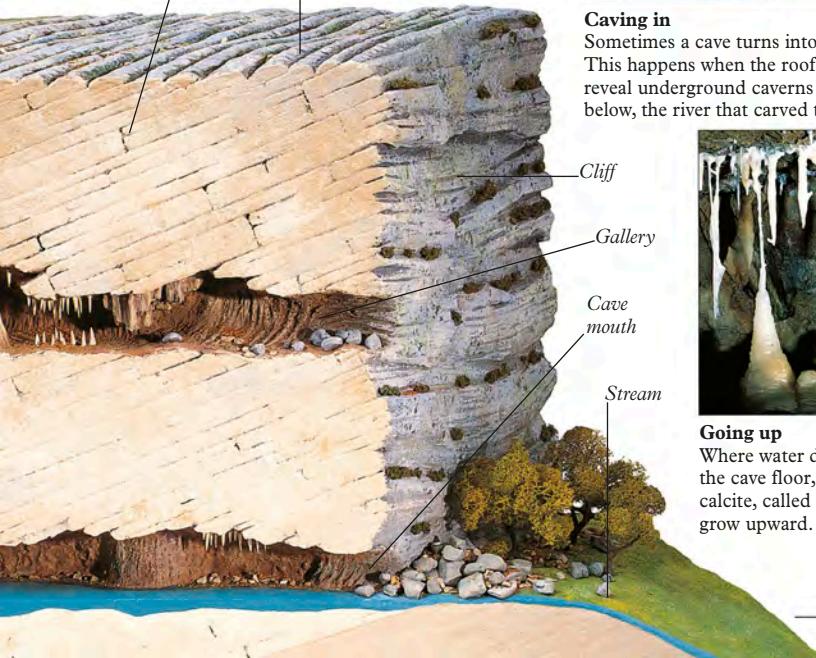


Tunnel of lava

Caves are found in rocks other than limestone. This one is made of lava and is inside a volcano in Hawaii.

Cracks in the rock are widened when rainwater seeps along them.

Limestone pavements are made when the rock dissolves along joint lines.



Caving in

Sometimes a cave turns into a gorge. This happens when the roof falls in to reveal underground caverns and, far below, the river that carved them.

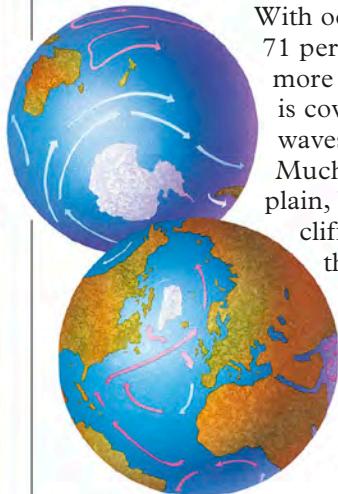


Going up

Where water drips onto the cave floor, columns of calcite, called stalagmites, grow upward.



OCEANS



With oceans and seas making up 71 percent of the Earth's surface, more than two-thirds of our planet is covered with water. Beneath the waves lies a fascinating landscape. Much of the ocean floor is a vast plain, but there are also trenches, cliffs, and mountains, all larger than any found on dry land.

Ocean currents

These show the directions in which water flows.

Cold currents

Warm currents

Underwater canyons are cut by currents flowing over the seabed like rivers.

These underwater islands are called guyots.

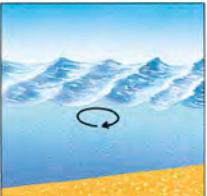
Ebbing and flowing
Tides are made by the sun and moon pulling on the oceans. When the sun, Earth, and moon are in a line, there are large spring tides.

Trenches can be deeper than the highest mountains on land.



Going . . .

The water inside a wave moves around and around in a circle. It is the wind that drives the wave forward.



Going . . .

Near the shore, the circular shape of the wave is changed and it becomes squashed.



Gone

The top of the wave becomes unstable. When it hits the beach, it topples and spills over.



Surface

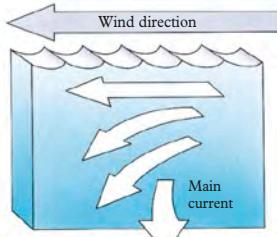
Lighted zone,
up to 660 feet
(200 meters)

Dark zone,
up to 13,000 feet
(4,000 meters)

Deepest zone,
a trench of
36,200 feet
(11,034 meters)

The dark depths

Even in clear water, sunlight cannot reach very far. The oceans become darker and darker the farther down you go, until everything turns inky black.



This island is a volcano that has erupted from the ocean floor.

A long, wide ocean ridge

Water, heated by hot rocks, shoots back into the sea.

Molten rock rises up, cools, and forms new seabed.



Frozen worlds

In Antarctica and the Arctic, the oceans freeze. Icebergs break away from glaciers flowing into the water. Only a tiny part of an iceberg is seen above the surface of the ocean.

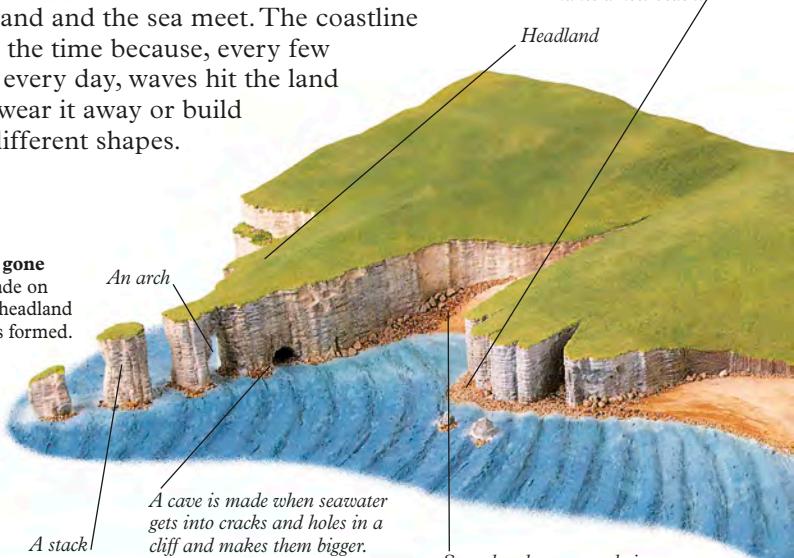




COASTLINES

Have you ever built a sand castle and then watched the sea come in, knock it down, and flatten it? This is what happens to the coastline, the place where the land and the sea meet. The coastline changes all the time because, every few seconds of every day, waves hit the land and either wear it away or build it up into different shapes.

Some waves carry sand and pebbles from one part of the coast and leave them at another. This makes a new beach.



Some beaches are made in bays between headlands where the water is shallow and the waves are weak.

Pounding away

Waves pound the coastline like a giant hammer until huge chunks of rock are broken off. The chunks are then carried away by the sea and flung against the coastline somewhere else.





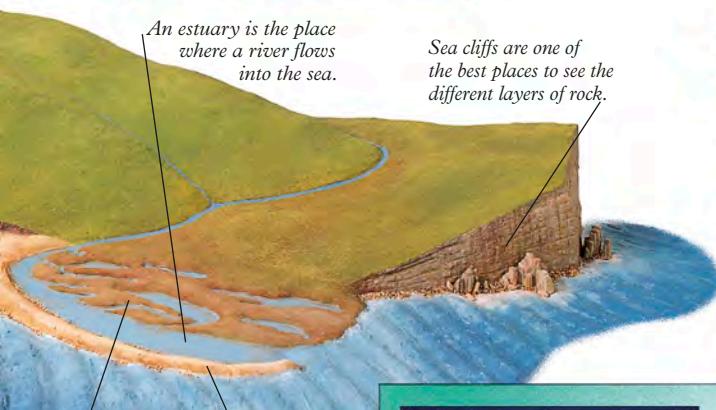
From rocks to sand

Waves roll rocks and boulders backward and forward on the shore. The boulders break into pebbles and then into tiny grains of sand. This change takes hundreds or thousands of years.



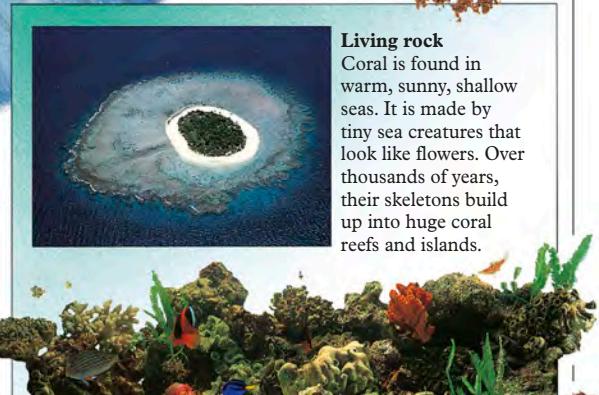
Shifting sands

Dunes are made of sand blown into low hills by the wind.



Mud flats
and marshes

Waves can build sand, mud, and pebbles into a long strip of new land. It is called a spit.



Living rock

Coral is found in warm, sunny, shallow seas. It is made by tiny sea creatures that look like flowers. Over thousands of years, their skeletons build up into huge coral reefs and islands.

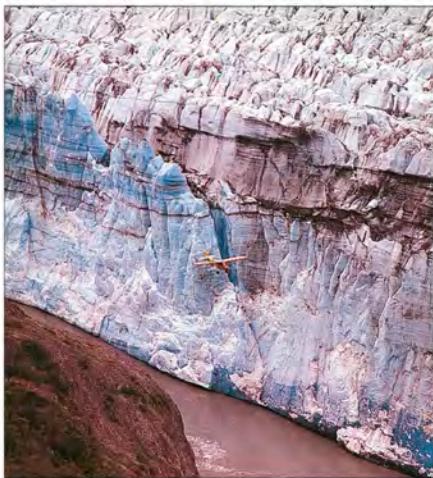


GLACIERS



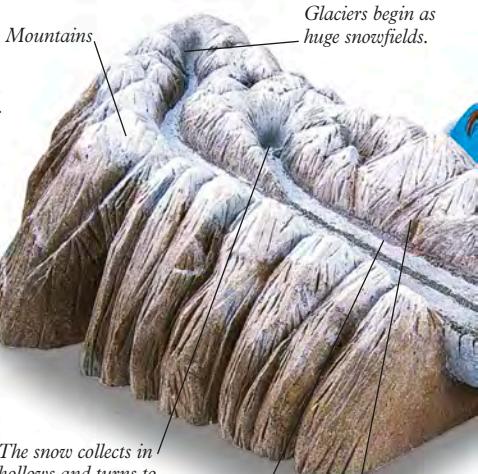
A glacier is like a huge river of ice that starts its life as a tiny snowflake. As more and more snow falls and builds up, in time it gets squashed under its own weight and turns to ice.

A glacier moves very slowly downhill. Because it is very heavy, it can push rock along like a bulldozer. It can wear away the sides of mountains, smooth off the jagged bits from rocks, and move giant boulders over dozens of miles.



Close-up view

The pilot in this plane is watching a wall of ice break away from a glacier and begin to crash into the water below.



Glaciers usually move downhill very slowly, no more than a few inches each day.

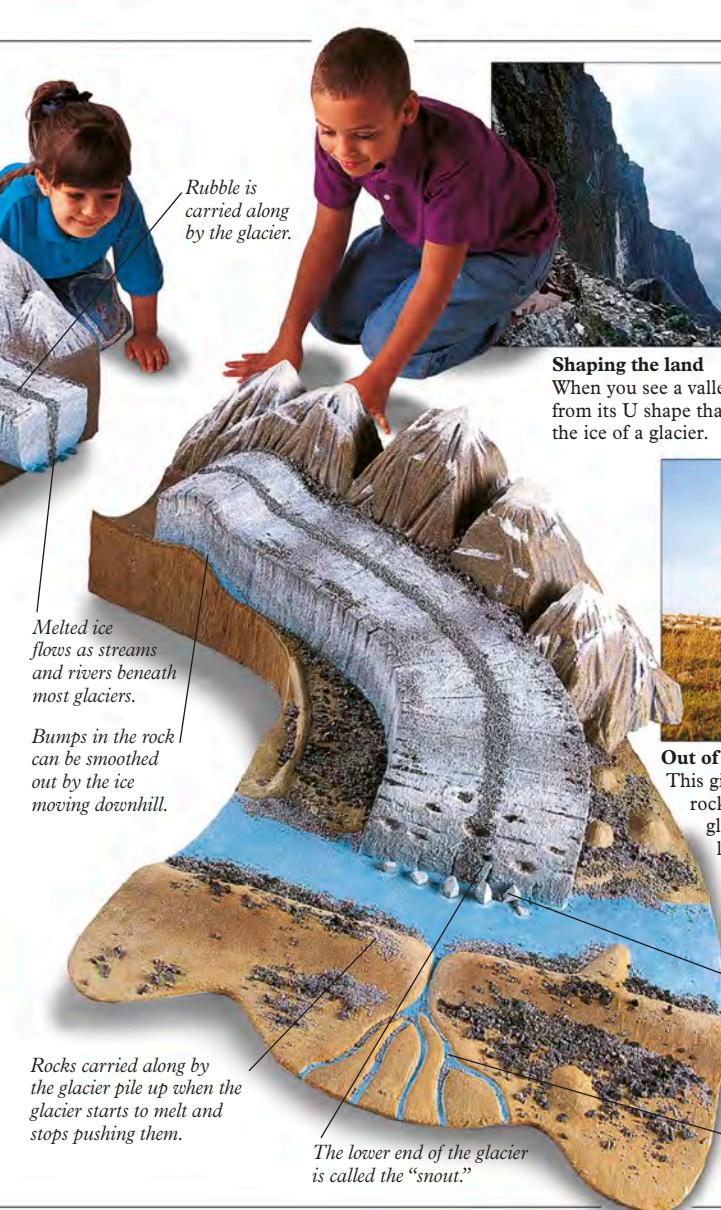
The ice begins to move and rub away the sides and bottom of the hollow. Little by little, it changes the shape of the land and makes it into a U-shaped valley.



Ice power

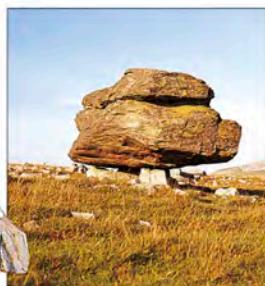
When the water in this bottle freezes and turns to ice, it takes up more room and breaks the bottle. When the water that makes up the ice of a glacier freezes, it takes up more room and pushes away the rock.





Shaping the land

When you see a valley like this, you can tell from its U shape that it was once filled with the ice of a glacier.



Out of place

This giant boulder of hard rock was moved by a glacier and left on soft limestone. Then, most of the limestone was weathered away, leaving a small block under the boulder.

Where a glacier flows into water, chunks of ice break off and float away.

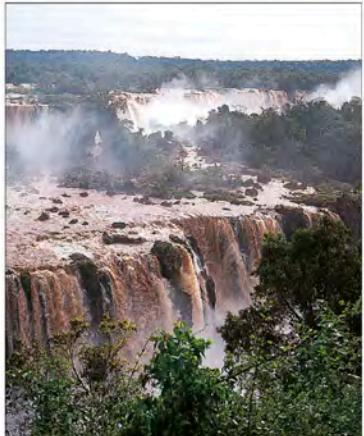
When the glacier melts, it makes new rivers.





RIVERS

Rivers are very powerful, so powerful that the force of the moving water is able to change the shape of the land. As they flow through mountains and over plains, rivers carry away huge amounts of rock, sand, and mud. They then dump it somewhere else, usually on riverbanks or in the sea, to make new land.



Over the top

When a river tumbles over the edge of a steep cliff or over a hard, rocky ledge, it is called a waterfall. This one is in Brazil, South America.

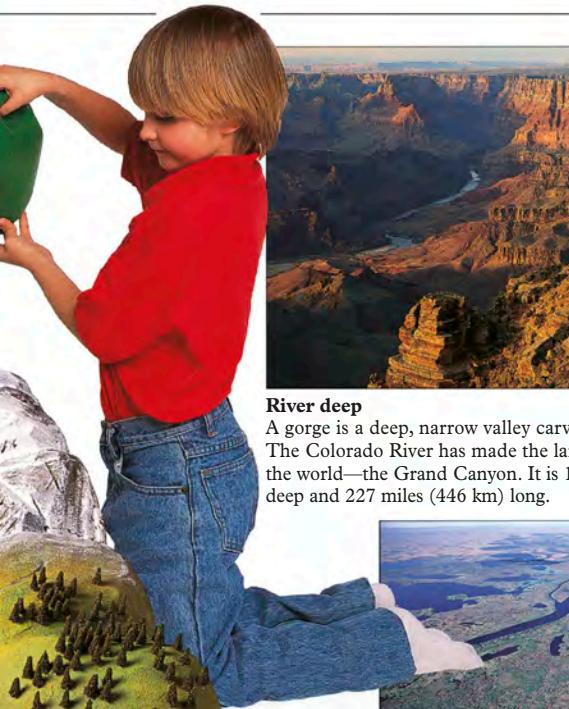
As the river flows quickly down steep slopes, it wears away the rock to make a V-shaped valley.

Sand, mud, and gravel is left by the water as sediment.



A river usually begins in mountains or hills. Its water comes from rain or melted snow.

Where the rock is hard, the river makes rapids or waterfalls.



River deep

A gorge is a deep, narrow valley carved by a river. The Colorado River has made the largest gorge in the world—the Grand Canyon. It is 1 mile (1.6 km) deep and 227 miles (446 km) long.



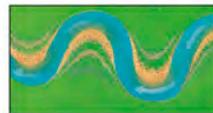
River's end

This swampy land is part of the Yukon Delta in Alaska.

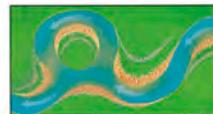
A wide bend or meander goes across flat country.

As it reaches the sea, the river divides into small streams, leaving a mass of sand, mud, and rock fragments, called a delta.

Round the bend
When a river reaches flat land, it slows down and begins to flow in large loops. It leaves behind sand, gravel, and mud, called deposits. This changes the river's shape and course.



The river leaves deposits on the inside bend and eats away the outer bend.



The deposits change the shape of the bend. In time, the neck of the bend narrows and the ends of the neck join up.



The river leaves behind a loop. It is called an oxbow lake because of its shape.

Record rivers

The Nile, in Africa, is the longest river in the world. It is 4,130 miles (6,650 km) long. The largest delta covers 40,500 square miles (105,000 sq km). It is made by the Ganges and Brahmaputra rivers, in Bangladesh and India.

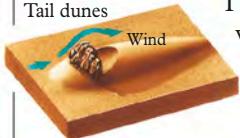




DESERTS

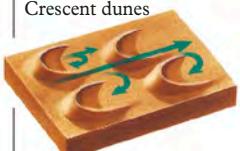
Did you know that deserts come in many different forms? They can be a sea of rolling sand, a huge area of flat and stony ground, or mountainous areas of shattered rock. There are hot deserts and cold deserts. So what do these very different areas have in common?

Tail dunes

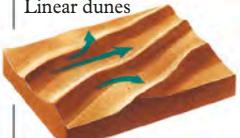


Wind

Crescent dunes



Linear dunes



Star dunes



Wind power

Wind blows the sand into hills which are called dunes. These have different shapes and names.

The answer is that they are all very dry and they all get less than 10 inches (25 cm) of rain each year. This rain may not fall regularly. Instead, it may all come in a single day and cause a dramatic flash flood.



Sea of sand

A desert may be hard to live in, but it can be stunning to look at. These dunes are in Saudi Arabia.

A cuesta is a step of hard rock.



A large, steep-sided area with a flat top is called a mesa.

A butte is a small, flat-topped hill.

Dunes

Hard rock that has been worn into a pinnacle or pipe rock.



On the move

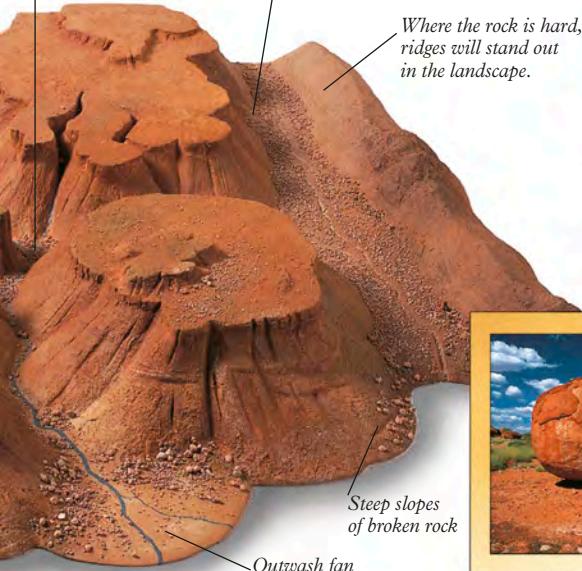
Imagine the hairdryer is the wind. It blows the sand up the gentle slope of the dune. When the sand gets to the top, it tumbles down the steep slope. As more and more sand is moved from one slope to another, the whole dune moves forward.



Heavy rain makes flash floods. These rush over the land, loaded with sand and stones, and cut deep channels in the surface of the desert.

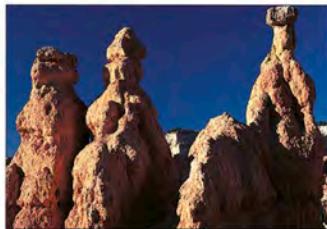
Broken rocks slide downhill and collect in gullies.

Where the rock is hard, ridges will stand out in the landscape.



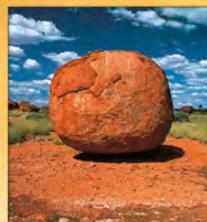
Water power

The tremendous power of water has made this deep ravine near an oasis in Tunisia.



Shaping the land

Wind-borne sand blows against the rocks and wears them into beautiful and surprising shapes.



Hot and cold
This is one of the Devil's Marbles in the Northern Territory, Australia. The rock's outer layers have started to peel off because of the desert's very hot and very cold temperatures.

SPACE

The universe is made up of galaxies, stars, planets, moons, and other bodies scattered throughout space.

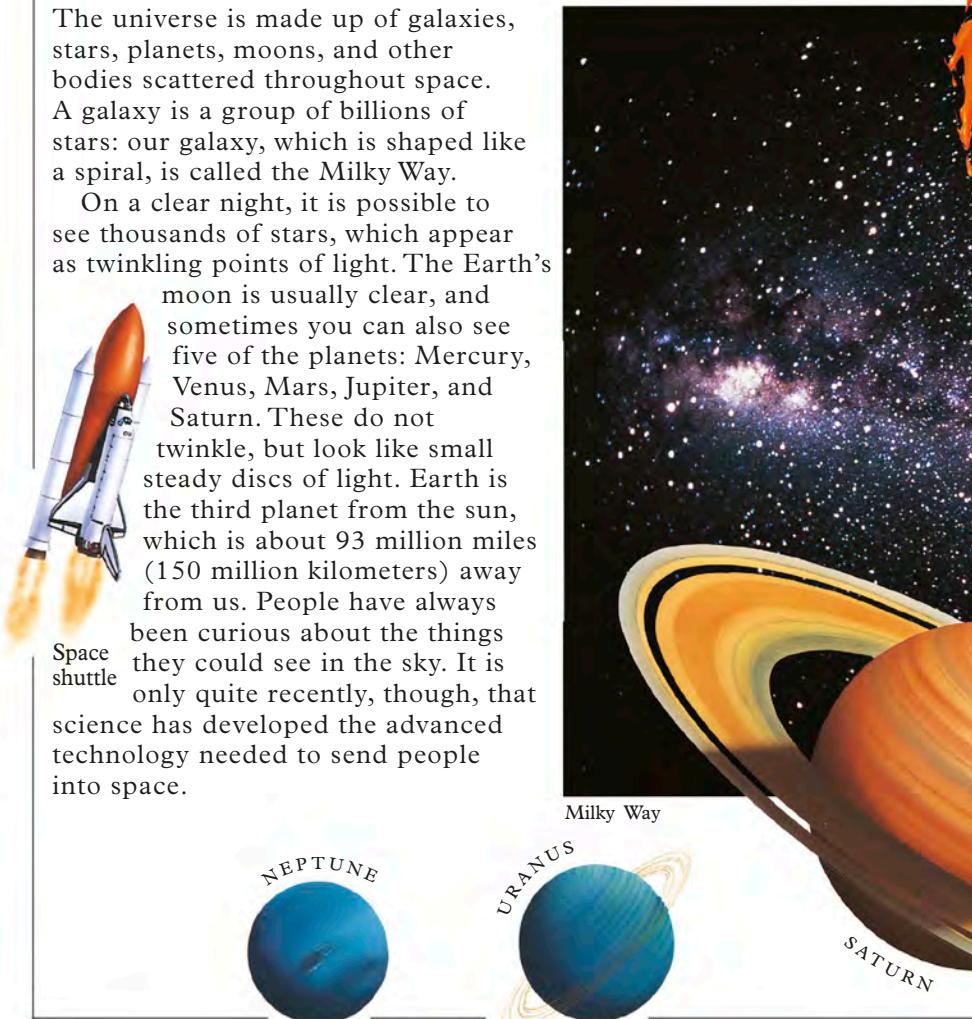
A galaxy is a group of billions of stars: our galaxy, which is shaped like a spiral, is called the Milky Way.

On a clear night, it is possible to see thousands of stars, which appear as twinkling points of light. The Earth's

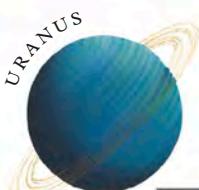
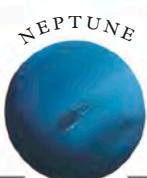
moon is usually clear, and sometimes you can also see five of the planets: Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn. These do not

twinkle, but look like small steady discs of light. Earth is the third planet from the sun, which is about 93 million miles (150 million kilometers) away from us. People have always

Space shuttle
been curious about the things they could see in the sky. It is only quite recently, though, that science has developed the advanced technology needed to send people into space.



Milky Way



SATURN





ROCKETS

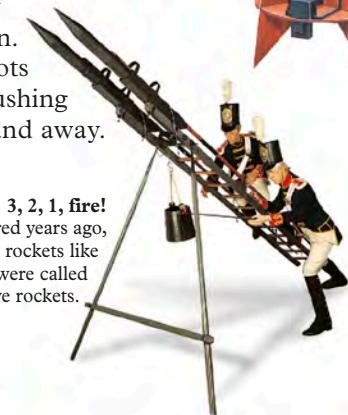
Rockets were invented in China a long time ago. They looked a bit like arrows and worked by burning gunpowder, which burns up very quickly, so the rockets did not travel very far. Since then, people have tried many ways of sending rockets up into space. Modern rockets usually use two liquid fuels. They mix together and burn.

Then the hot gas shoots out of the tail, pushing the rocket up and away.



3, 2, 1, fire!

A hundred years ago, soldiers used rockets like this. They were called Congreve rockets.

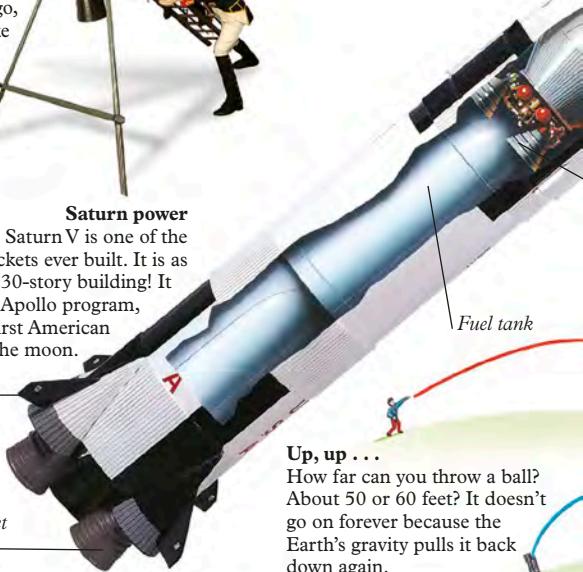


See it go!

If you blow up a balloon and let it go without tying a knot in the neck, the air will rush out very quickly. When the air goes out one way, it pushes the balloon the other way—just like a rocket!

The stabilizing fins keep the rocket on course.

Five rocket engines



V-2 Rocket
1945



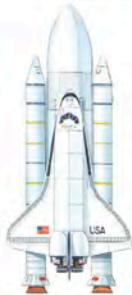
Gemini
Titan 1964

The Fly!

In 1931 Johannes Winkler launched his HW-1 rocket. It went 6.5 feet (two meters) into the air, turned over, and fell back to the ground. A month later he tried again and this time it climbed to 300 feet (90 meters) and landed 650 feet (200 meters) away.



Soyuz
1967



Space Shuttle
1981

Quest for power
As rockets have become more powerful their shapes have changed. The latest ones carry shuttles into space.

Service Module

Launch Escape System

Command Module

Lunar Module

Rocket engine



Overpowering

See just how enormous Saturn V's engines are compared to these people!

Five rocket engines

... and away

To escape from Earth by rocket you have to travel at 25,000 miles (40,000 kilometers) per hour—more than 40 times faster than a jet.

Safe landing

The Falcon 9 rocket can leave Earth and soar into outer space before returning safely to Earth afterward and doing it all over again.





Moon Mission



The moon is the Earth's nearest neighbor in space, but it still takes three days to get there by rocket. It would take 200 days by car! When astronauts first went to the moon no one could be sure

it would be safe to land there.

But now American astronauts have been to the moon on Apollo missions six times and they all returned safely to Earth.

The first moon trip was in 1969 and the last in 1972.



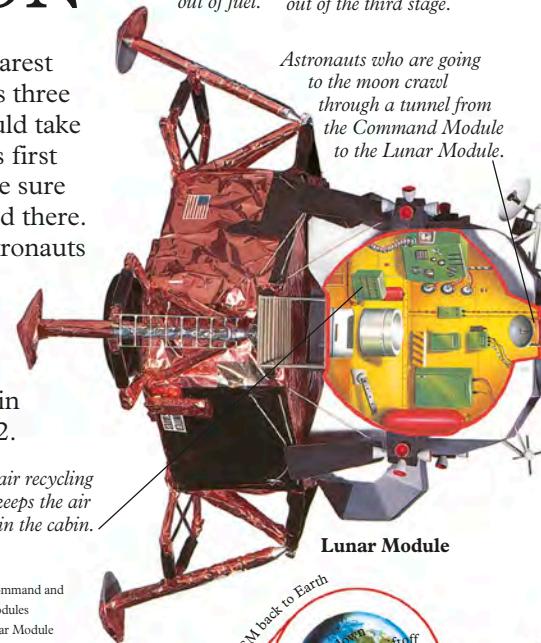
We have liftoff!
The first stage of the Saturn V rocket has five huge engines. When these run out of fuel they fall back to Earth. Then the second stage takes over.



The second stage drops off when its five engines run out of fuel.

The Command and Service Modules turn, join onto the Lunar Module, and pull it out of the third stage.

Astronauts who are going to the moon crawl through a tunnel from the Command Module to the Lunar Module.

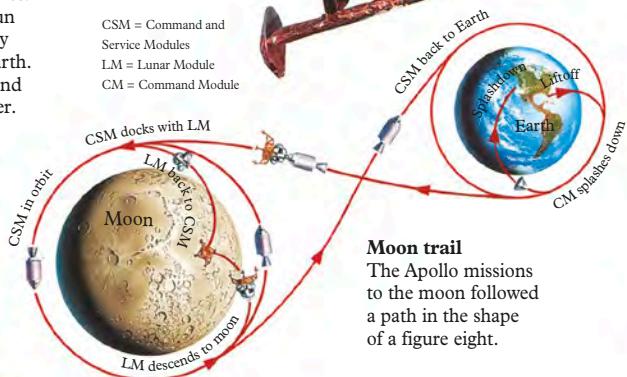


This air recycling unit keeps the air fresh in the cabin.

CSM = Command and Service Modules

LM = Lunar Module

CM = Command Module



Moon trail

The Apollo missions to the moon followed a path in the shape of a figure eight.



The Lunar Module drops down to the moon with two astronauts inside. The Command Module stays in orbit around the moon.

There is not much room in the cabin for three astronauts.

Command Module

Parachute

Fuel tanks



The top part of the Lunar Module returns to the Command Module.

The Command Module falls to Earth, using parachutes to make a safe landing in the sea.

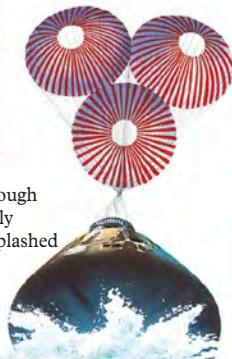
Engine nozzle

Service Module



Splashdown!

This Command Module fell through the Earth's atmosphere so quickly that the bottom got burned. It splashed down in the sea and was picked up by a helicopter. The balls on the roof are air balloons which helped it to float upright if it turned over in the water.





LUNAR LANDING



Mission patch A lunar landing is a moon landing. If you went to the moon you would find nothing living at all, no air, and no water.

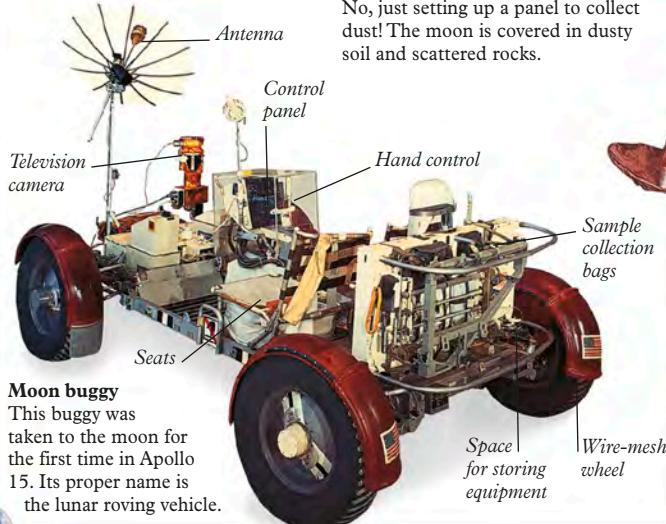
If you stayed for a lunar “day”—about 28 Earth days—you would have two weeks of baking sun followed by two weeks of freezing night. The first men on the moon went down in the Lunar Module, named “Eagle.”

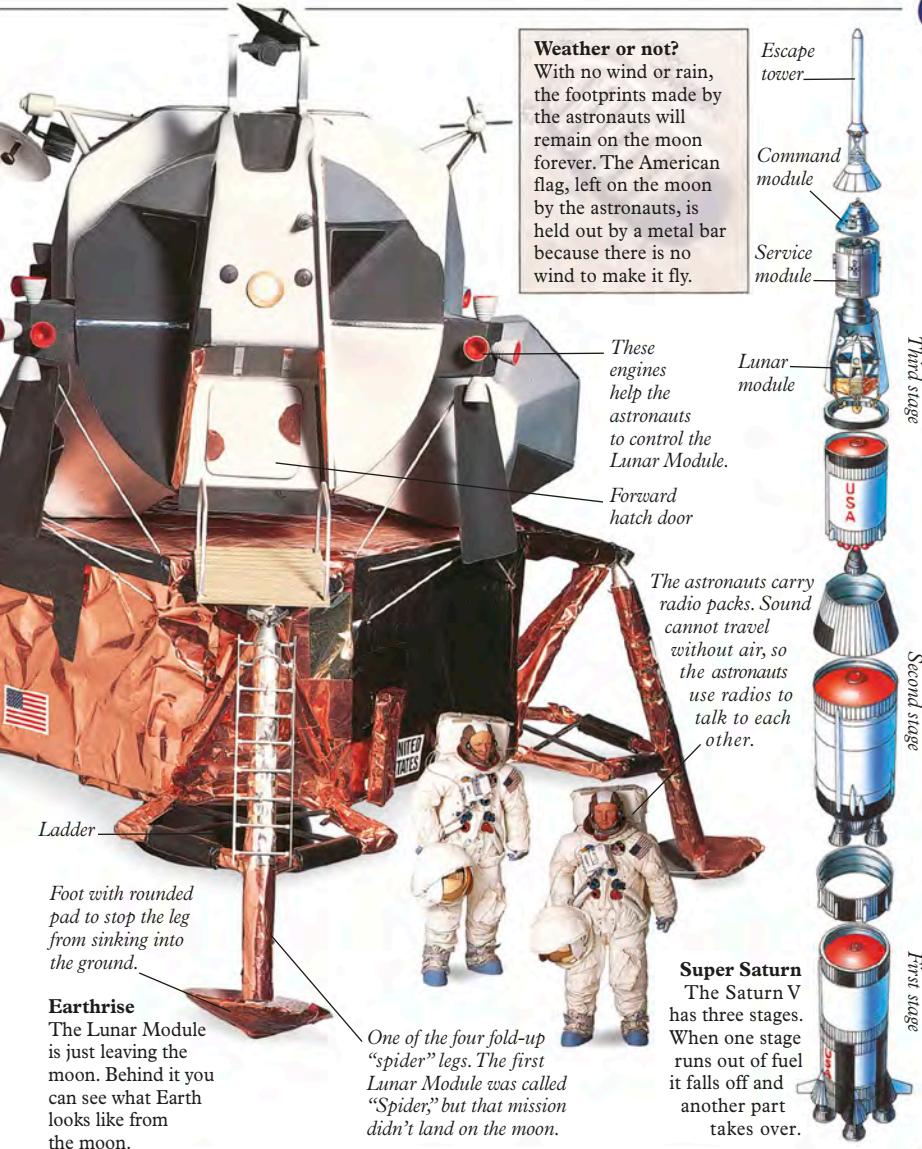


The Apollo 11 crew
Neil Armstrong and Edwin “Buzz” Aldrin were the first men to walk on the moon. Michael Collins stayed in orbit in the Command Module.



Hanging out the laundry?
No, just setting up a panel to collect dust! The moon is covered in dusty soil and scattered rocks.





MERCURY AND VENUS

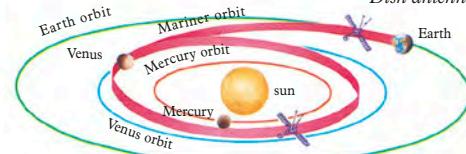
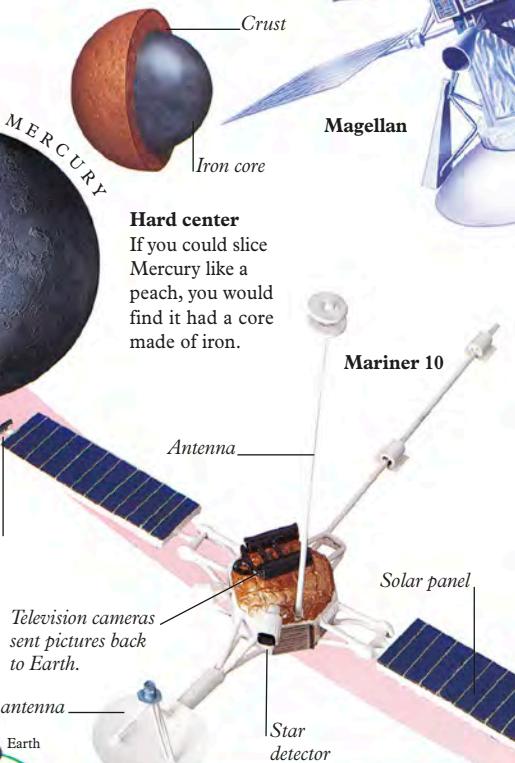
Between the Earth and the sun are two planets called Mercury and Venus.

They are very hot because they are the sun's nearest neighbors. Venus is the brightest object in the night sky. Mercury is the smallest planet in the solar system. Photographs from space probes tell us more about these planets.

Hello, goodbye!

Mariner 10, intended to explore Mercury and Venus, was the first probe to visit two planets in a row. It worked for 17 months before breaking down. Launched in 1973, it is now in orbit around the sun.

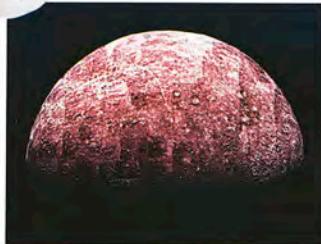
The solar detector made sure that the solar panels were always facing the sun.

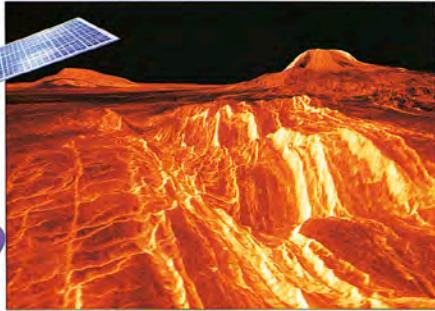


The Journey of Mariner 10

Happy new year

Mercury travels fast through space and is the closest planet to the sun. The Earth orbits the sun every 365 days—one Earth year. Mercury's year is 88 days.



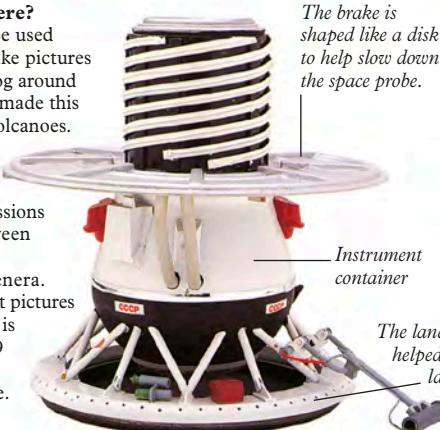


Wish you were here?

The Magellan probe used radar cameras to take pictures through the thick fog around Venus. Computers made this 3-D image of the volcanoes.

Venus Venera

Several Russian missions went to Venus between 1961 and 1984 in a program called Venera. The spacecraft sent pictures back to Earth. This is the part of Venera 9 that went down to Venus by parachute.



Hot orange

Venus has a dense atmosphere that traps heat from the sun. It is the hottest planet of all—so hot it could melt lead! It has a bright orange sky with flashes of lightning. Earth spins around once every 24 hours, but Venus spins very slowly—once every 244 days!



The space probe was in a capsule on the Venera spacecraft.



The capsule fell through the atmosphere of Venus.



The heat shield covers separated and fell off.



The probe was slowed down by a small parachute.



Three larger parachutes were used for the final stage.

After a safe landing, the television cameras and instruments were switched on.



THE RED PLANET



Mars is called the Red Planet because its soil and rocks are red. Light winds blow dust around, which makes the sky look pink. People once thought there was life on Mars, but nothing living has been found so far.

The Viking spacecraft were sent to Mars to find out what it is like. Two missions, Viking 1 and Viking 2, made the journey.

Perhaps one day people may go to live on Mars because it is the planet most like our own.

This remote control arm is used to collect samples of Mars soil.

Tight fit

The Viking lander fits into a capsule on the spacecraft. With its legs folded up, it looks a bit like a tortoise inside its shell.



Viking spacecraft

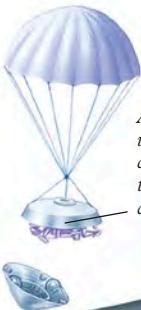
The Viking lander is folded into a capsule on the spacecraft.



It leaves the orbiter and begins its journey down to Mars.



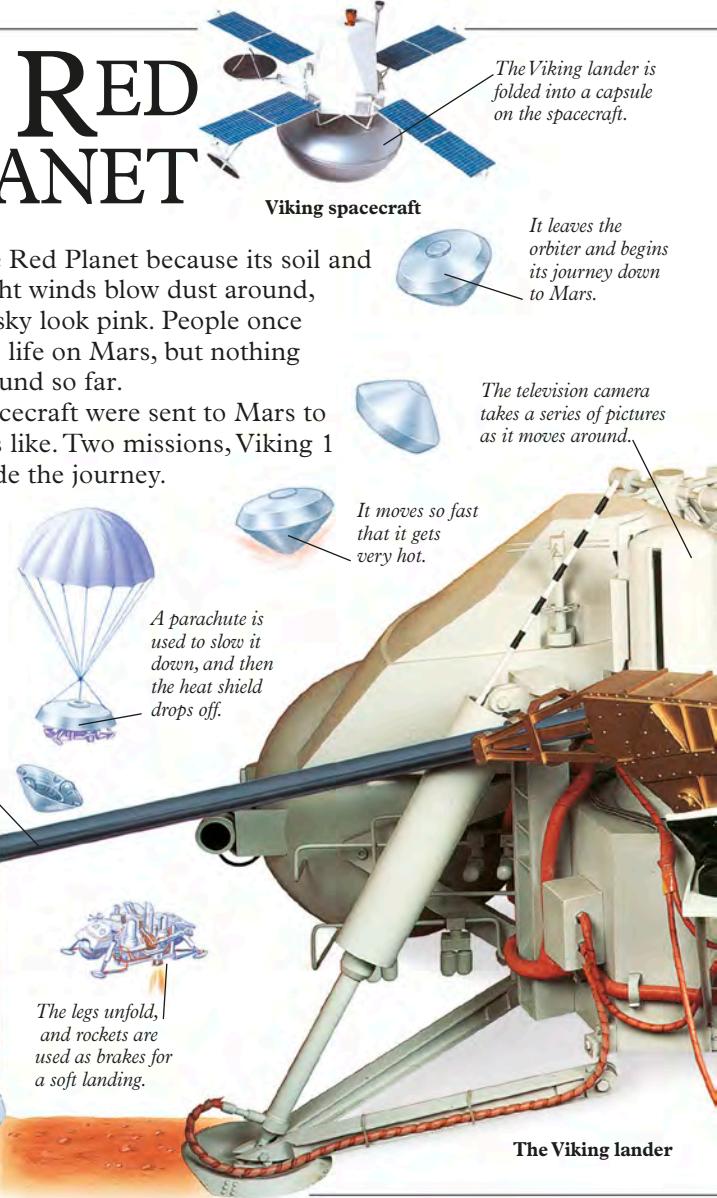
The television camera takes a series of pictures as it moves around.



A parachute is used to slow it down, and then the heat shield drops off.

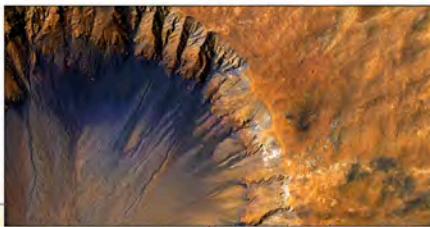


It moves so fast that it gets very hot.



The legs unfold, and rockets are used as brakes for a soft landing.

The Viking lander



Surface of Mars

Other spacecraft have been to Mars since the Viking missions. This image of a huge crater was taken in 2015 by the Mars Reconnaissance Orbiter.

Red desert

Mars is very cold. It has lots of dead volcanoes, craters and dried-up rivers. It looks like a rusty, rocky desert.



Weather instruments
Landing shock absorber

Leggy landers

The Viking spacecraft took about a year to reach Mars. The landers tested soil and sent pictures back to Earth.

The landing feet have rounded pads to stop the legs from digging into the soft soil.



JUPITER AND SATURN

These two giants are the largest planets in the solar system. Jupiter is made of gas and liquid so it is not solid enough to land on, but if you could drive a car around its equator it would take six months of nonstop traveling. A similar journey around Earth's equator would take only two weeks.

Saturn is a beautiful planet with shining rings around its middle. Both planets spin around very fast, pulling the clouds into stripes.

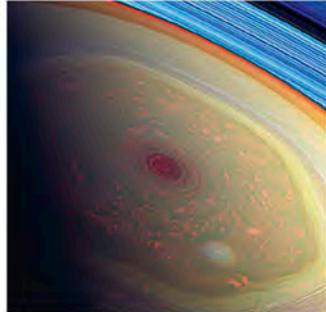
A power supply is carried on the probe. It does not use solar power because it is working so far from the sun.

This disk has pictures of Earth and sounds, such as a baby crying and music. If aliens find the disk it will tell them about Earth.

Television cameras

Radio antenna

Dish antenna



Spinning Saturn

Saturn is a giant spinning ball of gas and liquid held together by gravity. This photograph shows a storm rotating over the north pole.



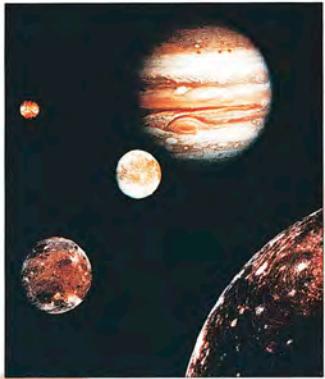
Seven cold rings

Saturn's rings are made up of glittering pieces of ice like trillions of snowballs.



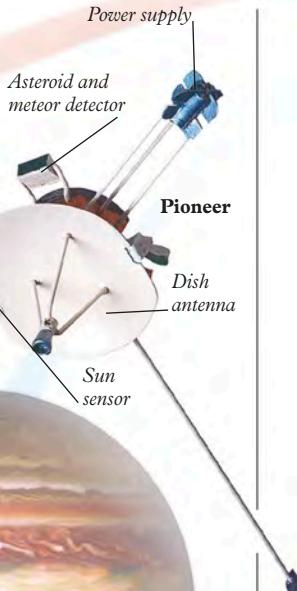
Voyager voyages

The probes sent to explore Jupiter and Saturn were called Voyager. Voyager 1 did its job so well that Voyager 2 was rerouted to go on to Uranus and Neptune.



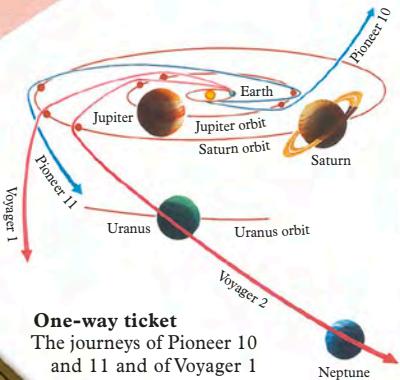
Pioneer picture

The program for sending unmanned spacecraft to Jupiter was called Pioneer. Pioneer 10 succeeded, so 11 went on to Saturn. Both sent back lots of pictures.



Mega moons

Jupiter has 79 moons circling around it. The largest is called Ganymede. It is bigger than Mercury.



One-way ticket

The journeys of Pioneer 10 and 11 and of Voyager 1 and 2 passed several of the planets. These spacecraft are now heading for the stars.



Red storm

Jupiter, like Saturn, has a small, rocky core surrounded by liquid. It has icy clouds and a giant red spot which is the center of a huge storm.

Swirling winds blow Jupiter's clouds into a hurricanelike storm.





THE OUTER PLANETS

Uranus and Neptune are the farthest planets from the sun so they are called the outer planets. They are very cold. Uranus was the first planet to be discovered using a telescope because you cannot see it from Earth just with your eyes. Pluto orbits outside Neptune and used to be classed as the ninth planet of the solar system until 2006, when it was reclassified as a dwarf planet. There are many other dwarf planets in the solar system, including Cerea, Eris, Haumea, and Makemake.



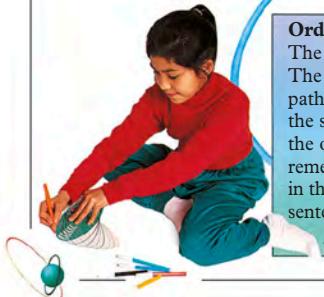
Sideways spinner
Uranus looks as if it is spinning on its side. It is covered in dense fog.

The rings of Uranus are made of rocks. The widest ring is 62 miles (100 kilometers) across.

Outer solar system

Ellipses

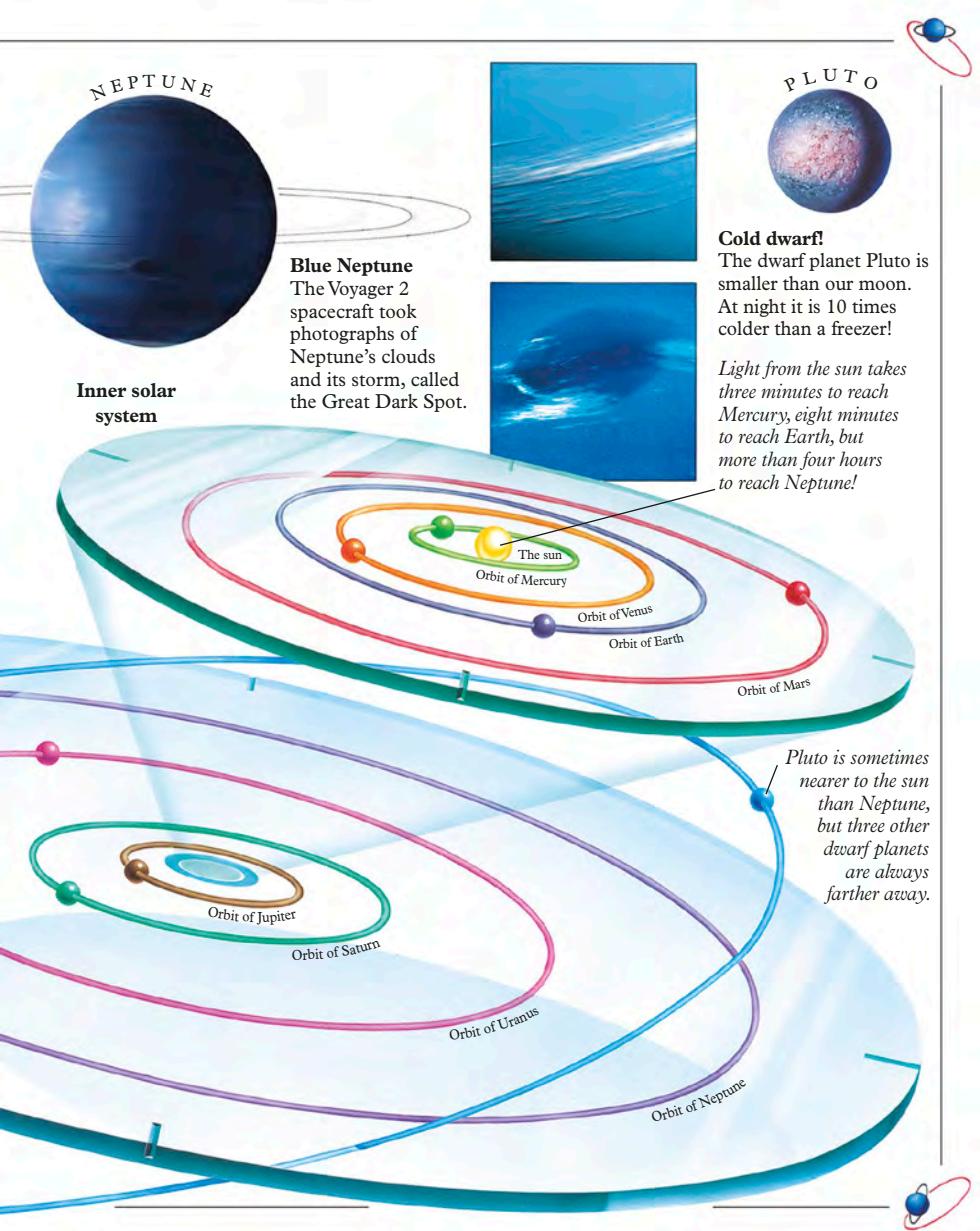
The planets move around the sun in squashed circles called ellipses. This girl is drawing ellipses.



Order of orbits

The word planet means wanderer. The planets travel around the sun in paths, called orbits. The ones nearer the sun have shorter orbits than the ones farther away. One way of remembering the order of the planets in the solar system is to remember the sentence "My Very Educated Mother Just Served Us Noodles."

This diagram shows the orbits of the planets and their places in the solar system. It does not show their sizes.



SKY WANDERERS

Between Mars and Jupiter there is a belt of rocks in orbit called the asteroid belt. The chunks of rock are called asteroids. Sometimes these pieces crash into each other and pieces fall down toward Earth.

Also in orbit around the sun are lumps of rock and ice, called comets. When comets get near the sun they shine like 'hairy stars' which is what people used to call them long ago. The most famous comet is Halley's Comet, named after the man who first studied it.

Earth comets

Because they are made of rock and ice, comets are often called "dirty snowballs." Make your own comet next time it snows!



The comet's center is made of ice. As it gets near the sun some of the ice melts.

A belt you cannot wear

There are thousands of asteroids in the asteroid belt. Some are tiny specks of dust, and others are nearly 620 miles (1,000 kilometers) across.



Solar system Halley's comet

Path of Halley's Comet
Wind from the sun blows the dust and gas around Halley's Comet into an enormous tail. Comets' tails always point away from the sun and can be millions of miles long.



Regular visitor

We see Halley's Comet from Earth once every 76 years because it takes that long to orbit the sun. It was shown on a picture, called the Bayeux Tapestry, over 900 years ago!



Comet head

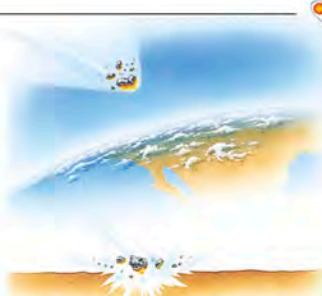
This is a photograph of the head of Halley's Comet. Computer colors show the bright center and the layers round it.



Meteor shower

If a lump of rock or metal burns up before it reaches the ground, it is called a meteor or shooting star. This photograph shows lots of them falling together in a meteor shower.

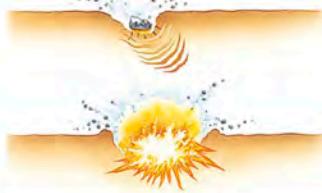
Crash! Bang!
A large meteor that does not burn up as it plunges through the Earth's atmosphere is called a meteorite.



It travels so fast it shatters into pieces as it hits the ground.



It causes shock waves as it lands.



The explosion leaves a big hole, called a crater.



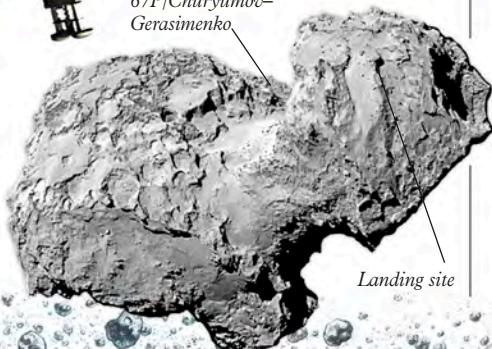
This huge meteorite crater is in Arizona.



Comet quest

The Rosetta mission launched in 2004 and finished in 2016, when the Philae lander module successfully landed on comet 67P/Churyumov–Gerasimenko.

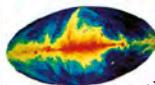
67P/Churyumov–Gerasimenko



Landing site



SKY WATCHING



If you look up at the sky on a clear night you can see hundreds of stars and, sometimes, the moon. But if you use binoculars or a telescope you can see even more—for example, the planets and the craters on the moon.

When astronomers study the universe they use huge radio telescopes, some with dishes, to help them to see far, far away, and to gather information from space. The Hubble Space Telescope is the largest telescope to be put into space. It can take clear pictures of stars and galaxies because it orbits 340 miles (547 kilometers) above the Earth's atmosphere.



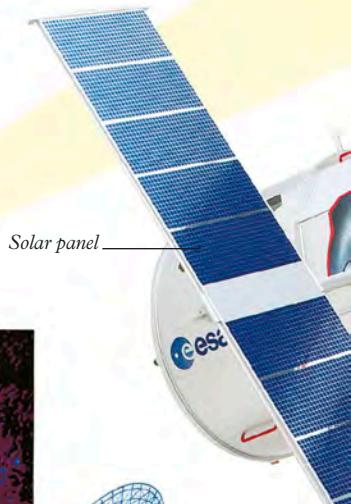
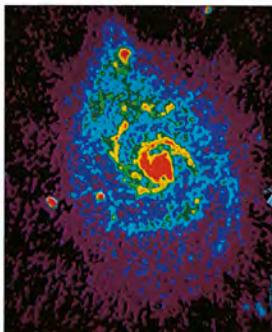
Clearly Venus

This photograph of Venus was taken by the Pioneer Venus Orbiter. It used radar to get a clear picture through the thick clouds around Venus. The signals were sent back to Earth to a radio telescope where this picture was produced.

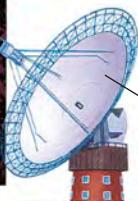


Whirligig

This radio map of the Whirlpool galaxy was taken by a radio telescope. The added colors show the spiral arms of the galaxy.



Solar panel



Radio telescope



Star belt

This photograph shows part of the constellation of Orion—also called “The Hunter.”



Head in the stars

A nebula is a cloud of dust and gas lit from inside by newly born stars. This picture of the Horsehead nebula was taken by the Hubble Space Telescope.



Flap door

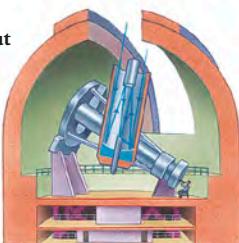
Star cluster

This photograph was taken by the Hubble Space Telescope and it shows star clusters colliding.



Star light

This picture of the Orion nebula was taken by the Spitzer Space Telescope.

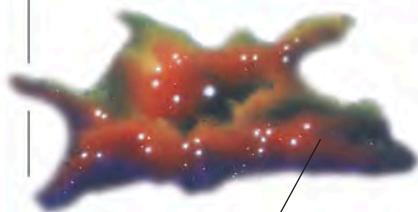


Look out

Observatories are places where astronomers work. These are usually away from big cities where there are no street lights and the air is clear.

STARS AND GALAXIES

Stars look like tiny points of light from Earth but really they are huge, hot balls of burning gas deep in space. They are forming, changing, and dying all the time. There are big stars called giants, even bigger ones called supergiants, and small ones called dwarf stars. Our sun is just one of about a hundred thousand million stars that all belong to a galaxy called the Milky Way. A galaxy is a group of millions of stars, held together by a strong force called gravity.



A star is born inside a large cloud of dust and gas, called a nebula. The word nebula means mist.

Sky lights

There are many new stars in the gas and dust of this pink nebula. A new young star on its own shines blue.



Starry, starry night

On a clear night do not forget to look up at the sky! You will see hundreds of twinkling stars, like tiny sparkling diamonds, far above you.

The gas and dust pack tightly together, getting smaller and very hot.



A group of growing stars is called a cluster.

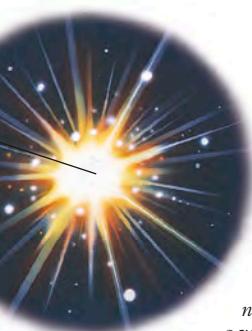
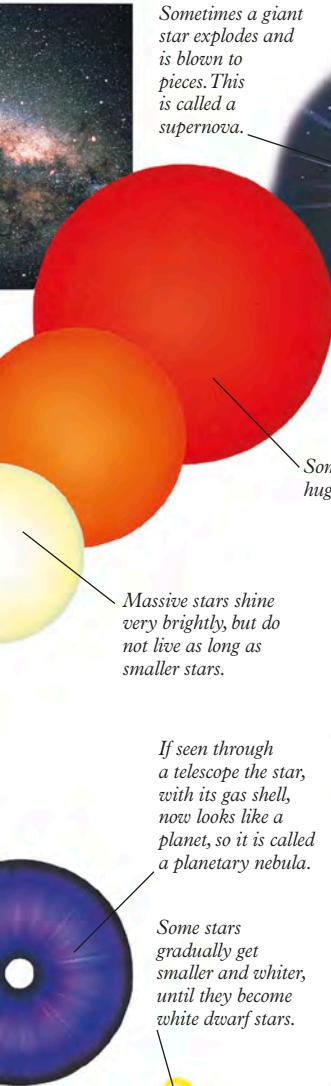
A new star is very bright. It shines steadily for many years.

As it cools, the star gets bigger and forms a red giant.



Near the end of its life the core of a red giant may cave in and give off layers of gas.





A supernova explosion sometimes results in a pulsar. A pulsar is a rapidly spinning star that gives off pulses of radio waves.



A black hole is not really a hole but a very tightly packed object with gravity so strong that not even light can escape.

Galaxies



A spiral galaxy



An elliptical galaxy



Our solar system is here.

A barred spiral galaxy

Star spinner

Our galaxy, called the Milky Way, is a barred spiral galaxy. Our solar system is about two-thirds of the way out from the center, in one of the spiral arms. There are lots of galaxies in the universe and they have different shapes.





CHAPTER 2



THE NATURAL WORLD

When the Earth was brand-new, more than 4,500 million years ago, there were violent storms, lightning bolts, and fiery volcanoes on its surface, but there was no life. In time, oceans formed, and it was here that the first life appeared in the form of simple organisms called bacteria and algae. Soon, more complex life-forms developed and, by about 600 million years ago, the seas were alive with soft-bodied animals. Later, other animals developed hard shells and skeletons, and small plants began to grow on the shores.

Insects and similar creatures were the first animals on land, followed by amphibians (which live in water and on land), then reptiles, birds, and mammals. It was not until quite recently—about four million years ago—that the first upright-walking ancestors of humans appeared.

**Plant Life
Sea Life
Insects and Spiders
Dinosaurs
Birds
Mammals
The Human Body**



PLANT LIFE

Plants grow everywhere, from the icy Arctic to the tropics—any place where there is air, light, and water.

In deserts, where it rarely rains, plants have to save moisture. Some, like cacti, have pleated stems that expand to store water when there is a shower. Where the climate is hot and humid, plants grow very quickly all year round to make lush rainforests. In temperate places—where it is not too hot and not too cold, with a medium amount of rain—most plants flower and fruit in summer, but may

lose their leaves or stop growing in winter. Plants usually grow in soil, but some absorb what they need directly from the water. Without plants, our world would be very different; from plants we get food, clothes, paper, and lots of other things. Most important of all, they provide oxygen, which all living creatures need to breathe.



Water hyacinth



The growth of a blackberry from flower to fruit



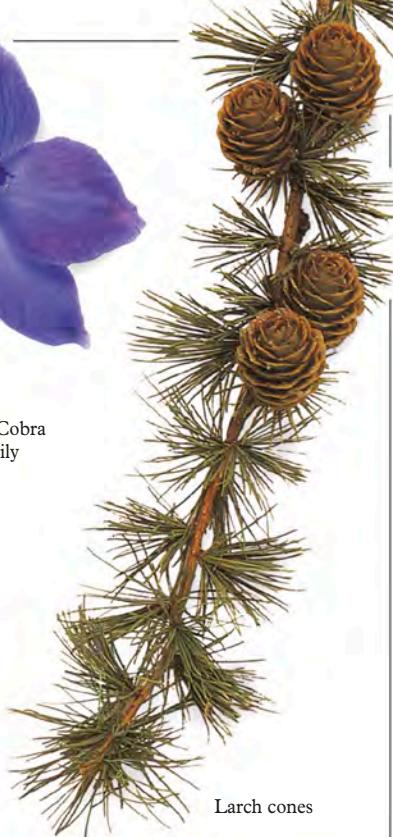
Stag's horn sumach



Tropical rainforest



Cobra
lily



Larch cones



Acorns

Oak leaf



Oak tree in winter and in summer

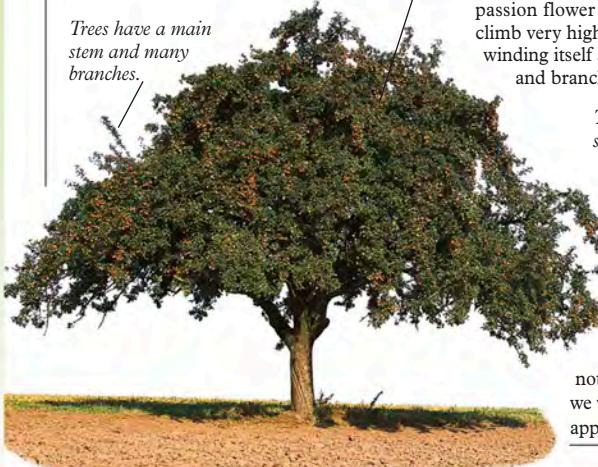
WHAT IS A PLANT?



Look, no hands

Some plants do not need soil—they prefer to perch in trees. A stag's horn fern gets a good grip by wrapping its large fronds around a branch.

Trees have a main stem and many branches.



Apples and other fruit contain seeds.

Hitching a lift
Some plants use other plants for support. This passion flower can climb very high by winding itself around the trunks and branches of trees.

The flowers make seeds for new plants.

The flexible stems can bend and twine.

Fresh fruit

Apple trees are not best known for their flowers. But if they did not have flowers first, we would not have apples to eat.

The leaves are used for making food.





Good fronds

Fern leaves are called fronds. They often grow straight out of the ground, from stems under the soil.

Feather duster

Pampas grass has long, sharp leaves, and those feathery plumes are its flowers.

Eye-catching

You can't miss these blooms. Like other plants that flower, orchids want to make sure that insects visit them. So they advertise themselves with colors and scents that are attractive to insects.

Nonflowering plants

Most plants flower, but not all. Ferns, mosses, and liverworts don't. The earliest plants to colonize the Earth—over 400 million years ago—were nonflowering. These plants are their descendants. Instead of seeds, they produce tiny spores which become new plants.

The curling tendrils hang on tight.

Liverwort



Fern



Moss

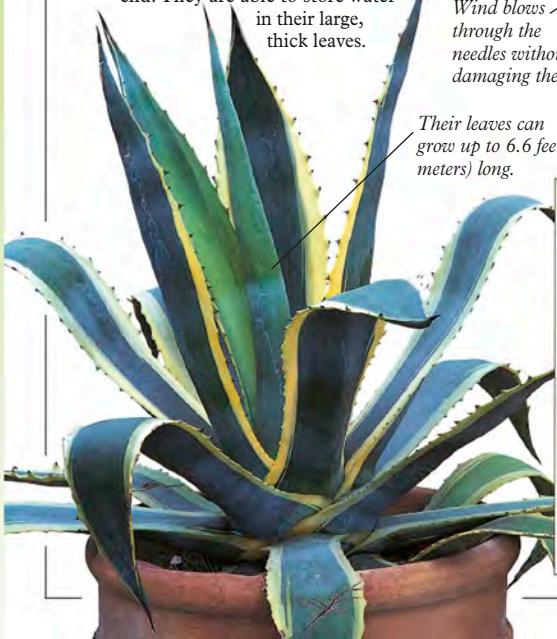


LEAVES

Leaves work very hard for plants. They make food, and they also help plants to cope with serious problems like how to survive the cold or get enough water. Leaves come in all sorts of shapes and sizes—large and small, thick and thin. In fact, you can tell quite a lot about a plant and where it grows just by looking at its leaves.

Water store

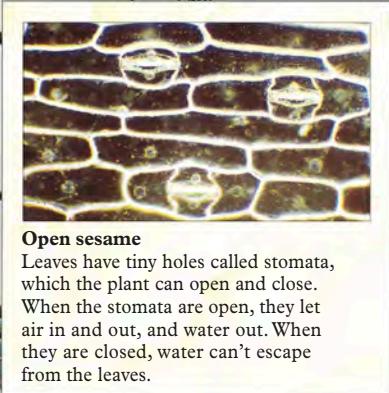
Agave plants grow in hot places where it may not rain for weeks on end. They are able to store water in their large, thick leaves.



Their leaves can grow up to 6.6 feet (two meters) long.

Weatherproof

Scots pine trees need to be tough to survive long, cold winters. They have thousands of tiny, needlelike leaves. The needles have a waterproof coating to protect them from rain and snow.



Open sesame

Leaves have tiny holes called stomata, which the plant can open and close. When the stomata are open, they let air in and out, and water out. When they are closed, water can't escape from the leaves.

Shapes and sizes



Japanese maple



Himalayan birch



Fig



Acacia



Horse chestnut

Drip-dry

Life in a tropical forest is hot and damp and there is no shortage of water. Monstera leaves have a special waxy surface, so the water can run off.

Monstera plants grow in the shade of trees that constantly drip moisture.



Shady character

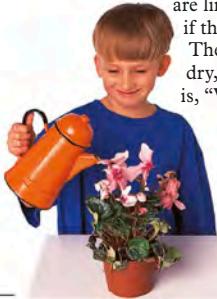
The maidenhair fern lives in damp, shady places, where its fragile leaves won't dry out in the sun.



Tough, glossy leaves are a good defense against wind and weather.

Water signals

Leaves can't talk, but they can sometimes send a message. The leaves of this cyclamen are limp and drooping as if the plant is unhappy. The soil in the pot is dry, and the message is, "Water me."



Do plants sweat?

Plants are constantly losing water through their leaves as part of a process called transpiration. Most of the time you can't see it happening. But if you put a plant inside a plastic bag and tie it, after a while you will see waterdrops on the inside of the bag. The moisture you can see is coming from the leaves of the plant.



HOW PLANTS MAKE FOOD

Hungry animals can go out hunting for their food—but plants cannot. Instead, they make their own food in their leaves by using light from the sun, water from the soil, and carbon dioxide from the air. A plant's way of making food is called photosynthesis. It takes place during the day when the leaves are absorbing sunlight.



Reach for the sun

These palms grow in the shade of tall trees. Their leaves are arranged like fans to help them catch all the light they can.

Colorful cover-up

All leaves contain green chlorophyll. But in some leaves the green is hidden from sight by other, stronger colors.



The roots take up water from the soil. It is drawn up the stem to the leaves.



The leaves of all plants contain a special pigment that gives them their green color. It is called chlorophyll, and it is essential for photosynthesis.



The leaves take in light from the sun.

Plants store some of their sugary food in their leaves.

Carbon dioxide from the air enters the leaves.

When plants make food they release oxygen into the atmosphere.

Some food becomes sap. It flows around the plant from the leaves to the roots, and provides energy for growing.

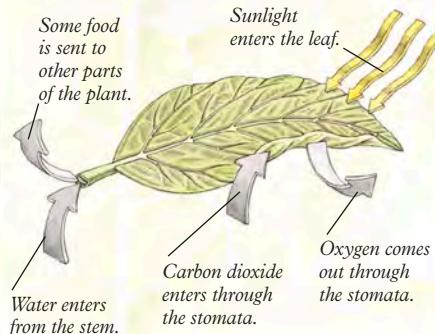
Rest time

Without sunlight, plants cannot make food. When it is dark they shut down for the night by closing their stomata.



Photosynthesis

Chlorophyll in the leaves absorbs sunlight. Sunlight provides the plant with energy to turn water and carbon dioxide into food.



Bare tree in winter



Tree in summer leaf



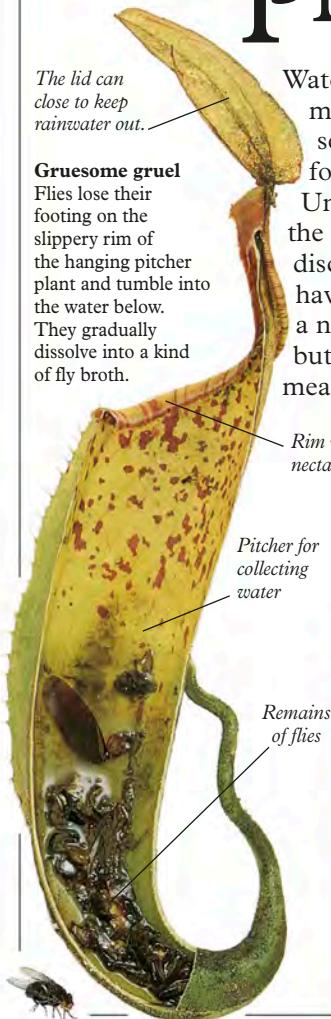
Slowing down

In winter there is less light and the water often freezes in the ground. It is difficult to make food, so plants grow very little. Many plants shed their leaves or even die back at this time of year.





CARNIVOROUS PLANTS



Watch out! These plants are meat-eaters and they have some very cunning devices for trapping their victims.

Unlucky insects, attracted by the plant's scent and color, discover too late that they have been tricked. It is a nasty end for an insect, but a ready-made, nutritious meal for the plant.



Water jugs
A pitcher plant has several pitchers, so it can catch a lot of flies.

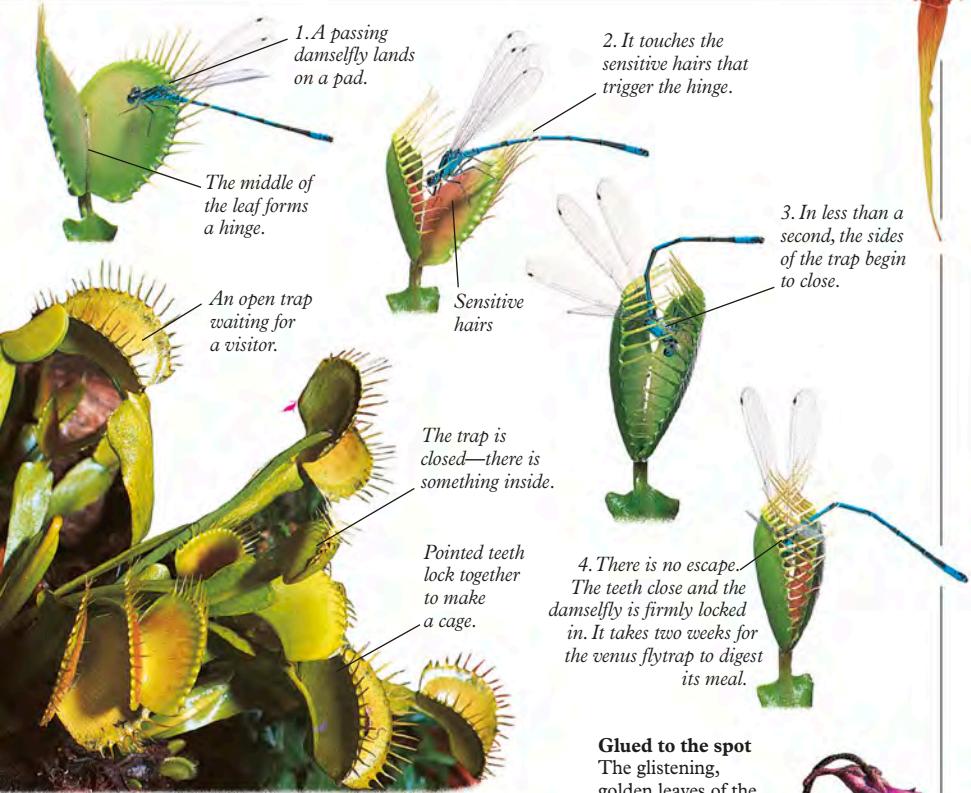
Venus flytrap
The instant an unsuspecting insect lands, the venus flytrap snaps into action.



Swamped

Most carnivorous plants, such as these cobra lilies, grow in boggy places where the minerals they need are in short supply. The insects they catch are a vital addition to their diet, because they are rich in the missing minerals.





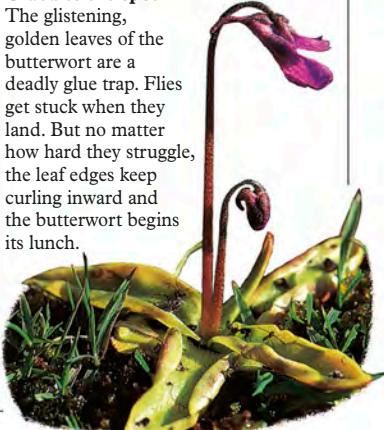
Hair-raising story

Any fly that lands on the hairy leaves of the sticky sundew is in for a nasty surprise. In no time at all it finds its legs are hopelessly entangled in the glue produced by the hairs.



Glued to the spot

The glistening, golden leaves of the butterwort are a deadly glue trap. Flies get stuck when they land. But no matter how hard they struggle, the leaf edges keep curling inward and the butterwort begins its lunch.



STEMS



Clever creature

This aphid knows just where to go for food supplies! It takes less than a second to pierce the soft part of the stem, which is full of nutritious sap.



Sun worshippers

The stems of sunflowers turn so their flowers can always face the sun.

Clinging on

In its rush toward the light, the sweet pea has no time to grow strong stems. Instead it uses twirling tendrils to wrap around other plants. They will support its fast climb to the top.



Roots, shoots, leaves, and flowers are all connected to the plant's stem.

Although it may not always stand as straight, the stem is kind of like your backbone, holding all the different parts together. Being in the center of everything means it is in the perfect position to carry water and food to every part of the plant.

This young tree is two years old.

Branches grow from the stem and hold the leaves out to the light.

As the tree gets older and taller, the main stem will thicken to form a trunk.



The widest spread on Earth

Just one banyan tree can make a forest! Their branches throw down special aerial roots. These grow into the ground and expand into trunks. A single tree in Kolkata, India, has more than 2,600 of these trunk look-alikes.

Water and minerals travel up the stem from the roots.



Weak at the knees

Gourd stems don't even attempt to stand up to support their fruit, which may weigh several pounds. They just trail gracefully over the ground.

The inside of a bamboo cane is hollow.



Supporting role

The strong, hard stems of bamboo are called canes. In some parts of the world they make great thickets 23 feet (seven meters) high.



The branches are slender and not yet very strong.

Food is made in the leaves and travels down to the roots.



Water diet

African baobab trees have a special way of surviving. During the rainy season their trunks store so much water that they visibly swell up. These reserves get them through the hot, dry times, when their slimmer shape slowly returns.

Keep off!

It is very difficult to get near a prickly thistle, but most animals that do won't be back for a second bite.



Close-up of thistle stem

Section through cactus

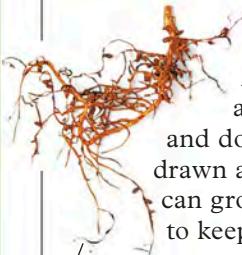
Conservation

Desert cacti hold water reserves in their thick stems. Thirsty animals know that. But the barricade of fierce spines means no free drinks.





ROOTS



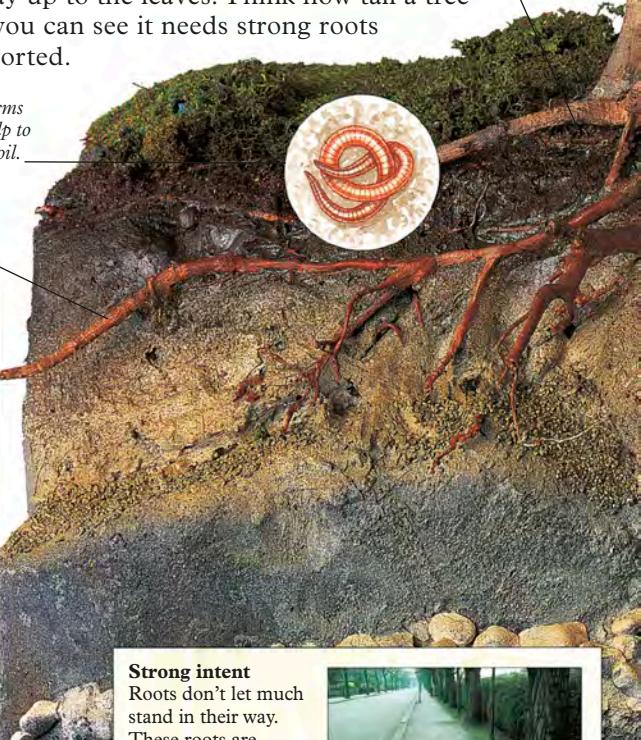
Roots are not pretty or colorful like leaves and flowers, but plants couldn't do without them! Anchored in the soil, they hold plants upright against wind and weather. They also grow out and down in search of water and minerals which are drawn all the way up to the leaves. Think how tall a tree can grow, and you can see it needs strong roots to keep it supported.

Roots can fit themselves into tiny spaces.

When earthworms burrow they help to add air to the soil.

The roots of the tree grow outward to balance the spread of the branches above.

There are little pockets of air in the soil. Without air, roots would wither and die.



Knobbly knees

Avicennia has roots that grow above ground. Also known as black mangrove, they grow in boggy ground, where there is not enough air. The roots are called pneumatophores, and supply the plants with air.



Strong intent

Roots don't let much stand in their way. These roots are growing toward the drain in the road, where there is a useful supply of water.





Rootless wonder

Draped like strange beards over the branches of trees, the extraordinary Spanish moss plant survives with no roots at all. Spanish moss grows in subtropical climates where the air is very wet. It absorbs all the moisture it needs through its fine, threadlike leaves.



Rock climbers

Alpine plants grow against rock faces, to protect themselves from high winds and icy squalls. Their tiny roots wriggle into cracks in the rock.

Most roots grow in the top 12 inches (30 centimeters) of soil. This part contains most of the important minerals the tree needs.



Every root grows a mass of tiny hairs near its tip to absorb water from the soil.

Water crops

Plants need water, minerals, and some support for their roots. But they do not necessarily need soil. Today many food crops are grown entirely in water with special pebbles. They are given liquid minerals to replace those in the soil.



INSIDE A FLOWER



Hibiscus

When you look at flowers you notice many colors, shapes, and sizes. Some plants have a single flower, others have so many it is impossible to keep count. But stop and take a closer look—this time inside. However different they may look, flowers all have the same basic parts. This is because all plants produce flowers for the same purpose: to make seeds so another plant can grow.



Mistaken identity

You could be confused by this poinsettia. What look like bright red petals are actually a kind of leaf, called a bract. The real flowers are the tiny green dots in the center.

The male part of a flower is called the anther. Each one of these produces masses of tiny pollen grains.

Insects leave pollen on the female part, which is called the stigma.



Grand finale

Not all plants flower every year, but there is no other plant that is as slow as the *Puya raimondii* from South America. It takes 150 years to produce a massive flower spike, up to 33 feet (10 meters) tall. Exhausted, it then dies, but luckily, not before it has produced a few seeds.

New beginnings

The process of making new seeds is called reproduction. The male and female parts in the center of this lily are its reproductive parts.



Lily





Mighty magnolias

Giant dinosaurs may have munched on magnolias like these. Magnolia trees are among the oldest flowering plants—they have been around for more than 130 million years.

The petals are brightly colored, with special markings to attract insects.

Flower arrangement

All of these flowers have the same basic parts, but they are arranged on the stem in different ways.



Snake's head fritillary



Echinops



Mullein



Transvaal daisy



Poppy



Is this a flower?
Tropical orchids like this one often look more like strange insects than flowers.

Hundreds of small flowers grow in a single spike.

The flowers of the spider orchid can be up to 24 inches (60 centimeters) long.

Daisy petals are arranged like the rays of the sun.



Each of these tightly packed flowers is called a floret.

Poppy petals open out to the light.





FLOWERS AND THEIR POLLINATORS



Most plants cannot make seeds without some outside help. The first job is to move pollen from the anther of one flower to the stigma of another. This is called pollination. Plants cannot travel, but their flowers produce sweet nectar, which animals love. As the animal feeds on the nectar, some pollen rubs onto its body. Each time it moves on to another flower, it leaves some pollen behind and picks up a new supply.

Honey hunters

As it feasts on nectar, the Australian honey possum gets pollen on its fur.



Pollen stop

Bees flit from flower to flower all day, feeding on nectar. Each time they stop, they pick up some pollen.

A flower, not a fly!

Clever tricks

Fly orchids look and smell like the real thing. Male flies looking for a mate are easily tricked. They buzz off in disgust, taking the orchid's pollen with them.



Pollen galore

Some plants rely on the wind to carry pollen between flowers. These catkins, for example, produce masses of pollen to make sure some will end up reaching the tiny stigmas of its female counterparts.





Special collection

When a hummingbird pushes its long beak deep inside the flower to collect the nectar, some pollen brushes off onto its body.



Inside story

Not many insects would ever find the flowers of the fig tree. They actually grow inside the figs! They are pollinated by special fig wasps that live inside the fig. When the flowers are producing pollen, some of the wasps leave home. They move into another fig, carrying pollen with them on their bodies.



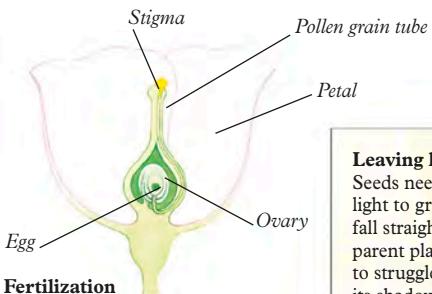
Tropical favorite

The bird of paradise flower grows in the tropics. It is pollinated by bats as well as by birds.

FLOWERS BECOME FRUITS

After they have been pollinated, flowers produce seeds and fruits. The fruits protect the seeds and keep them safe until the time comes for them to grow. Like flowers, fruits come in all sorts of shapes and sizes.

Horse chestnuts make chestnuts, dandelions make parachutes, and plum trees make plums. Every fruit has its own kind of seed. Some are light enough to be blown away on the wind, others are armor-plated so they can be swallowed by animals and pass out in their droppings without being damaged!



Fertilization

When an insect leaves some pollen on the stigma of a flower, fertilization can take place. Each tiny pollen grain grows a long tube. The tube grows down until it reaches the ovary where eggs are produced. Now a male gamete from the pollen tube joins with an egg from the ovary, and a seed is born.

Leaving home

Seeds need space and light to grow. If they fall straight off the parent plant, they have to struggle to grow in its shadow. So plants use all sorts of clever devices for making sure their seeds are carried away from them by wind or animals. Some have exploding pods that catapult the seeds into the air.



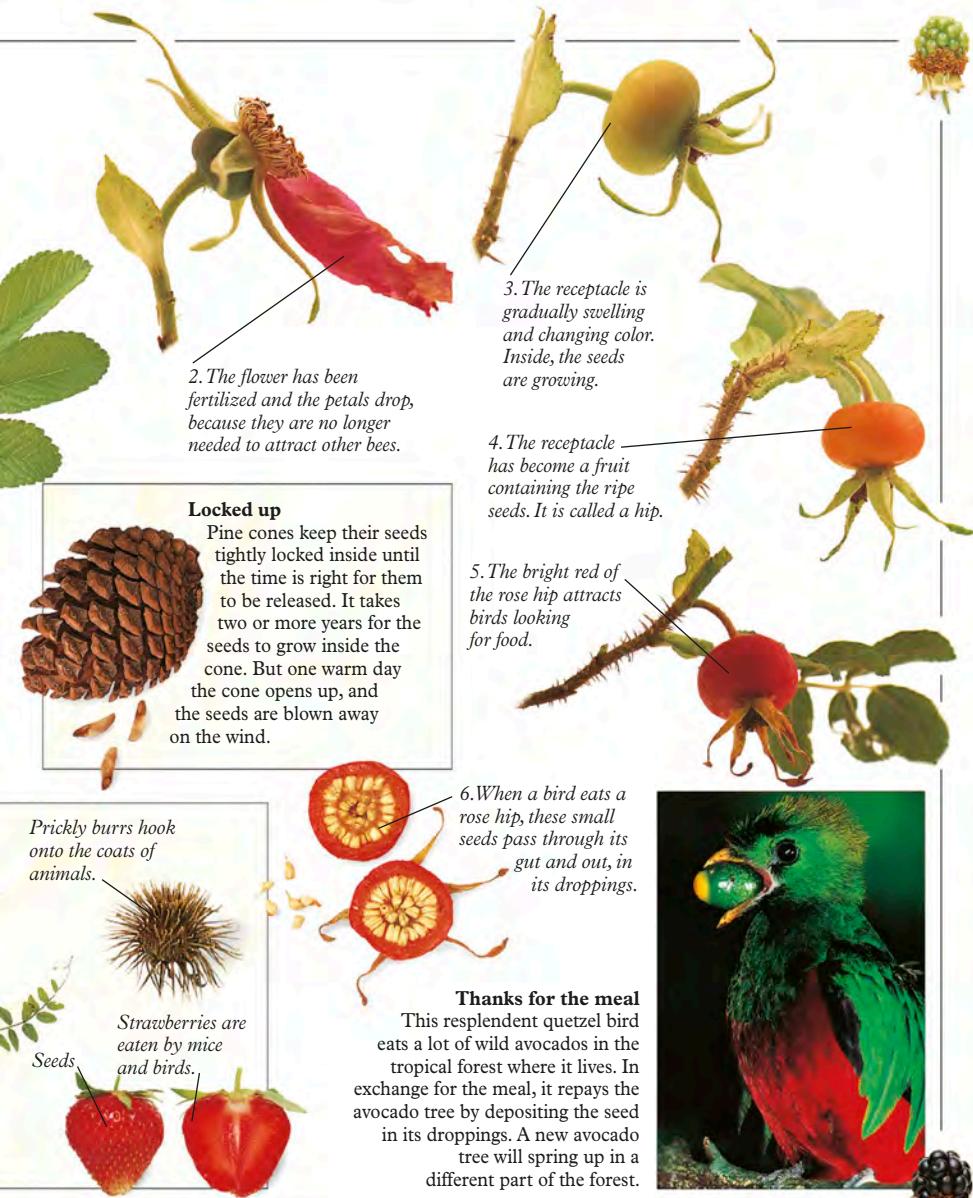
From rose to hip

Bees are attracted to this rose by its sweet smell and the promise of nectar.



1. The swelling beneath the flower is called the receptacle, and it will become the fruit.





SEEDS BECOME PLANTS



Wall flowers

Some seeds land in odd places—and there they grow!

Below ground, a seed is waiting to start life. But until it gets the right signals, a seed will remain just a seed. As soon as the soil becomes warm and damp, the seed can begin to absorb moisture. This makes it swell and the seedcase splits open. Germination has begun—and the seedling starts to grow toward the light.

The leaves unfold into a fan shape.



Peanuts

Peanut bush



Coffee bush



Coffee beans



Oak tree



Acorns

Seed and plant
You may recognize these seeds, but do you know what they grow into?

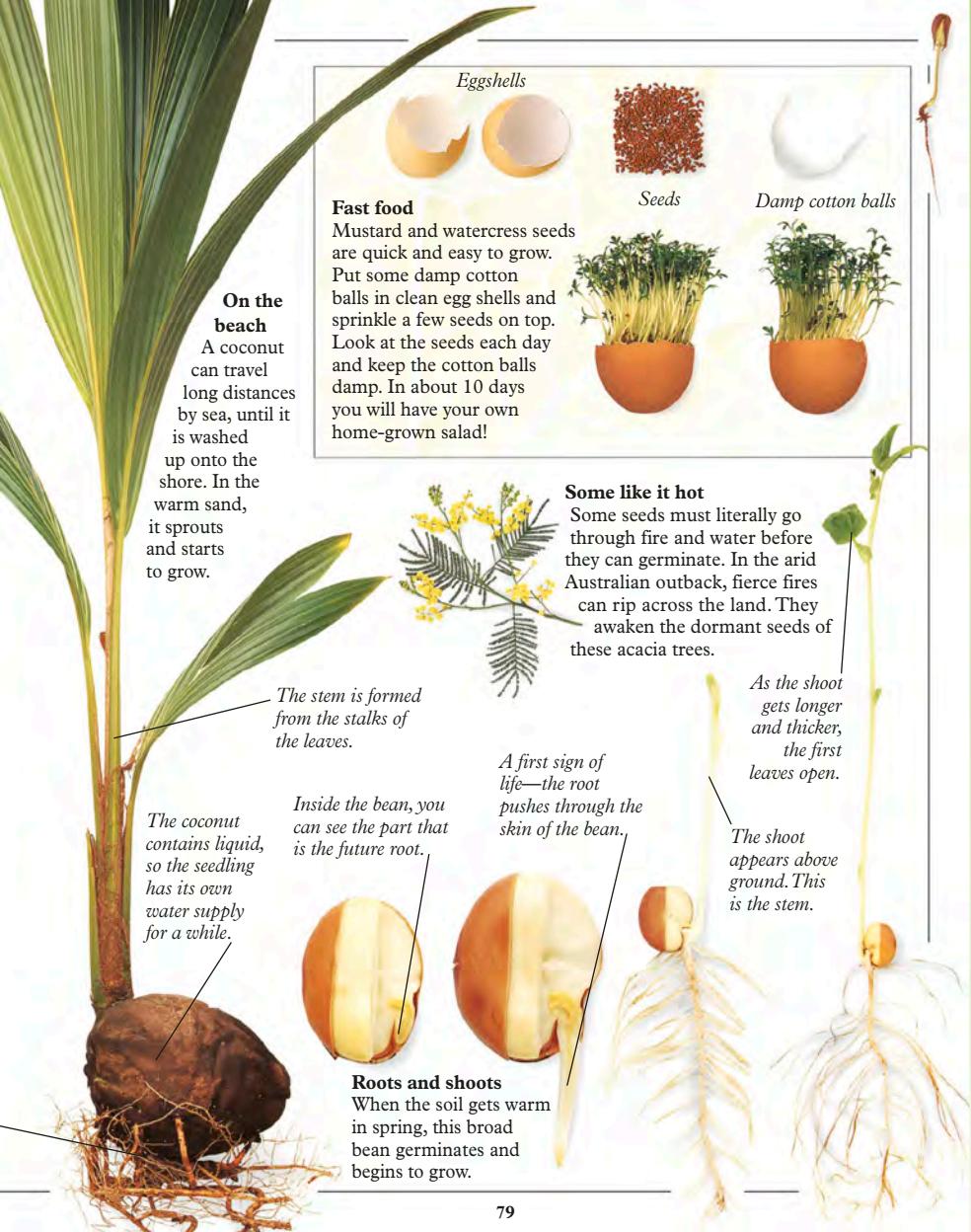


Lemon seeds

Lemon tree

Roots grow down through the husk of the coconut.





On the beach
A coconut can travel long distances by sea, until it is washed up onto the shore. In the warm sand, it sprouts and starts to grow.

Fast food

Mustard and watercress seeds are quick and easy to grow. Put some damp cotton balls in clean egg shells and sprinkle a few seeds on top. Look at the seeds each day and keep the cotton balls damp. In about 10 days you will have your own home-grown salad!

Eggshells



Seeds



Damp cotton balls



Some like it hot

Some seeds must literally go through fire and water before they can germinate. In the arid Australian outback, fierce fires can rip across the land. They awaken the dormant seeds of these acacia trees.



The stem is formed from the stalks of the leaves.

The coconut contains liquid, so the seedling has its own water supply for a while.

Inside the bean, you can see the part that is the future root.



A first sign of life—the root pushes through the skin of the bean.



As the shoot gets longer and thicker, the first leaves open.

The shoot appears above ground. This is the stem.



Roots and shoots

When the soil gets warm in spring, this broad bean germinates and begins to grow.

GROWING WITHOUT SEEDS

Piggyback plant Most flowering plants use their seeds to make new plants—but not all.

Some plants can turn part of themselves into new plants, using their stems, their roots, or their leaves. This is useful because it means that they can spread themselves without any outside help from birds or insects. Some of these plants also use this method of reproduction to cover a lot of ground.

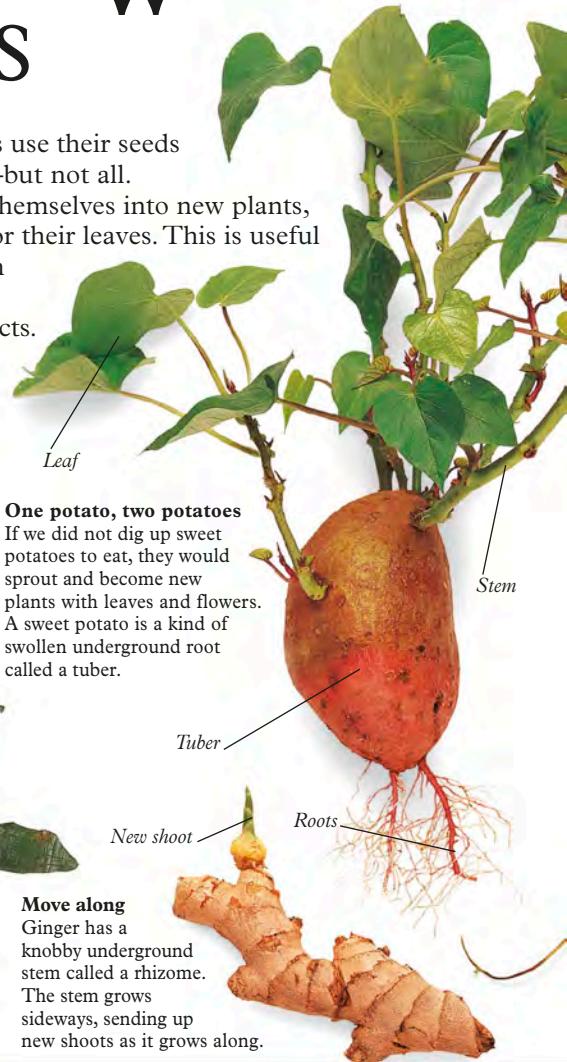
Protective parent

As the urn plant is flowering, new plants start to grow from the base of the plant. Gradually the parent plant withers away, but the young plants remain attached. By the time the parent plant has died, the young plants are ready to take its place.



One potato, two potatoes

If we did not dig up sweet potatoes to eat, they would sprout and become new plants with leaves and flowers. A sweet potato is a kind of swollen underground root called a tuber.



Move along

Ginger has a knobby underground stem called a rhizome. The stem grows sideways, sending up new shoots as it grows along.

Growing family

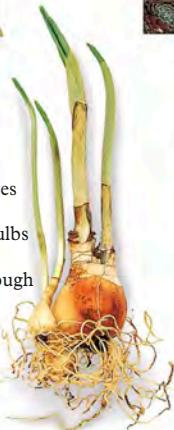
Sempervivum plants grow in clusters like spiky cushions.

The parent plant produces plantlets all around itself. These in their turn produce more plantlets, and on and on!



Clever arithmetic

A daffodil bulb multiplies below the ground by producing small new bulbs around itself. Once the new bulbs are large enough to flower, there will be several where once there was only one!



Turning over a new leaf

Crassulas grow in dry places, and their leaves contain water. When leaves drop off, they take root. Their private water supply keeps them alive while new roots are growing.



Hats off!

Small leaf buds grow all around the edges of the Mexican hat plant's fleshy leaves. These drop off onto the ground and take root to make little hats!



Long-distance runners

Strawberry plants can travel a long way by sprouting side shoots called runners. Wherever a runner touches the ground, it produces roots and a new plant grows up. It is like a large family all holding hands!





TREES

Trees are the longest living of all plants. They grow strong, woody trunks so that they can tower above other plants and get plenty of light. There are trees that lose all their leaves in one shot when the weather gets cold. They are known as deciduous trees. Others are evergreen and shed a few leaves at a time throughout the year.



Fiery finale

Before they fall, the leaves of many deciduous trees change color. The green chlorophyll disappears, revealing other colors that were hidden. Chemicals in the leaves deepen these colors to fiery golds and reds.

Holding on

Over the years, wind has shaped and battered the branches of this tree. But its trunk and strong roots keep it standing.



The heartwood is the oldest part of the tree. It is no longer living, but it is very strong.



Bark is very important. It protects all the living, working parts of the trunk.



Silver birch

Bark

As trees grow, their trunks expand. The bark cracks to make lots of different patterns.

This part of the trunk is still alive and busy, carrying water and food to the rest of the tree.



Paperbark maple



Tibetan cherry

Deciduous trees



Spanish oak



American mountain ash



Weeping willow

Cross section

Every year a tree adds a new layer of growth to its trunk and branches. Look at this slice from a tree's trunk, and you will see lots of rings. Each ring shows the growth made by the tree in one year. By counting the rings you can tell how old a tree is.



A wide ring
shows that the tree
grew a lot in this year.



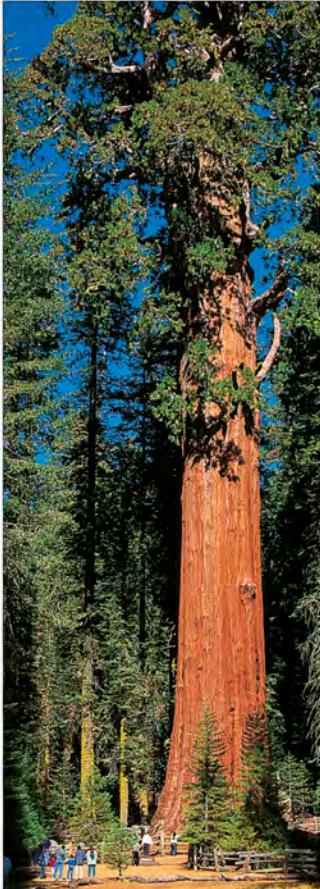
Shagbark hickory



Cork oak



Snakebark maple



The incredible hulk

What size waist do you have? The trunk of this giant redwood in California measures 103 feet (31 meters) all the way around, and stands nearly 275 feet (84 meters) high. It is so famous it has even been given a name—General Sherman!



Deodar



Mountain gum



Black spruce



SEA LIFE

Nearly three-quarters of the Earth is covered by oceans and seas. These billions of gallons of salty water are home to silent sharks, playful dolphins, enormous whales, huge marine turtles, fascinating octopuses with their eight long arms, masses of shellfish, and fish of all shapes and sizes. Beautiful underwater gardens of brightly colored coral provide a home for stinging sea anemones, showy sea slugs, giant clams, and spiny sea urchins.

Many parts of the world's seas and oceans are too deep, dark, and cold to support a lot of life, although the animals that live there are among the strangest on the planet. We are just beginning to explore this mysterious, watery world using special deep-sea submersibles. Almost every visit reveals forms of life that scientists have never seen before.



Blue whale



Leatherback turtle



Coral reef



Tropical sundial shells



Flounder with
camouflage
coloring



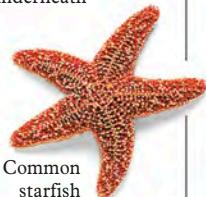
Female angler fish with males underneath



Edible crab



Harbor seal pup



Common
starfish



PLANKTON

Seawater is full of billions of very tiny living things called plankton. Most are less than 0.04 inches (one millimeter) long, but without them, very little else could live in the sea! Clouds of microscopic algae called phytoplankton drift

around at the mercy of tides and currents. They are eaten by swarms of tiny animals called zooplankton, and these are then eaten by fish, whales, and even seabirds.



Bucket full!

Copepods are a type of zooplankton. They are so small that more than one million could fit into a bucket of seawater.



Phytoplankton...eaten by...zooplankton...eaten by...fish...eaten by...seabirds

This curved feeler is covered in fine sensory hairs which help the copepod find food.

Zooplankton are tiny animals, but they are much bigger than most phytoplankton.

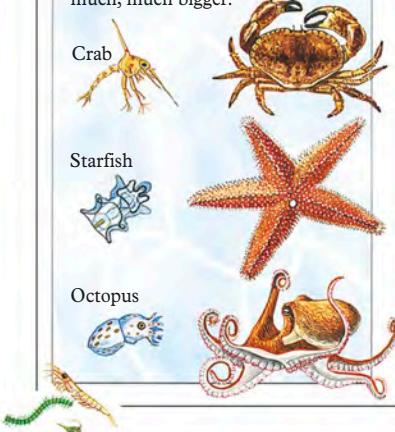


Food for everyone

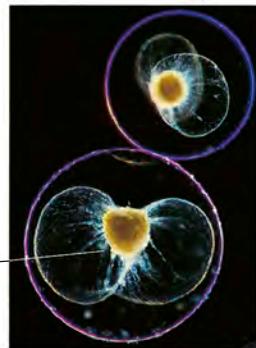
Seabirds, turtles, and seals all eat other animals, such as fish and shellfish, that eat plankton. They would all starve if there were no plankton in the sea.

Part-time plankton

Some animals begin their lives as tiny plankton, but then they grow much, much bigger.



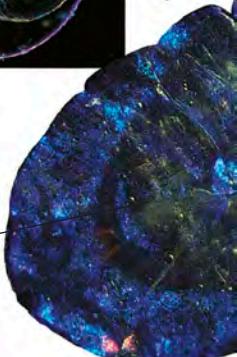
Microscopic phytoplankton absorb the energy of the sun as they float along.

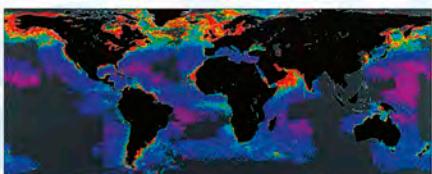


Sun lovers

Like land plants, phytoplankton use sunlight to make their food.

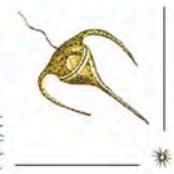
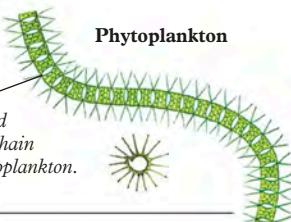
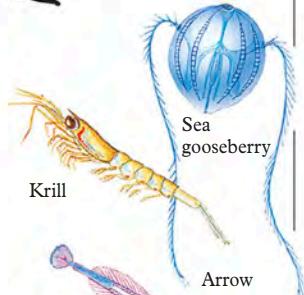
There are many different sorts, or species, of copepods. This male is flashing bright blue to attract a female.





Copepods can't swim against the sea, but they can move around by using their feelers as oars.

Zooplankton—Animals

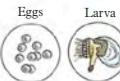




SHELLFISH

The shells that you find on a beach are the empty homes of small animals called shellfish. These soft-bodied creatures need hard shells to protect them from starfish, crabs, fish, and birds.

The most common types of shellfish are gastropods and bivalves. Gastropods are underwater snails. They grow coiled shells and slide around on a slimy foot. Bivalves have two, flatter shells that cover their whole body.



The animal inside
Bivalves, gastropods, and all other shellfish have soft bodies and no backbones. Most, such as this scallop, have shells.

Worm

These feelers help the animal find food.

Water in

Water out

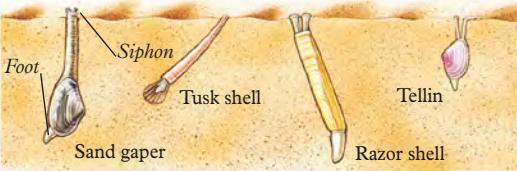


Swimming scallops

By taking in water and then shooting it out of its back end, a scallop is able to jump through the sea.

Buried alive

Tusk shells and many bivalves spend most of their life buried in sand. Bivalves dig a hole with their foot, then poke tubes, or siphons, into the sea. The siphons take water into the bivalve's gills and catch food.

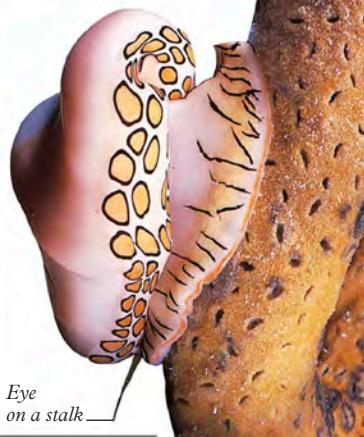


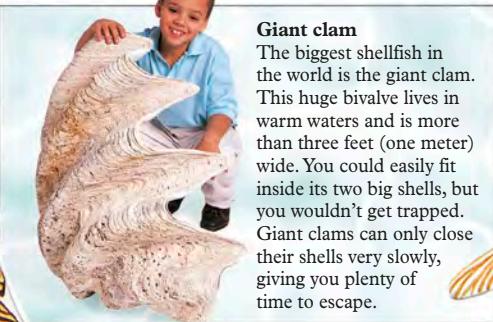
Growing up

Unlike crabs, shellfish never shed their shells. Each baby, or larva, has a tiny shell that gets bigger as it grows.

Because their shells are so light, bubble shells can use their mantles as flippers to help them swim.

Mantle

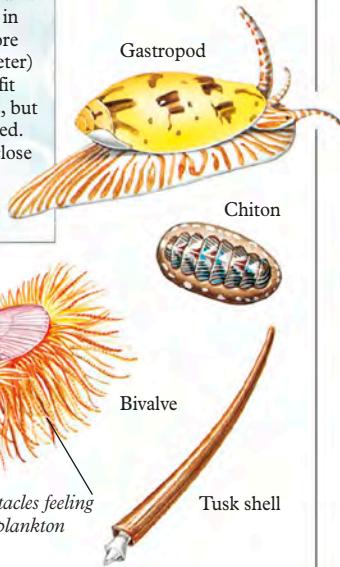




Giant clam

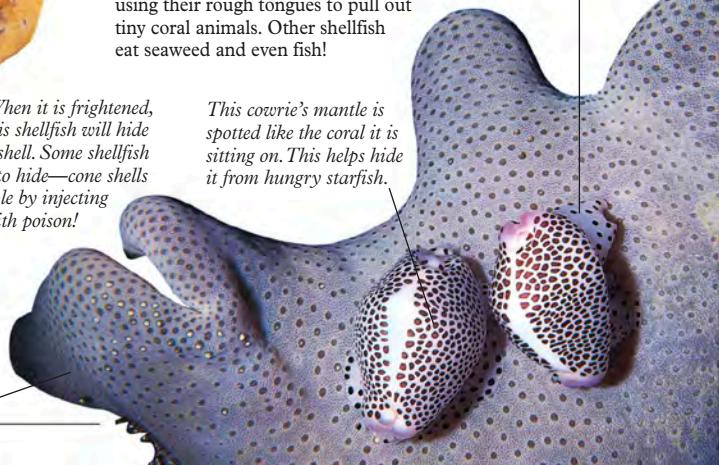
The biggest shellfish in the world is the giant clam. This huge bivalve lives in warm waters and is more than three feet (one meter) wide. You could easily fit inside its two big shells, but you wouldn't get trapped. Giant clams can only close their shells very slowly, giving you plenty of time to escape.

Types of shellfish



Coral suckers

These two bellybutton cowries are using their rough tongues to pull out tiny coral animals. Other shellfish eat seaweed and even fish!



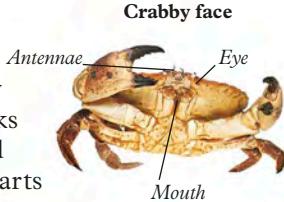
This cowrie's mantle is spotted like the coral it is sitting on. This helps hide it from hungry starfish.

Spotted foot

CRABS



What lives in the sea or on land, can be any color, has its eyes on stalks, swims and walks sideways, and carries its own house? Would you have guessed a crab? Crabs live in all parts of the sea, from the very deepest oceans to wave-swept shores.





This crab is so ugly that it is called the horrid crab!

Shore crab



Best of friends

The hermit crab has a softer body than other types of crabs, so it stays safe by living in an old snail shell. A sea anemone has also made its home on this shell. It eats food that the crab drops and, in return, protects the crab by stinging its enemies.

The claws of the common lobster are strong enough to snap off your finger!



Stony-shelled crab



Crusty crustaceans

Crabs are crustaceans. This means that they have a crust, or a shell, and at least five pairs of legs. There are thousands of species of crustaceans. Here are a few common ones:



Sea slater



Prawn



Goose barnacle



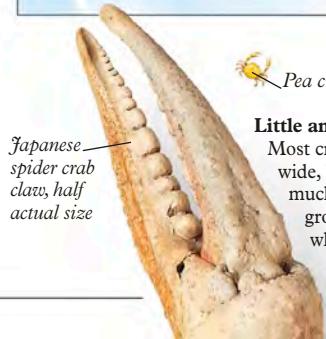
Lobster



Edible crab



Squat lobster



Japanese spider crab claw, half actual size

Little and large

Most crabs are about six inches (15 cm) wide, but a few are much bigger or much smaller. Japanese spider crabs grow to nearly 13 feet (four meters), while pea crabs are the size of a pea!



Pea crab, actual size

STARFISH

Starfish are star-shaped, but they are not fish—they are echinoderms. This means that they have spiny skin. They cannot swim, but they are very good at crawling! They can walk up strands of seaweed and climb down the sides of rocks. Even in the deepest, darkest parts of the sea, there are starfish creeping around.

Starfish don't have any eyes. Instead, they have eyespots on the tips of their arms. These special cells cannot see shapes, but they can tell whether it is light or dark.

These bumps are actually spines.

Burrowing starfish

Starfish's arms are very bendy because their skeleton is made up of lots of tiny spines that can move in any direction.

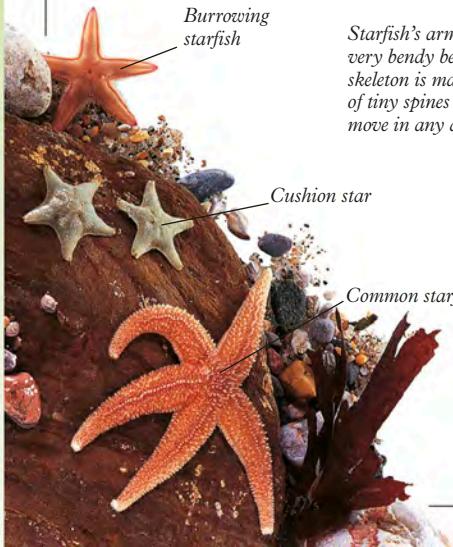
This crimson-knobbed starfish, like most starfish, measures less than eight inches (20 cm) from tip to tip. But some species are as wide as a small car!

Central disk

Starfish breathe through their feet and also through tiny tubes that are found all over their body.

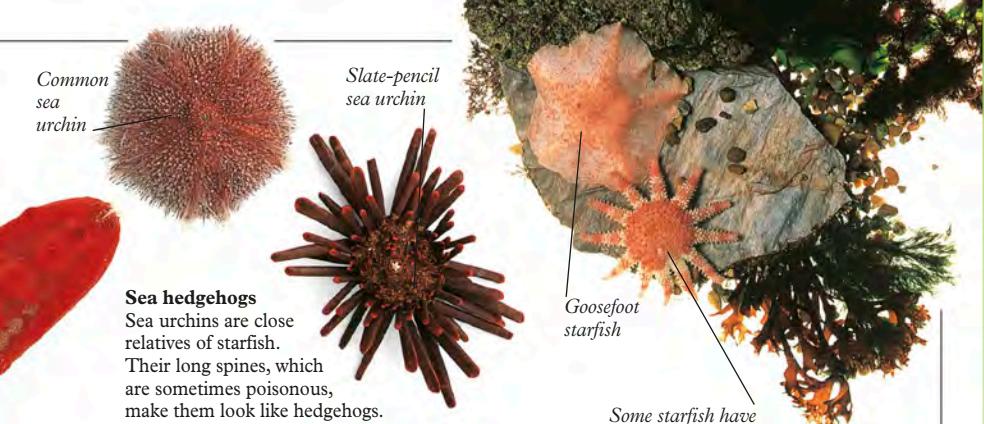
Cushion star

Common starfish



Stomach this

Starfish eat clams and mussels. When it finds one, it pulls open the shell with its tiny tube feet, pushes its whole stomach inside and slowly digests the animal's soft body.



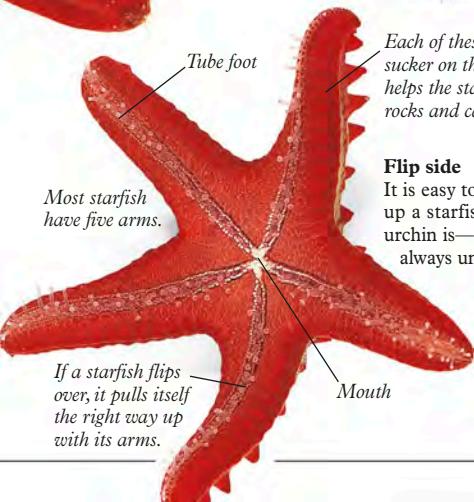
Armless

This starfish is growing two new arms. The old ones were bitten off by a fish! As long as the central disk and one arm is left, the starfish will survive.



*Most starfish
have five arms.*

If a starfish flips over, it pulls itself the right way up with its arms.



Each of these feet has a sucker on the end which helps the starfish stick to rocks and catch food.

Flip side

It is easy to tell which way up a starfish or a sea urchin is—its mouth is always underneath.



Sea lily



Sea cucumber



A small green plant with long, thin leaves growing from a blue, textured rock.

Spiny species

There are more than 7,000 different species of echinoderms, but only five main groups.



Starfish



Brittle stars



OCTOPUSES

Did you know that octopuses are related to snails? But unlike most other mollusks, they don't have shells to protect them. Instead, these eight-armed animals squeeze their soft bodies into small cracks or holes in rocks.

Once they are safely hidden, it is very hard for conger eels, sharks, seals, and people to find and eat them.



Gone fishing

Octopuses hunt for their food. They pounce on fish, starfish, and crabs. Some have webs between their arms which help them net even more animals.

With their large eyes, octopuses can see shapes and colors very well.

Tentacle

This common octopus measures only four inches (10 centimeters) from tip to tip. The largest octopus ever found was more than 30 feet (nine meters) wide!

Siphon

Bunch of eggs
Inside each of these soft-shelled eggs there is a baby octopus.



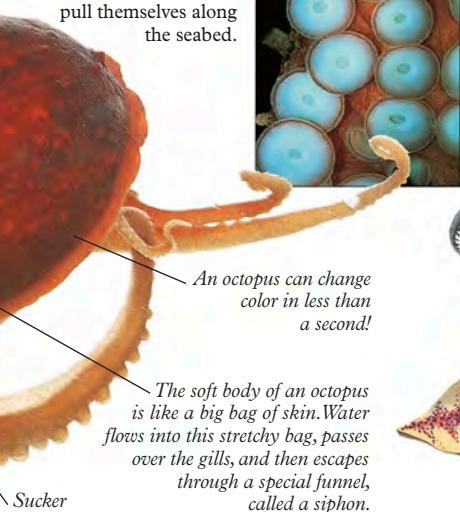
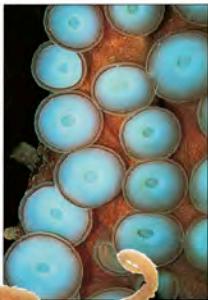
An octopus can shoot ink, called sepia, out of its siphon. This black cloud hangs in the water and hides the octopus from its enemies.

Jet-propelled

If an octopus is frightened, it does not crawl away slowly—it jets off! By forcing water out through its siphon, it can shoot through the sea.

Suckers

Rows of super-strong suckers help octopuses hang on to rocks, touch things, grab food, and pull themselves along the seabed.

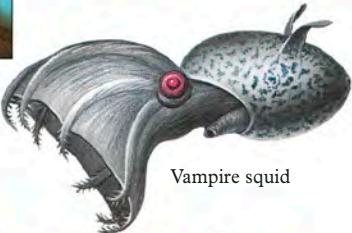


The cephalopod family

Octopuses and their relatives are known as cephalopods; they are mollusks that live in the sea and have tentacles.



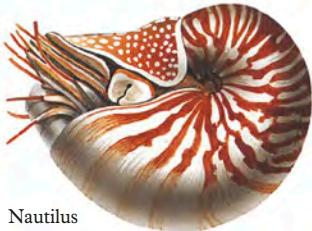
Cuttlefish



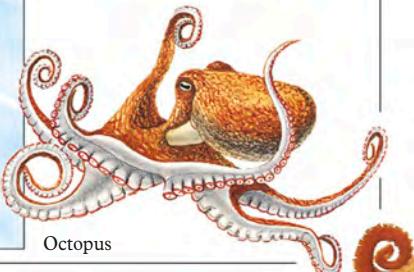
Vampire squid



Squid



Nautilus



Octopus

Battle of the giants

There are stories of huge octopuses swallowing people whole, but this doesn't actually happen. These myths may be based on giant squid, which can be 43 feet (13 meters) long and are close relatives of octopuses. In the dark depths of the ocean, giant squid battle against sperm whales.

Sperm whale



Giant squid

FISH

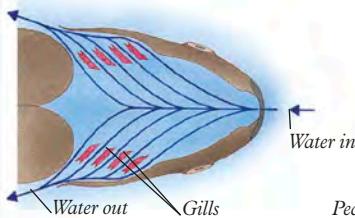


Almost all living things need a gas called oxygen to survive. You cannot see it, but it is found in air and water. You use your lungs to take in oxygen by breathing in air. If you swim under water, you either have to hold your breath or use a snorkel. Fish don't have to do this. They can take their oxygen straight out of the water.



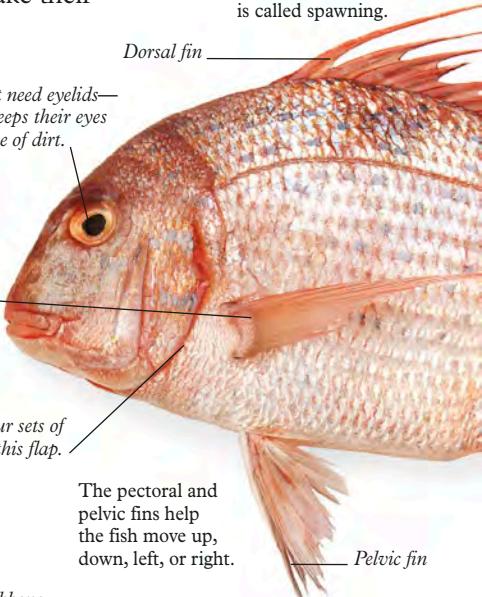
Fish eggs

Most fish lay jellylike eggs. Some guard their eggs until they hatch. Others, like cod, just squirt millions of tiny eggs into the sea. This is called spawning.



Fish do not need eyelids—seawater keeps their eyes wet and free of dirt.

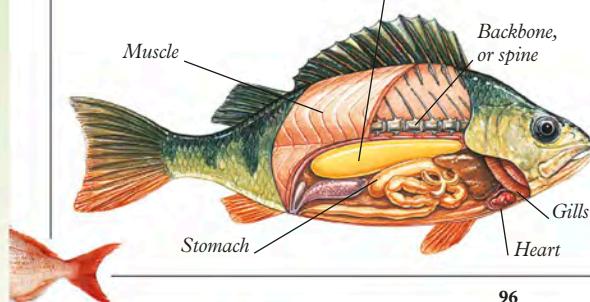
Pectoral fin



Breathing under water

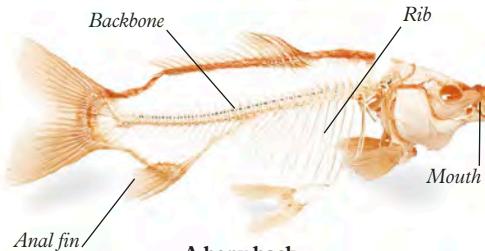
Water flows into the fish's mouth, over red flaps called gills, and out through the gill openings. The gills take the oxygen out of the water.

Bony fish have a "balloon" inside them called a swim bladder. It can be filled with air to help them float.



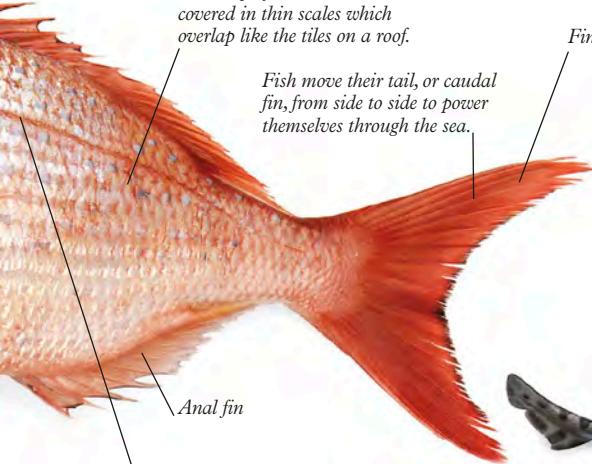
Inside story

Most of the important parts of a bony fish are in the lower half of its body. The top half is full of muscles, which move the tail.



A bony back

The bones inside an animal are known as a skeleton. Fish were the first animals to develop a backbone.



The body of this sea bream is covered in thin scales which overlap like the tiles on a roof.

Fish move their tail, or caudal fin, from side to side to power themselves through the sea.

Anal fin

The dorsal and anal fins stop fish from rolling over in the water.

Fish have a long, thin tube just under the surface of their skin, called a lateral line. It has little lumps of jelly next to it that wobble when the water moves. Fish can feel this—so they know if something is moving near them.

Types of fish

There are three types of fish—those with hard skeletons made of bone, those with skeletons made of rubbery tissue called cartilage, and those that do not have jaws.

Bony fish



Mackerel



Sea horse



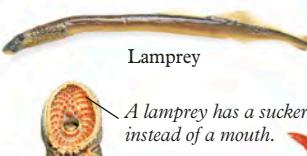
Plaice

Cartilaginous fish



Spotted leopard shark

Jawless fish



Lamprey

A lamprey has a sucker instead of a mouth.



SHARKS

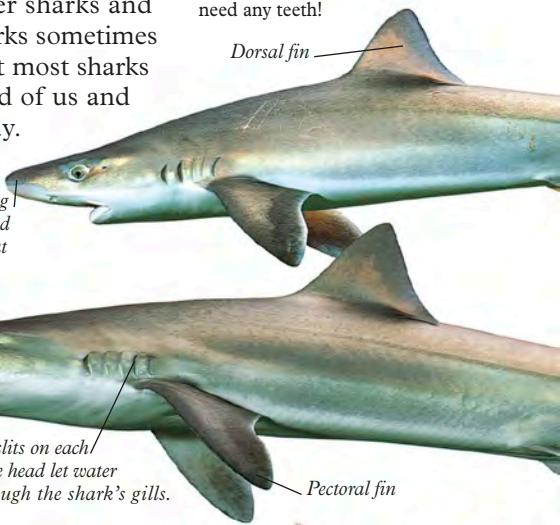
Sharks are the best hunters in the sea. With their terrible teeth and huge jaws, they can tear up seals, turtles, fish, and even wooden boats! Tiger sharks and great white sharks sometimes bite people, but most sharks are more scared of us and soon swim away.



See how big this jaw is!

Sharks are like a swimming nose. They can smell injured animals and other food that is hundreds of yards away.

All living animals produce a small amount of electricity. You cannot sense it, but sharks can. Little dimples on their head work like television aerials to tell them where animals are hiding.



Super swimmer

A typical shark swims by bending from side to side. First it moves its head, then its body, and last of all its long tail. This wave travels down its body, pushing the shark through the sea.

Shark attack!

Just before they bite, sharks bend their noses up and move their teeth forward.



Sand tiger shark

Great white shark

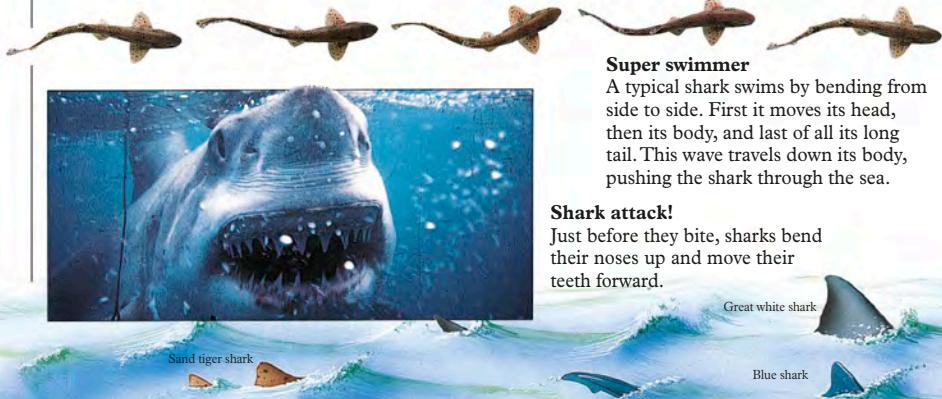
Blue shark



Teeth as sharp as knives

Shark teeth can cut through skin and crunch up bones, but they soon get dull. Each tooth only lasts for a few weeks, then it falls out and is replaced by a new one. Basking sharks eat plankton so they don't need any teeth!

Dorsal fin





Close-up of shark skin

Shark shapes

Not all sharks look like the ones you see in films; some are tiny and others are quite odd shapes.



Cookiecutter shark



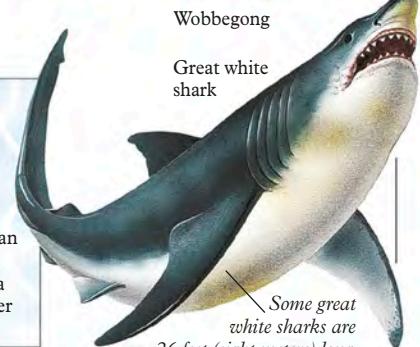
Hammerhead shark



Prickly dogfish

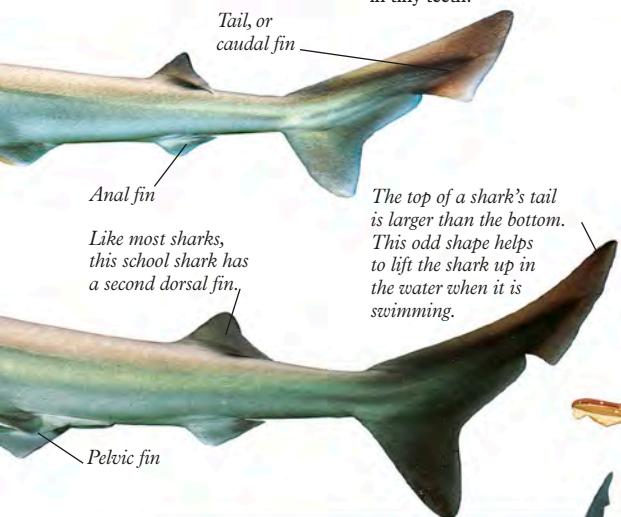


Wobbegong



Great white shark

Some great white sharks are 26 feet (eight meters) long.

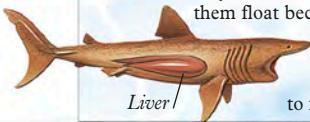


The top of a shark's tail is larger than the bottom. This odd shape helps to lift the shark up in the water when it is swimming.

Sink or swim

Sharks, like many fish, are heavier than water, so they should sink to the bottom of the sea. Bony fish have inflatable swim bladders to stop this from happening, but sharks have oily livers instead. The oil helps them float because it is lighter than water. There is enough oil inside a basking shark's liver to fill five big buckets!

Liver



Porbeagle shark



Pelagic thresher shark

Graceful shark



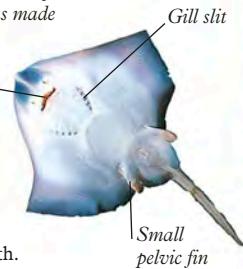
Oceanic whitetip shark

RAYS

Rays are cartilaginous fish closely related to sharks but with flattened, diamond-shaped bodies. Some of these shy, gentle animals can be glimpsed using their winglike fins to glide gracefully through open water, but others spend most of their time feeding on the seabed.



Like sharks, rays have skeletons made of cartilage.

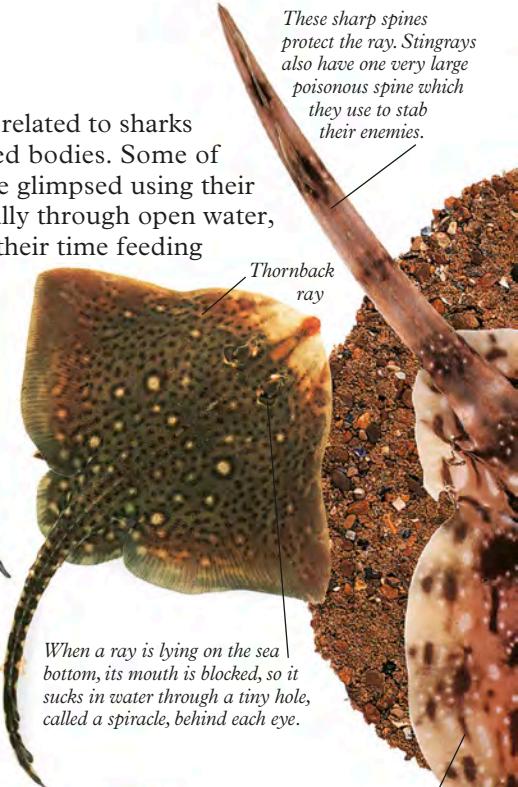


Upside down

On the underside of a ray, there are ten gill slits and a mouth that is full of flat teeth.

Mighty manta

Most rays are less than 6.5 feet (two meters) wide, but a manta ray can grow to more than 30 feet (nine meters) in width. Luckily for divers, it only eats plankton and small fish.

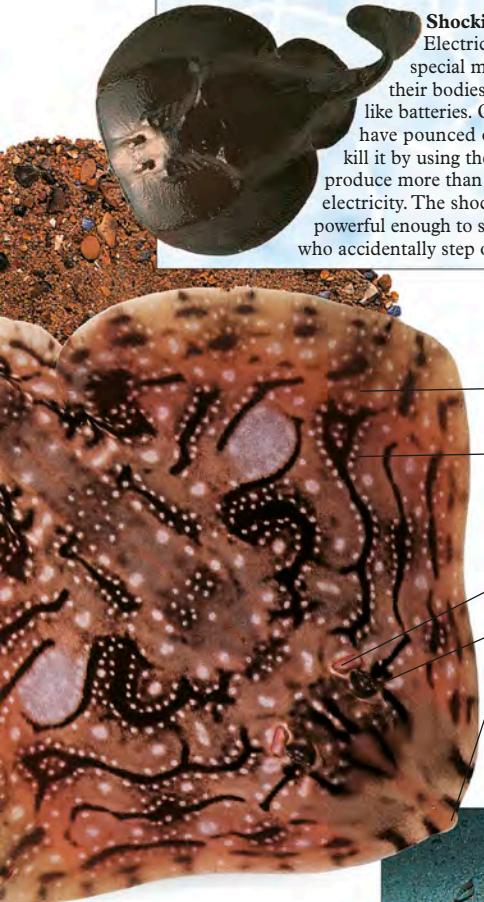


By flapping their fins, rays / disturb the sand and uncover crabs—a tasty snack for a ray.

Underwater flying

A ray is one of the most graceful swimmers in the sea. Flapping its broad fins, it “flies” like an underwater bird.





Peek-a-boo

When rays hide in the sand, their large, bulging eyes stick out. They have to keep a lookout for food and also for sharks that like to eat rays.



Shocking ray
Electric rays have special muscles in their bodies that act like batteries. Once they have pounced on a fish, they kill it by using these muscles to produce more than 200 volts of electricity. The shocks are powerful enough to stun people who accidentally step on these rays.

Ray shapes

There are more than 500 different types of rays. Half of these are skates.



Sawfish



Guitarfish



Skate



Eagle ray



Stingray





WHALES

Millions of years ago whales used to walk. Since then, they have changed a lot. They have grown bigger and bigger, their back legs have disappeared, and their front legs have turned into flippers. They can't live on land anymore, but they are still mammals. This means that they breathe air and feed their babies milk.

There are two sorts of whales: those that have teeth and those that do not. Whales that have no teeth are called baleen whales.

The whale moves its tail up and down to push itself through the sea. The fastest whale is the sei. It can reach speeds of 40 miles (64 kilometers) an hour, 10 times faster than a person can swim.

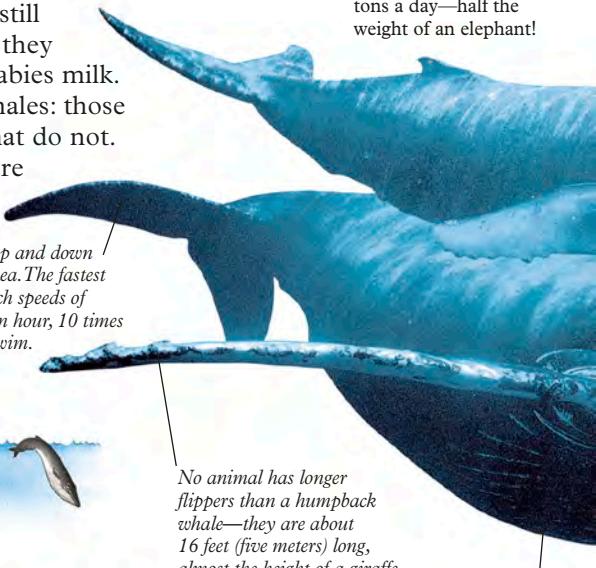
There she blows!

When a whale surfaces to fill its lungs with fresh air, warm air escapes from its blowhole. This escaping air mists up, just like your breath on a cold day, and forms a tall spout called a blow.



Krill for supper

Baleen whales eat krill, a kind of plankton. A large whale can eat two tons a day—half the weight of an elephant!



No animal has longer flippers than a humpback whale—they are about 16 feet (five meters) long, almost the height of a giraffe.

Deep throat grooves let a baleen whale's mouth stretch so that it can hold vast amounts of water and krill.

Whales have thick fat, called blubber.

Jumping for joy

Humpback whales love to leap right out of the water. This is called breaching. When they crash back into the sea, they make a huge splash!



Baleen whales



Open wide

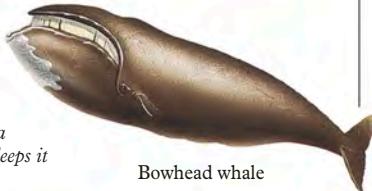
Strips of baleen, or whalebone, hang from the top of a baleen whale's mouth. Water escapes through this thick fringe, but krill are trapped.



Gray whale



Minke whale



Bowhead whale

Toothed whales



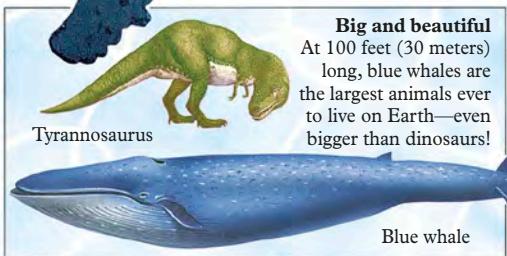
Beluga, or white whale



Narwhal



Sperm whale

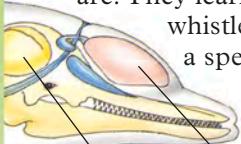


Big and beautiful

At 100 feet (30 meters) long, blue whales are the largest animals ever to live on Earth—even bigger than dinosaurs!

DOLPHINS

Dolphins are small, toothed whales. Some people think that these slim, smooth-skinned mammals are as intelligent as we are. They learn quickly and seem to talk to one another with whistles and clicks. Since ancient times, there has been a special friendship between humans and these playful animals. There are many stories of dolphins saving drowning sailors.

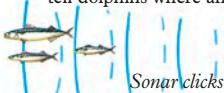


Melon

Brain

Built-in sonar

A dolphin uses sound to find its food and to work out where it is. The melon, a fatty organ in its head, concentrates a stream of clicks which bounce back when they hit something. These echoes tell dolphins where an object is.



Sonar clicks

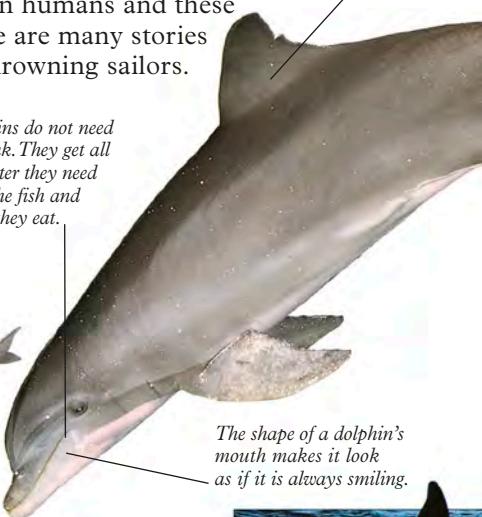


Toothy grin

This bottlenose dolphin has more than 100 pointed teeth, which are about 0.3 inches (eight millimeters) long.



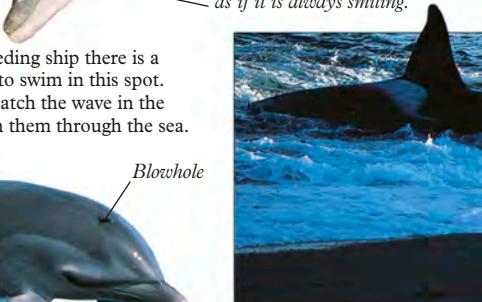
Dolphins do not need to drink. They get all the water they need from the fish and squid they eat.



The shape of a dolphin's mouth makes it look as if it is always smiling.

Hitching a ride

Just in front of a speeding ship there is a wave. Dolphins love to swim in this spot. Like surfers, if they catch the wave in the right way, it will push them through the sea.



Blowhole

Most dolphins have a long snout, called a beak.

Family life

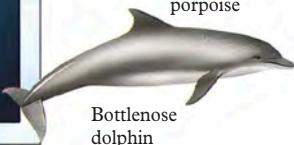
Dolphins live in family groups called pods. Baby dolphins often stay with their mothers for many years. They learn how to catch fish, signal to each other, and escape from sharks by copying other members of their pod.



Types of dolphins



Harbor
porpoise



Bottlenose
dolphin



Striped
dolphin



Common dolphin

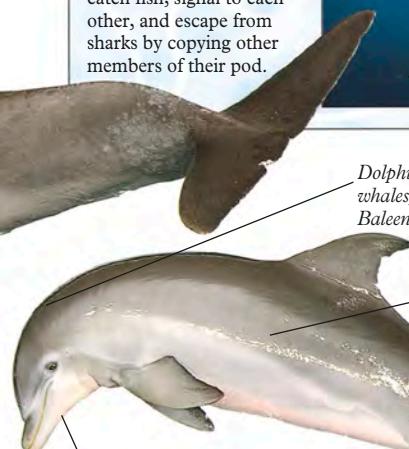
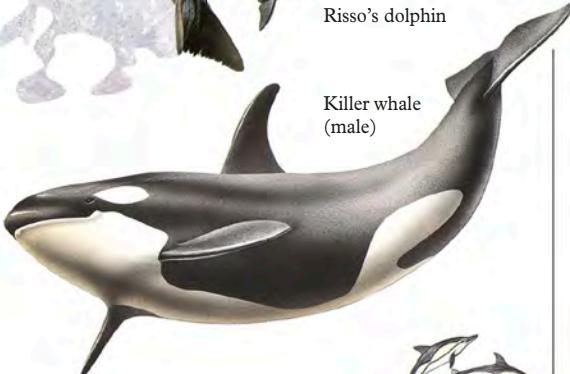
Tail fluke



Risso's dolphin



Killer whale
(male)



Dolphins, like all toothed whales, have only one blowhole. Baleen whales have two.

Bottlenose dolphins are very playful. They love to leap out of the water.

Just as you have your own personal name and voice, every dolphin has its own whistle, which other dolphins recognize.



The biggest dolphin

Killer whales are fierce dolphins which can grow to be 30 feet (nine meters) long. This one is trying to grab a sea lion to eat.



SEALS

Seals are warm-blooded mammals, which means that they can make their own heat. Because they often swim in very cold water, they need to be able to keep this heat inside their bodies. Seals can't put on a winter coat like you to keep warm. Instead, they are covered in short hair or fur and have a layer of fat, called blubber. Sometimes, when seals swim in warmer water, they get too hot and have to fan their flippers in the air to cool down!



Ball of fluff

Baby seals, or pups, are born on land. For a few weeks, many of them have white, fluffy fur.

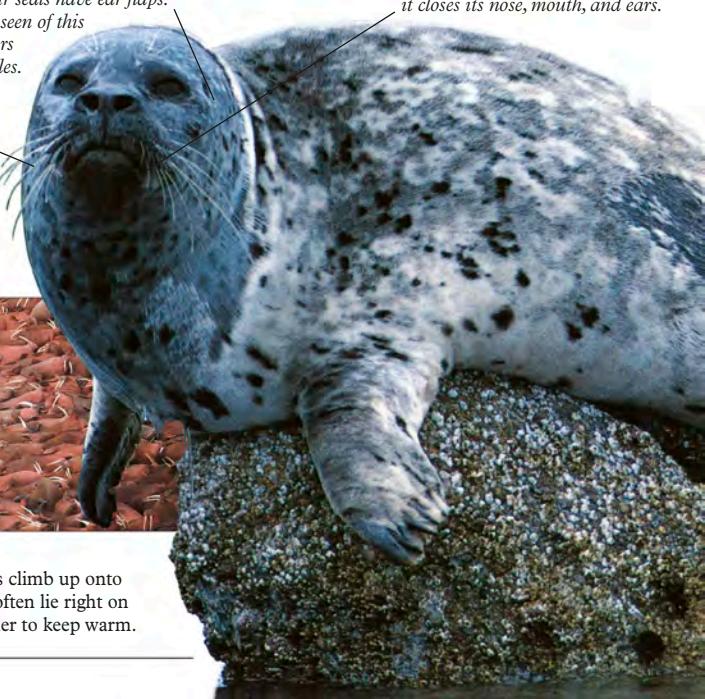
All seals have good hearing, but only sea lions and fur seals have ear flaps. All that can be seen of this harbor seal's ears are two tiny holes.

These whiskers, which are 40 times thicker than your hair, can sense movement in the water. This helps the seal find fish, clams, squid, and octopus to eat.



Pile up!

When walruses climb up onto beaches, they often lie right on top of each other to keep warm.



When a seal dives under water, it closes its nose, mouth, and ears.



Flip flop

Sea lions, fur seals, and walruses use their front flippers to sit up straight. Their back flippers can turn forward. This means that they can walk, and even run, on dry land. True seals can only slide around on their bellies when they leave the sea.



Its smooth, streamlined body helps the seal speed away from killer whales and polar bears.

Blubber is between three to four inches (seven and 10 centimeters) thick.

Seal-eating seals

Leopard seals are fierce. They leap out of the sea and thump onto the ice to grab penguins and other seals.

This seal is less than 6.5 feet (two meters) long from nose to back flippers.

An elephant seal can measure more than three times that!

Hair seals, like this harbor or common seal, speed through the sea by moving their back flippers up and down.

Types of seals

There are three different groups of seals.



True seals

Elephant seal



Eared seals

Northern fur seal



California sea lion

Walrus

Male walruses fight each other with their big tusks.



INSECTS AND SPIDERS

Hundreds of millions of years ago, long before dinosaurs arrived, there were insects on Earth. Today there are more than a million known types of insects, and scientists think there are many more waiting to be found.

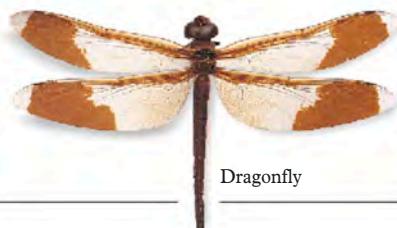
All insects start as eggs and most go through a larval stage. Their bodies are divided into three parts—head, thorax, and abdomen. Adults have six legs, and most have wings.

Spiders are not insects—they are arachnids. In fact, spiders love to eat insects. Unlike an insect, a spider has eight legs, and its head and thorax are joined.

All insects and spiders are small animals that creep through undergrowth and live in gardens and forests. But occasionally, they come to stay in our homes.



Garden spider



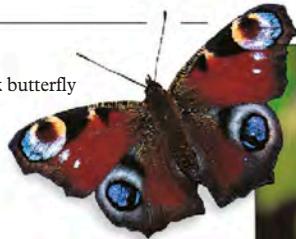
Dragonfly



Honeybee



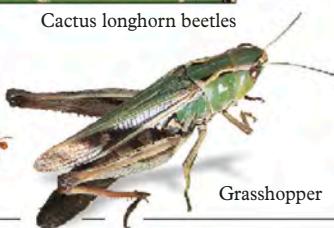
Peacock butterfly



Cactus longhorn beetles



Red ants



Grasshopper



Peacock butterfly caterpillar



Common housefly



FLIES

You have probably seen a housefly zooming around your kitchen. Most people think of flies as pests—annoying little creatures that buzz around us, bite us, walk on our food, and spread disease. But in other ways, flies are a necessary and useful part of our world. They help to pollinate plants and are a source of food for a variety of other animals.



A hoverfly taking off

Sensitive flies

Flies have surprisingly strong senses. This means they have very good eyesight, and a keen sense of taste and smell.



Nice to see you!

Our eyes have just one rounded lens. A housefly has thousands of six-sided lenses. Each lens sees a part of a bigger picture. This creates an image of colored dots, like a pixelated picture from a digital camera.



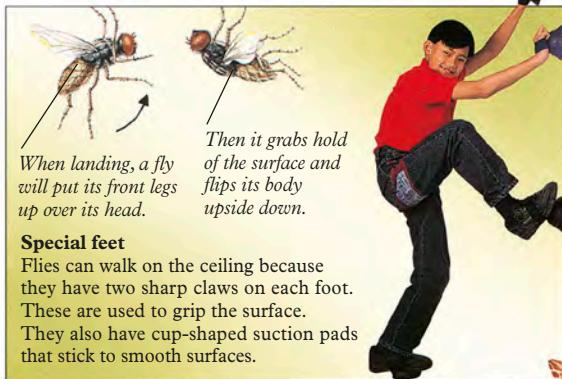
Flies have two large compound eyes which see colors and shapes.

Many flies, like the housefly, have small antennae.

When the fly finds liquid food, it simply sucks it up. If it finds solid food, the fly first dissolves it with special juices.

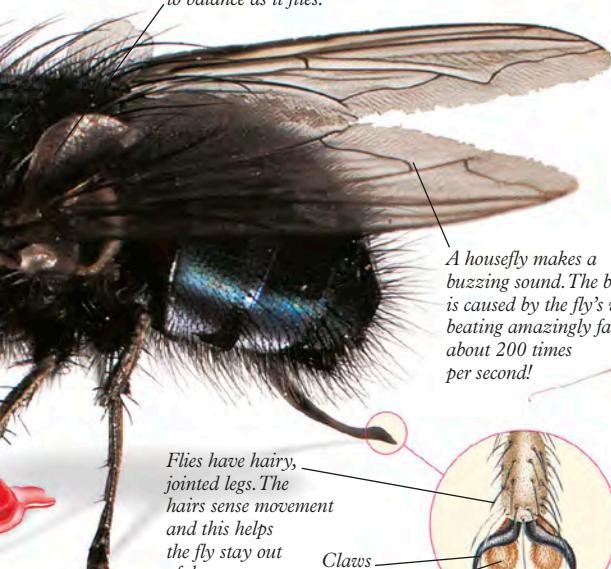
At the end of a fly's mouth are two pads that look like lips.





Special feet

Flies can walk on the ceiling because they have two sharp claws on each foot. These are used to grip the surface. They also have cup-shaped suction pads that stick to smooth surfaces.



A housefly makes a buzzing sound. The buzz is caused by the fly's wings beating amazingly fast—about 200 times per second!

Flittering flies



South American mydas fly



Robber fly



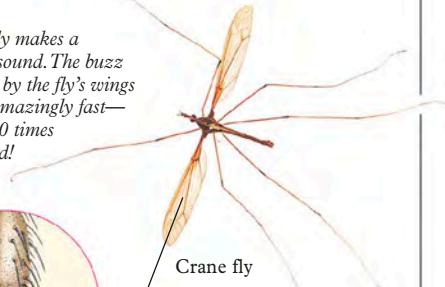
Hoverfly



Stalk-eyed fly



Horsefly



There are about 15,000 known types of crane fly in the world. In the UK, they are sometimes called daddy-longlegs.





BEETLES



There are more species of beetles in the world than any other kind of animal. It is thought there are at least 300,000. Most are plant-eaters, but some battling beetles attack and eat other insects and are quite ferocious. Beetles can be pests because they eat valuable crops. But mostly they are helpful to us because they eat dead plants and animals and return them to the Earth as important nutrients.

Ready for battle

A beetle's hard outer casing acts like a protective armor.



Garden visitor

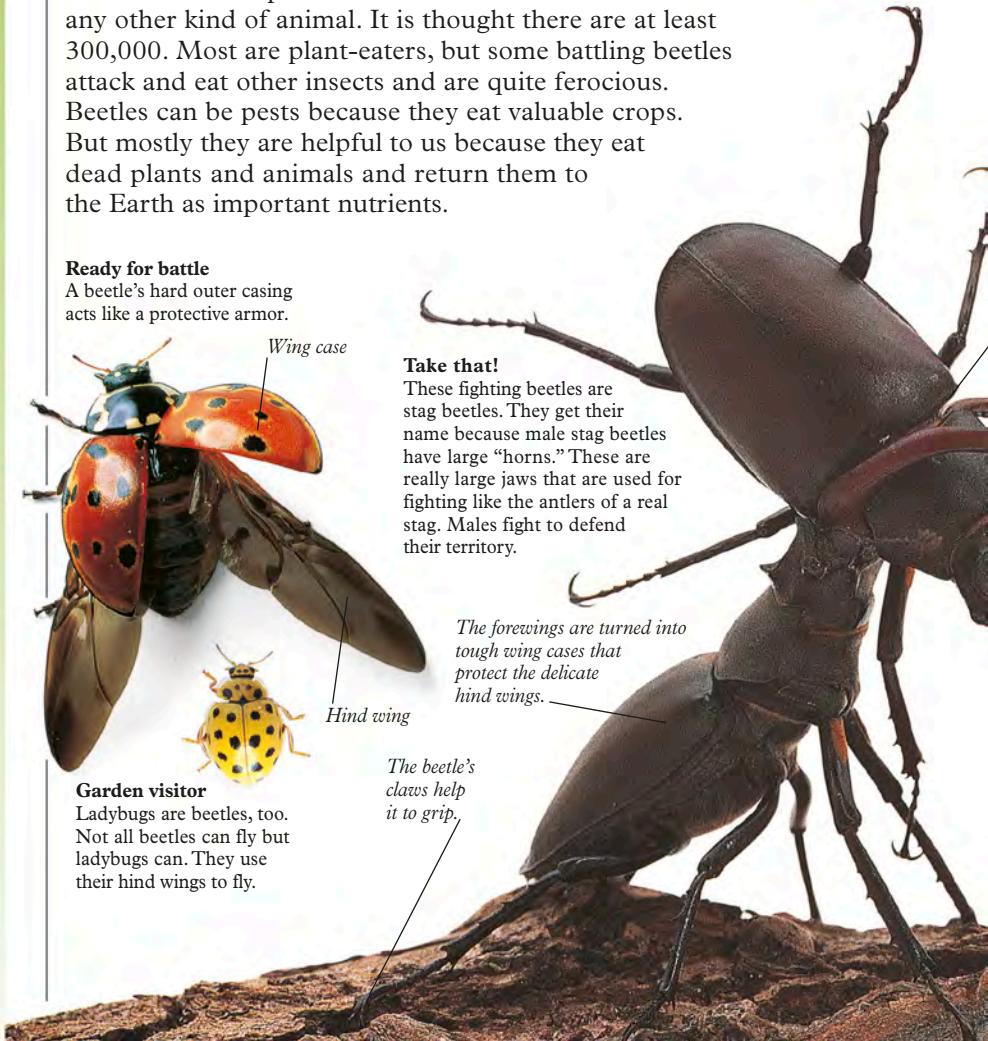
Ladybugs are beetles, too. Not all beetles can fly but ladybugs can. They use their hind wings to fly.

Take that!

These fighting beetles are stag beetles. They get their name because male stag beetles have large "horns." These are really large jaws that are used for fighting like the antlers of a real stag. Males fight to defend their territory.

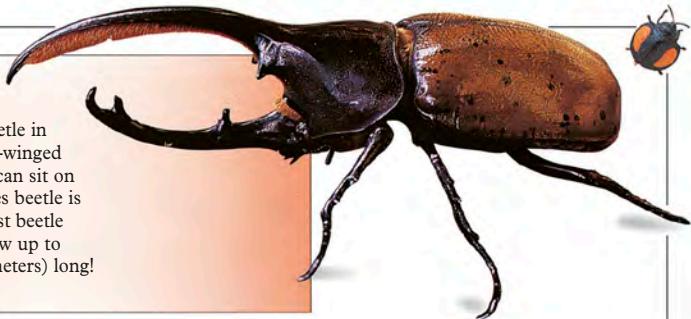
The forewings are turned into tough wing cases that protect the delicate hind wings.

The beetle's claws help it to grip.



Little and large

The smallest known beetle in the world is the feather-winged beetle. It is so small it can sit on a pinhead. The Hercules beetle is thought to be the longest beetle in the world. It can grow up to seven inches (17 centimeters) long!



Fighting males lift each other off the ground. They do this by grabbing their opponent around the middle.



Night lights

Fireflies are not really flies, they are beetles. At night, the females put on a light show as they flash their tails to attract a mate. They are able to do this because they have a special chemical in their body.

Hard, antlerlike jaws.

Beetles have palps to help them sense food.



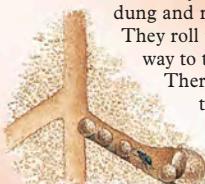
Beetle storing dung

If it's attacked, it fires off a mixture of burning chemicals.

Roll over

Dung beetles go to a lot of trouble to find a safe and nutritious home for their young. They collect animal dung and roll it into large balls. They roll the dung balls all the way to their underground homes.

There they lay their eggs in the dung. When the beetle larvae hatch, they discover a tasty meal in front of them!



Valiant beetles



Rove beetle



Tortoise beetle



Giraffe beetle



Bombardier beetle

CATERPILLARS



Caterpillars are like tiny eating machines. They spend most of their time chomping on leaves. Caterpillars are actually the young of butterflies and moths. They hatch from the eggs the adult female has laid on plants. With constant eating they get bigger and bigger, until they are ready to change into adult butterflies and moths.

A new skin
Caterpillar skin cannot stretch. So as it gets larger, the caterpillar breaks out of its skin. Underneath is a new, larger skin which will last until the caterpillar needs to molt again.



Hatching out
The butterfly's eggs are laid on the underside of a leaf.



Caterpillars produce silk from special glands and force it out through a spinneret under the head.



Caterpillars have twelve tiny, simple eyes, called ocelli, on their head.



The caterpillar uses its jaws to bite its way out of the egg.

The caterpillar's head is armed with a pair of stout jaws called mandibles.

The caterpillar pulls itself free of the eggshell and takes its first walk.



The caterpillar's first meal is the eggshell itself, which is full of good food.



The body is divided into 13 segments.

Caterpillars test food and guide it to their mouth with mouthparts called maxillary palps.



Wonderful caterpillars

Caterpillars can be hairy or spiny, and have unusual shapes.

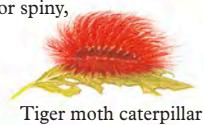


Cabbage white caterpillar



Puss moth caterpillar

Like most insects, caterpillars breathe through openings called spiracles.



Tiger moth caterpillar



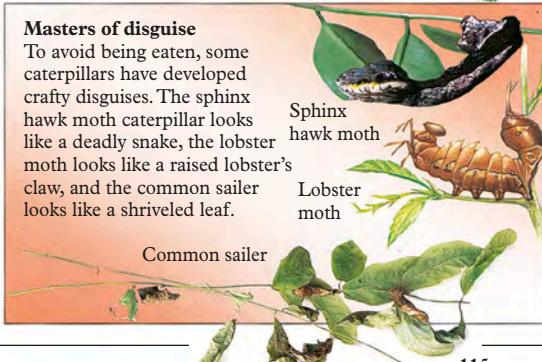
Emperor moth caterpillar

The five pairs of stumpy, suckerlike legs are called prolegs. The caterpillar uses them for holding onto plant stalks.



Masters of disguise

To avoid being eaten, some caterpillars have developed crafty disguises. The sphinx hawk moth caterpillar looks like a deadly snake, the lobster moth looks like a raised lobster's claw, and the common sailer looks like a shriveled leaf.



Common sailer

Silkworms

Silk is produced by most moth caterpillars. But the finest silk is produced by the silkworm caterpillar, often known as a silkworm. After the caterpillars have spun themselves into a silken cocoon, they are put into boiling water. The silk is removed and spun into threads to create material for clothes.



Excuse me, I'm changing

To become adult moths, most moth caterpillars spin themselves a cocoon using silk, which comes out of their spinnerets. Inside, they undergo astonishing physical changes.





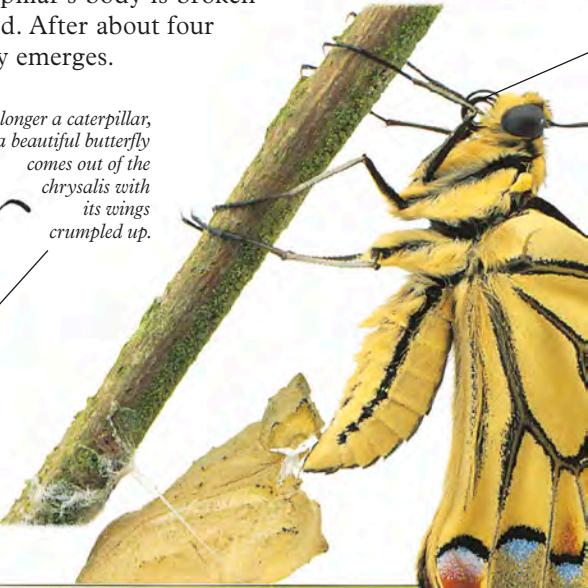
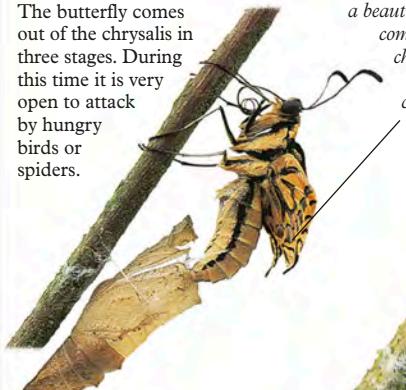
BUTTERFLIES

Butterflies are perhaps the most beautiful of all insects. It is amazing to think that a fat, leaf-eating caterpillar can become a brightly colored, fluttering creature of the air. The change happens in the butterfly chrysalis. The caterpillar's body is broken down and completely changed. After about four weeks, a fully formed butterfly emerges.

Time to wake up

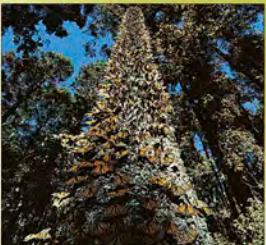
The butterfly comes out of the chrysalis in three stages. During this time it is very open to attack by hungry birds or spiders.

1. No longer a caterpillar, a beautiful butterfly comes out of the chrysalis with its wings crumpled up.



Monarchs on the move

Most butterflies are born, live, and die in one place. But when winter comes to the eastern and western coasts of North America, thousands of monarchs fly south to the warmth of California and Mexico. When warm weather returns to their first home, they fly north again.



Happy landings

A clouded yellow butterfly comes in to land on a thistle. Butterfly flight is more controlled than it looks. The insect is able to change course instantly and make sudden landings.

Butterflies feed through a tube called a proboscis. This is coiled up when not in use.

Butterflies have clubbed antennae.

2. The butterfly must stay still for many hours, as blood is pumped into the wing veins to stretch the wings. Later it holds its wings apart to let them harden.

In the background

Some butterflies make a tasty meal for birds. But if they are able to blend in with their background, they may avoid being eaten. The open wings of the Indian leaf butterfly have a striking orange pattern. But when its wings are closed, the butterfly looks exactly like an old, dry leaf.

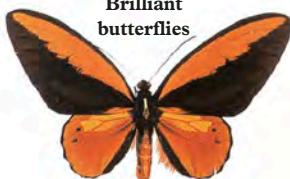


Wings open.

Wings closed, resting on leaf.



Brilliant butterflies



Wallace's golden birdwing



Glass swallowtail butterfly



88 butterfly



Cramer's blue morpho butterfly

Scaly wings

The wings of both butterflies and moths are covered with tiny scales, which overlap like the tiles on a roof. Bright colors can either be used to attract a mate, or to warn predators that the butterfly, or moth, is not good to eat.

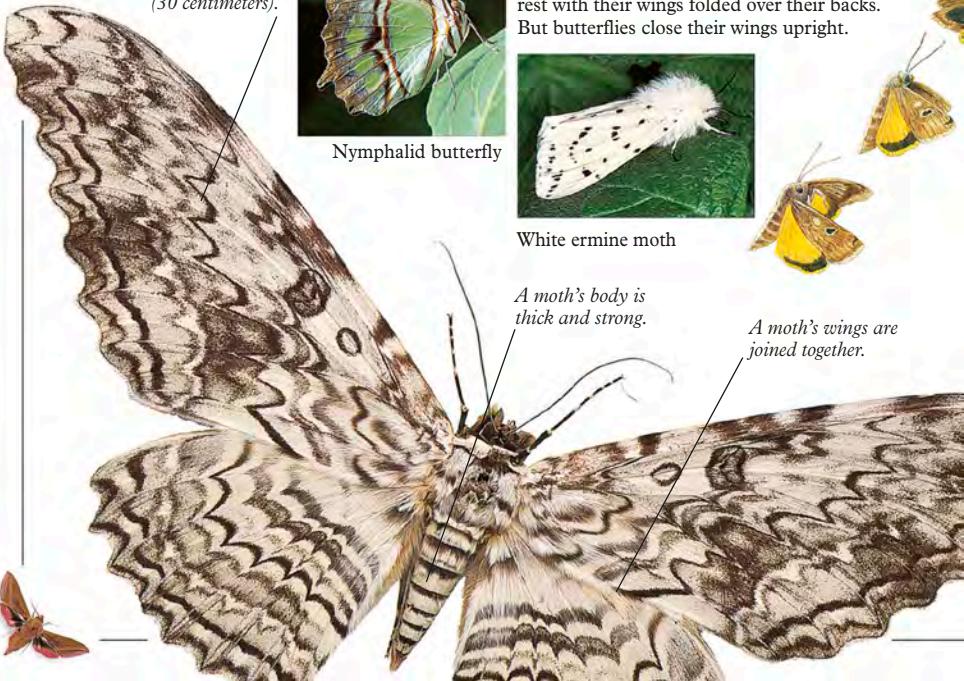




MOTHS

Most moths are night-fliers, and their strong senses of smell and hearing make them well suited to a nighttime existence. They can easily find their way through darkness and although attracted to light, they are dazed by it. Moths rest by day, and many are colored to look like tree bark or leaves so that they cannot be spotted by natural enemies such as birds and lizards.

The South American ghost moth has one of the biggest wingspans of any moth. Wingtip to wingtip, it can measure up to 12 inches (30 centimeters).



Moths' antennae are straight or fernlike. They are used for smelling out nectar or other moths at night.



Wings at rest

One way to tell a moth from a butterfly is to see how the insect folds its wings. Most moths rest with their wings folded over their backs. But butterflies close their wings upright.



White ermine moth



A moth's body is thick and strong.

A moth's wings are joined together.

Whoosss whooo?

To scare off enemies, like birds, the wing patterns of some moths mimic the appearance of fierce animals. The great peacock moth has big eyespots on its wings which look like an owl's eyes. With these staring back at them, birds think twice before attacking!



The veins of the moth's wings help to warm or cool the insect.

A real eyeful!

Pyraustinae moths have strange feeding habits. With their long proboscises, they drink the tears of animals such as cows and buffaloes. They are so gentle, that the animal's eye does not become irritated.

Day-flying moths



Colombian blue wing moth



Madagascan red-tailed moth



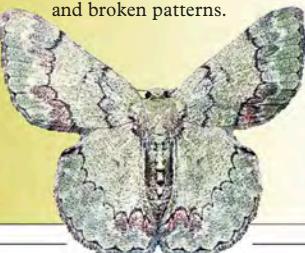
Verdant hawk moth



Sloan's urania moth

Spot the moth!

This geometrid moth from the jungles of Borneo looks like lichen on a tree trunk. The secret of its camouflage is not just color, but also ragged outlines and broken patterns.



ANTS



Weaving away

Weaver ants make their nests in trees. They sew leaves together using a sticky silk thread produced by their larvae. The queen lives inside the leaf envelope.

Ants live together in nests that are like underground towns. There may be millions of ants living in one nest. Most of these are female and are called workers. Some workers build and repair the nest, while some are “soldiers” and guard the entrance. Others gather food for the larvae and the huge queen. Her life is spent laying millions of eggs, and the survival of the nest depends upon her well-being.

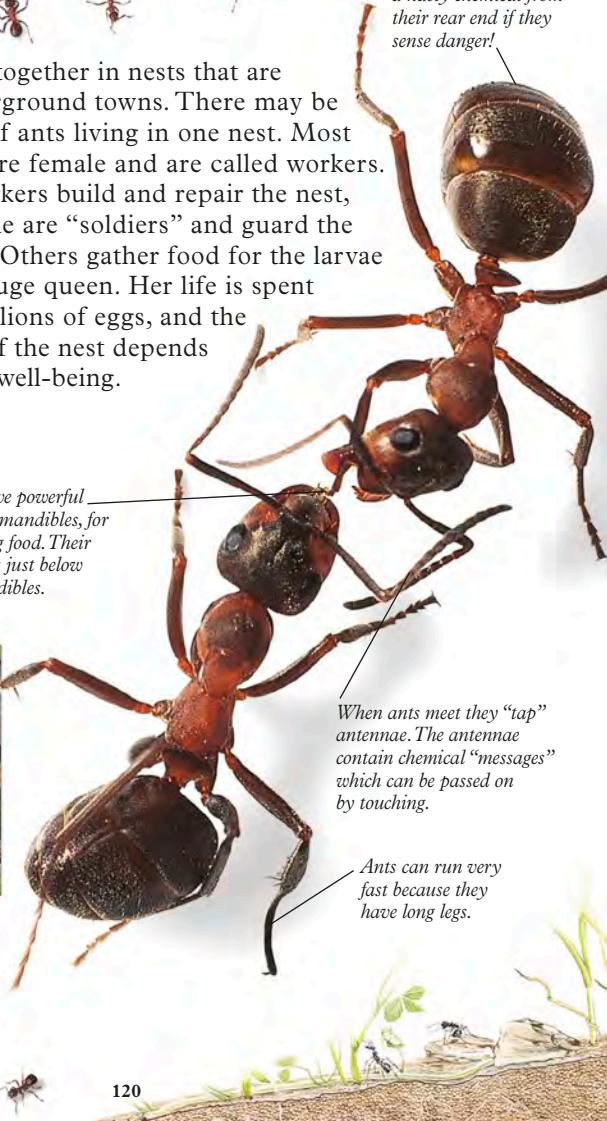
Some ants will spray a nasty chemical from their rear end if they sense danger!



Farming fungus

Leafcutter ants are the farmers of the ant world. They cut up bits of leaf and take them back to the nest. Fungus grows on the rotting leaf—and then the ants feed on the fungus!

Ants have powerful jaws, or mandibles, for chopping food. Their mouth is just below the mandibles.



When ants meet they “tap” antennae. The antennae contain chemical “messages” which can be passed on by touching.

Ants can run very fast because they have long legs.

Left, right!

Army ants from South America are very fierce insects. They are nomadic, which means they are always on the move. They march in columns through the forest, killing and eating everything in their path. Here they are raiding a wasp's nest.



Living pantries
Some honeypot ant workers spend their whole lives feeding on nectar. Their abdomens swell and when food is hard to find, other workers use them as a food supply.



Inside an ant's nest

The success of an ant's nest relies on the hardworking and organized inhabitants.

The queen lays her eggs in the royal chamber.

Workers take care of the ant larvae.

A network of tunnels joins the chambers in the ant's nest.

Soldier ant guarding the entrance.



Bustling ants

Red ant

Black ant

Harvester ant

Wood ant

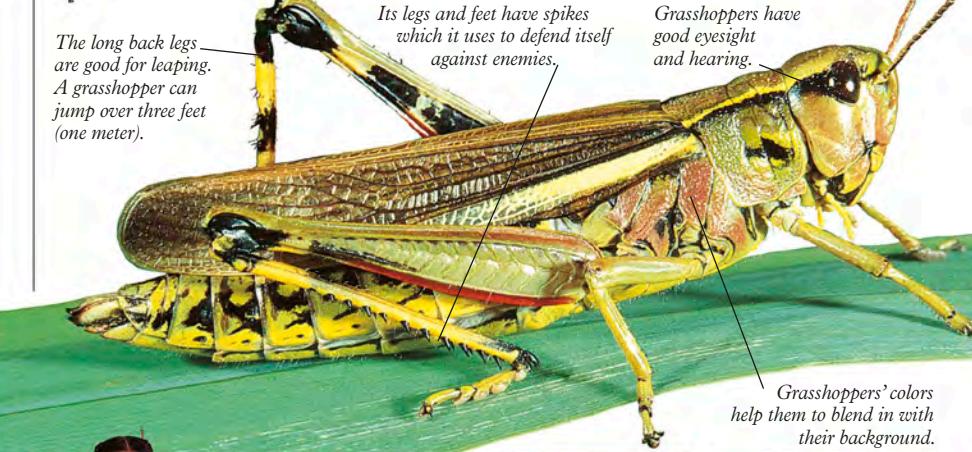
Dinoponera—the largest ant





GRASSHOPPERS

Grasshoppers are known for the “ticking” sounds they make and for their ability to leap high into the air. There are more than 20,000 different kinds of grasshoppers in the world. Grasshoppers are plant-eaters, feeding on leaves and stems. Normally, they live alone. But under special conditions, some species undergo a series of physical changes. They increase in size, become more brightly colored, and gather in the millions to become a swarm of hungry locusts.



Name that tune

Grasshoppers are good fiddle players.

They make music the same way a violin produces sound. The grasshopper’s leg is its bow and the tough wing vein is the string. Crickets are also known for their musical ability. They use their wings to make sounds. One wing has a thick vein with bumps on it. This is called the file. The cricket rubs the file over a rough ridge on the other wing to make cricket music.

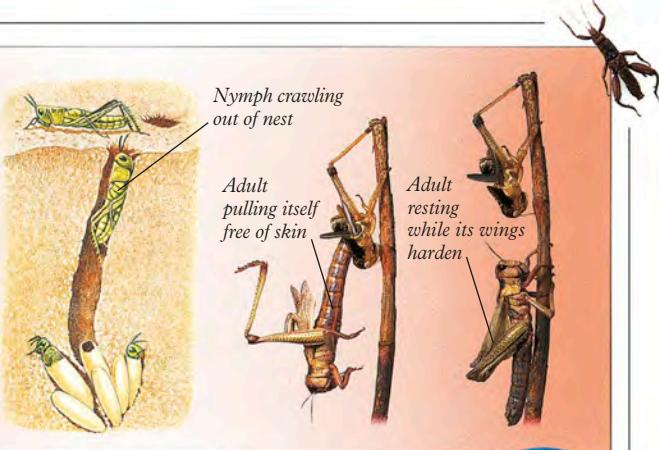


Chirping cousins

Crickets belong to the same insect group as grasshoppers, but crickets have longer antennae and like eating other insects.

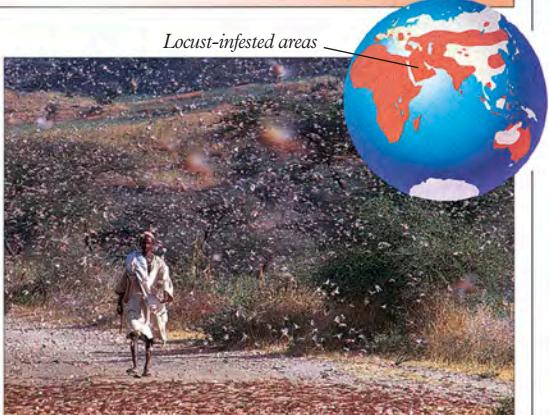
Growing up

Female locusts lay their eggs in the sand. The babies, called nymphs, hatch and dig their way out. When they appear, they are tiny versions of their parents. In order to become fully grown adults, the nymphs molt between three and five times. After each molt the nymphs are bigger than before. When they molt for the final time, they emerge with full-sized wings.



The trouble with locusts

When heavy rains fall in hot, dry regions, lush plant life begins to grow. With lots of food, large numbers of grasshoppers get together to mate. After mating, they eat all the plant life around them and grow much larger. In search of more food, they take to the air in huge swarms, devouring fields of valuable crops.

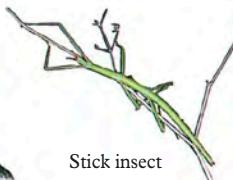


Extended family

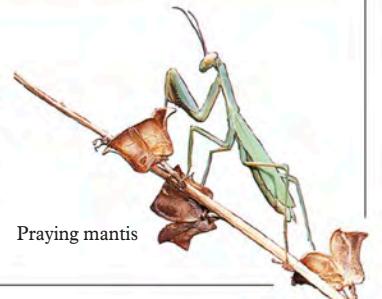
All of these insects are related to grasshoppers but they have quite different features—and very clever disguises.



Leaf insect



Stick insect



Praying mantis



BEES



Bumblebee



You have probably heard the buzz of a honeybee as it flies from flower to flower. During the spring and summer months, bees spend their time collecting food. There are thousands of different types of bees and many of them live alone. But social bees, such as honeybees, live in large nests or hives. They gather nectar to be stored in the hive and turned into honey.

As the honeybee moves from flower to flower, bright yellow pollen sticks to its body. The bee combs the pollen into pollen baskets on its back legs and carries it back to the hive, where it is turned into food.



Nest-making

Wild honeybees often build their nests in trees, hanging the waxy honeycomb from branches.

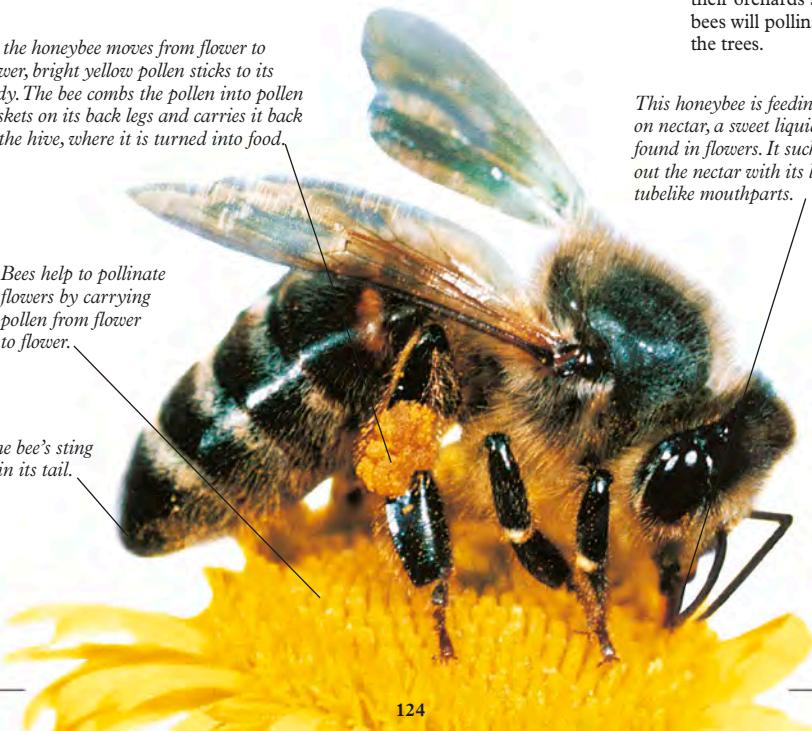
Working hives

Man-made hives are specifically made to house thousands of bees. Farmers place these hives in their orchards so the bees will pollinate the trees.

Bees help to pollinate flowers by carrying pollen from flower to flower.

The bee's sting is in its tail.

This honeybee is feeding on nectar, a sweet liquid found in flowers. It sucks out the nectar with its long, tubelike mouthparts.



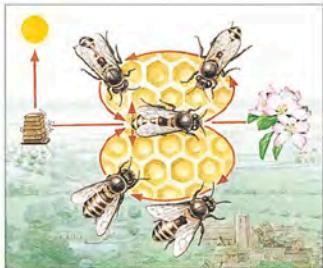


Sweet drink

Worker honeybees look after the young and turn nectar into another sweet liquid we call honey.

A large hive can hold up to 50,000 bees.

Inside the hive, the bees store honey in a comb, which is made up of thousands of little six-sided cells. The bees feed on the honey during the cold winter months.



Queen bee

Every hive needs a queen. The queen bee mates with the male, called a drone. She then lays all the eggs. New hives are formed in summer when a young queen leads lots of workers out of the old hive to a new one.



Shall we dance?

Worker bees scout for food. When they find a good supply they do a dance—in a figure-eight pattern—to tell the other bees where the food is. The bees in the hive then know where the food is by the angle of the “figure eight” and the position of the sun in the sky.



Orchid bee



Parasitic bee



Asian carpenter bee

A feast fit for a queen

Royal jelly is actually bees' milk. It is filled with good things like sugar, protein, and vitamins. The worker bee larvae do not get to eat the royal food—they are fed on pollen and honey. Only the honeybee larvae that are destined to become queens eat royal jelly. Because it is so rich in vitamins and proteins, people now use it to make face creams, soap, and vitamins.

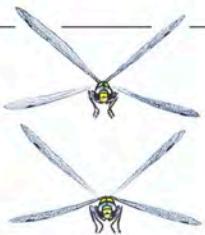
Royal jelly products





DRAGONFLIES

Many insects are good fliers, but dragonflies are truly the champions of flight. Millions of years ago, enormous dragonflies patrolled the skies. Even today's finger-length dragonflies are quite large compared to other insects. Once dragonflies have emerged from their water-based nymph stage, they take to the air, flying at speeds of up to 34 miles (54 kilometers) per hour.



Wing power

Dragonflies have strong muscles which control the base of the wings. In flight, the wings look like a rapidly changing X shape.

Mating dragonflies

Brightly colored male dragonflies cling to the necks of females with their tails.



Laying eggs

When the female is ready to lay her eggs, she dips her abdomen into the water. The eggs sink below the surface where they hatch as wingless nymphs that live underwater for up to four years.

Each pair of clear, veined wings can beat separately. This means that dragonflies can hover.

Dragonflies have excellent eyesight. They have two huge compound eyes. Each eye can have up to 30,000 lenses.

The bristles on the dragonfly's front legs help it to trap prey in the air.



Breaking out

When the nymph is fully developed, it climbs out of the water and clings to a plant stem where it undergoes a spectacular change. The nymph's skin cracks open at the back and an adult dragonfly slowly pulls itself free.



Beautiful friends

The delicately beautiful damselfly and mayfly are related to the powerful dragonfly. They also spend most of their lives under water, as nymphs. When they become adults, they have a short time to live. In that time they must quickly mate and lay eggs so that the next generation can develop.

Mayfly

Damselfly

Mighty dragonflies



Broad-bodied
chaser dragonfly



Emperor dragonfly



Clubtail dragonfly



Common darter
dragonfly

When dragonflies are at rest, their wings are fully open.

Dragonflies are usually very brightly colored. Their bodies are long and slender.

WEB SPIDERS



Spiders are afraid of us, so the only signs we tend to see of them are the silken webs they spin to catch their prey. Not all spiders make webs, but the ones that do, like this funnel-web spider, are good at recycling. When its web gets damaged, the spider eats it, digests the silk, then uses it to spin another one.



I'll eat you later
If a spider catches a tasty insect, but is not hungry, it poisons it but does not kill it. Then it wraps it in silk and keeps it for later.



Up, up and away

When baby spiders—called spiderlings—want to travel long distances they take to the air. They do not have wings but they are still able to fly. They produce a piece of silk and use it like a balloon.



The spiderling suspends itself from a long line.

It makes a loop, which is slowly drawn up by the breeze.

When it's ready to take off, it cuts itself free.



Fatal fascination

Scientists think that insects are attracted to spiderwebs because patterns in the webs reflect ultraviolet light. Unlike us, insects see ultraviolet light and use it to find food.

Spiders do not have bones. Their head and thorax are covered by a hardened shield.

Silk is produced through the spinnerets on the end of the spider's abdomen. Spiders use their legs to pull out the silk.

The saclike abdomen contains the heart, lungs, silk glands, and the reproductive parts.



Ready to attack

This Australian funnel-web spider is one of the world's deadliest. Here it is poised, ready to attack! When spiders catch their prey, usually insects, they use their fangs to poison and kill them. The funnel-web spider, like most spiders, uses its strong digestive juices to dissolve the insect's insides so the spider can suck it dry.



Spiders and webs

The net-casting spider lives in trees, mostly in jungle areas. To catch prey, it spins a sticky net and throws it over passing insects.



Most web spiders have eight simple eyes, called ocelli. But even so, they cannot see very well.

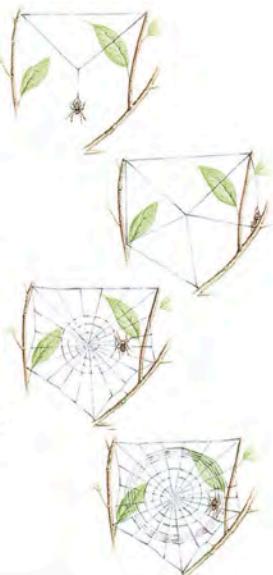
Spiders have a pair of small, leglike appendages, called palps, on each side of their mouthparts. They help spiders smell, taste, and detect prey.

Spiders have eight legs.

Even though spiders do not have ears, they can "listen" to the world around them through their webs. The webs are very sensitive to vibrations in the air.

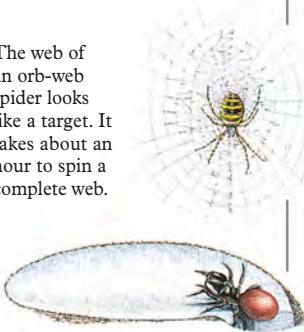
Making a web

Making a web takes time and special care. Spiders only spin new webs when the old ones become messy or damaged.



The water spider spins a web in the shape of a bell under the water. It fills the bell with a bubble of air and moves in.

The web of an orb-web spider looks like a target. It takes about an hour to spin a complete web.



The female purse web spider lives in a silken pouch. When an unsuspecting insect lands on top, the spider bites through the pouch and grabs it.





HUNTING SPIDERS



Many spiders catch their prey without the use of silk. They are called hunting spiders. Some patrol their territory looking for insects to pounce on. Others crouch in burrows and wait for prey to wander by. Unlike web spiders, many hunting spiders have strong jumping

legs and sharp eyesight so that they can easily spot their victims.

This jumping spider is an active hunter, so it doesn't need a web to catch its prey. Instead, these spiders go out to find their prey and pounce on it.

The hairs on the spider's body are very sensitive to vibrations made by moving prey.

All spiders have eight eyes on the front of their heads, but they can come in different sizes and arrangements depending on the type of spider. The eyes of this spider are in rows with two big eyes in the middle of the front row which help them to hunt.



Hide and seek

Some spiders ambush prey instead of trapping or chasing after it. Tree-bark trapdoor spiders, for example, use their powerful jaws to make a burrow with a trapdoor at the entrance. Unseen, they lie in wait behind the trapdoor, ready to leap upon any unsuspecting insects that might crawl by.





Long jumpers

Hunting spiders need good eyesight because they have to see and chase after their next meal. Many can measure exactly the leap they must make onto their victim, as they run along after it.

Full speed ahead

Wolf spiders hunt during the day.

This Australian wolf spider lurks at the entrance of its silk-lined tunnel, ready to race full-speed after prey.



These spiders live anywhere from deserts to forests, or even swamps.

Ready, aim, fire!

Spitting spiders spit when they are hungry. When they spot an insect, they spit streams of sticky gum from each fang. This glues the insect to the ground until the spider can arrive to eat it.



Happy hunters



Brazilian wandering spider



Crab spider



Raft spider



Woodlouse spider

DINOSAURS

Few animals hold such fascination as dinosaurs. The last of these incredible creatures died about 66 million years ago, long before the first humans appeared. Fossilized skeletons and lifelike models can help us imagine what they were like. We know that dinosaurs hatched out of eggs and grew up in just a few years. Scientists believe that some lived like we do, in families where the adults took care of their young. Most dinosaurs had tiny brains, but some may have been smart enough to hunt in packs.

Tyrannosaurus rex head
rex head

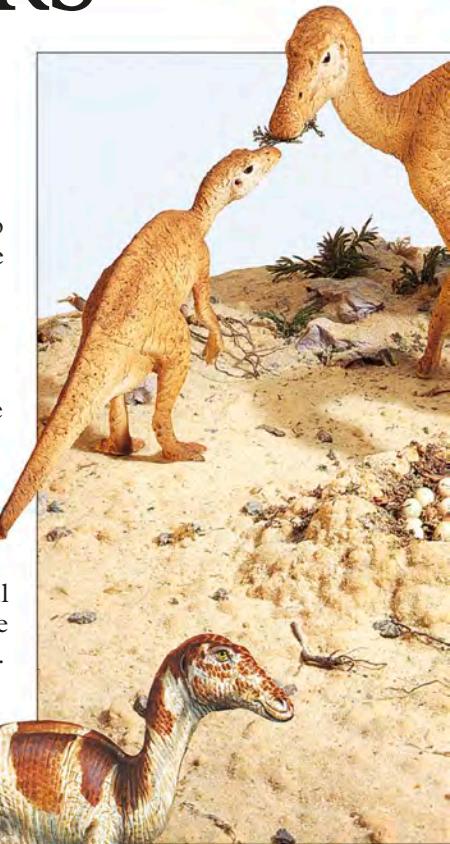
Dinosaurs were the most successful big land animals of all time, and some of their relatives live around us today. We call them birds!



rex head

rex head

Maiasaura
growing up



Camarasaurus skull



Maiasaura family



Barosaurus

Triceratops



Deinonychus's
foot bones



DIFFERENT DINOSAURS

The word “dinosaur” was first used nearly 200 years ago. There has been an explosion of excitement about them ever since. The huge number of different dinosaur species makes the study of dinosaurs fascinating for everyone. Thousands of bones belonging to hundreds of different dinosaurs have now been discovered. Today, dinosaurs are big business, with millions of dinosaur books and toys on sale in stores.

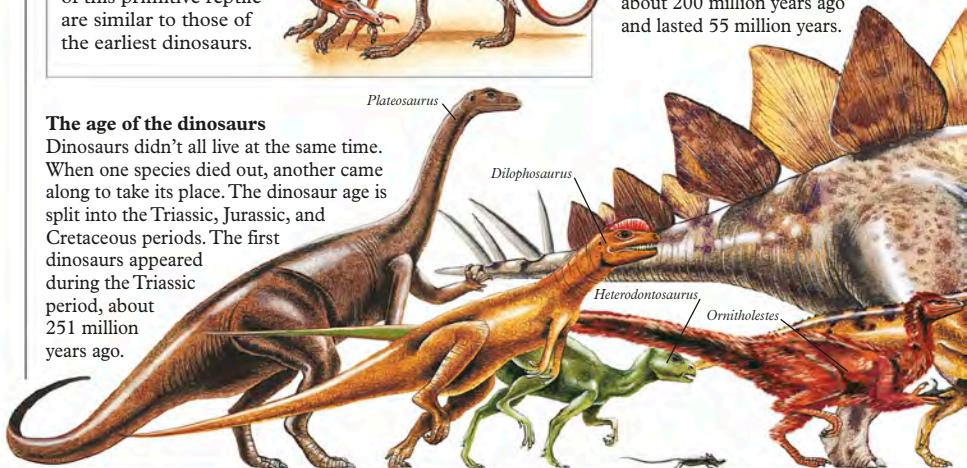
Dinosaur ancestor

Scientists think that over millions of years, the dinosaurs may have developed from small, agile reptiles like *Marasuchus*. The hips and long legs of this primitive reptile are similar to those of the earliest dinosaurs.



The age of the dinosaurs

Dinosaurs didn't all live at the same time. When one species died out, another came along to take its place. The dinosaur age is split into the Triassic, Jurassic, and Cretaceous periods. The first dinosaurs appeared during the Triassic period, about 251 million years ago.

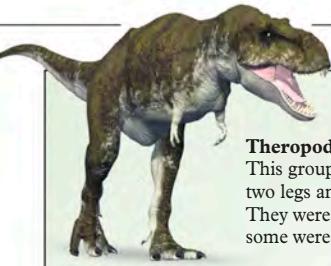


First and last
Herrerasaurus was one of the first dinosaurs. It lived about 251 million years ago. *Tyrannosaurus* was one of the last dinosaurs and became extinct about 67 million years ago. Today, we are closer in time to *Tyrannosaurus* than *Tyrannosaurus* was to *Herrerasaurus*!



Classic Jurassic

The middle part of the dinosaur age is called the Jurassic period. It started about 200 million years ago and lasted 55 million years.



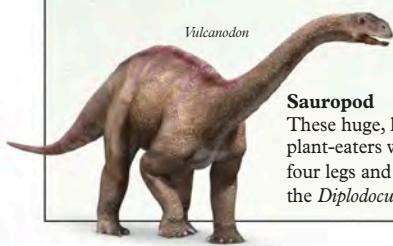
Tyrannosaurus rex

Ornithopod

These beaked dinosaurs were plant-eaters; *Iguanodon* was one of the largest to be identified.



Vulcanodon



Sauropod

These huge, long-necked plant-eaters walked on four legs and included the *Diplodocus*.

Leaellynasaura

Euoplocephalus

Triceratops

Marginocephalian

Their name means “fringed heads.” This group included the horned and herbivorous *Triceratops*, as well as *Pachycephalosaurus*.



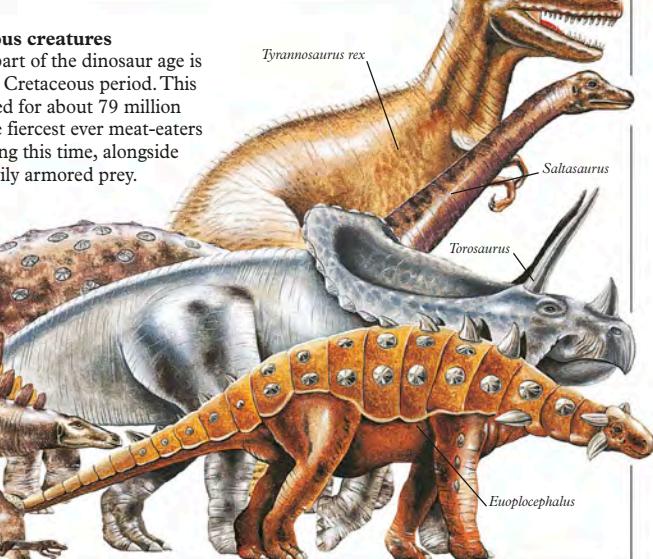
Thyreophoran

This group of armored herbivores included *Euoplocephalus*.



Cretaceous creatures

The last part of the dinosaur age is called the Cretaceous period. This stage lasted for about 79 million years. The fiercest ever meat-eaters lived during this time, alongside their heavily armored prey.





DIGGING UP

A DINOSAUR



Dinosaur fossils are very rare, because they are only found buried in certain types of rocks. Dinosaurs became extinct at the end of the Cretaceous period, so any rock that formed after this time does not contain any dinosaur fossils. Rocks at the bottom of the sea are usually free of dinosaur fossils, because dinosaurs lived on land. The best places to hunt for dinosaur bones are in rock layers that formed at the bottom of swamps, lakes, or rivers.

Drawing fossils is an important job on a dinosaur dig.



The rock around the fossil has been slowly and carefully chipped away.

This skeleton has been very well preserved. Most of the skeleton is still buried under the ground.

This Tyrannosaurus rex skeleton is 39 feet (12 meters) long. It is lying curled up on its left side.



Old bones, new technology
Modern technology, like this ground-penetrating radar, can be used to find bones below the rock surface. In the 1980s, a dinosaur named *Seismosaurus* was found in this way, in New Mexico.

Handle with care

Although dinosaurs were strong when they were alive, their fossils are very fragile now. Digging up a dinosaur is a slow and very delicate process.



1. The thick layers of rock above the dinosaur are often cleared away with mechanical diggers, and sometimes blasted away with explosives.



2. The last 8 inches (20 centimeters) or so of rock above the dinosaur are removed very carefully with tools.



3. The exact positions of the bones are then mapped out and recorded with drawings and photographs.



4. The fragile bones must be covered with plaster for protection, before they can be moved away from the site.

Dinosaur trap

The Dinosaur National Monument in America is one of the world's richest dinosaur treasure troves. It was once a sandy riverbed, which trapped many dying dinosaurs and preserved their bones.



Fossil collection

Dinosaur bones are not the only kind of fossils found at dinosaur sites.



Footprints



Skin



Stomach stones



Eggs



Droppings



Teeth



5. Finally the strengthened bones are loaded up in a van and driven to a laboratory for further study.





REBUILDING A DINOSAUR

Jigsaw puzzles can be tricky, especially if some pieces are missing and pieces from different puzzles are mixed in.

People who rebuild dinosaur skeletons are faced with a similar puzzle. Fossil bones must be put together in the right order to form a skeleton. Bones belonging to different dinosaurs may have found their way into the collection by mistake. Missing bones are modeled by looking at the bones of similar dinosaurs. Broken bones must be cleaned and repaired before they can be assembled.

Thick bones in the neck held up the heavy weight of the Tyrannosaurus's head.



Back at the lab

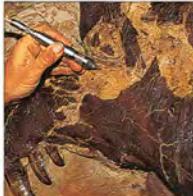
Dinosaur bones are taken from the fossil site to a laboratory. Experts clean and repair them before they are rebuilt into a skeleton. Sometimes, fossils may be prepared for study, but are never displayed in museums.



1. First, the hard, protective plaster must be removed from the bone with special tools.



2. Next, the bones must be carefully cleaned. This stage can take a very long time.



3. The bones are then treated with resin to make them stronger. They must also be repaired, if necessary.



4. Finally, copies are made of the bones using a light material, like fiberglass. The copies, called casts, can be put together to make a museum display.





Super skull

Some fossils are almost perfectly preserved. After millions of years buried under rock, this *Tyrannosaurus* skull did not need much patching up in the fossil laboratory!



Building *Tyrannosaurus rex*

This skeleton of *Tyrannosaurus rex* has been on display in an American museum since 1915. Today, scientists think that a big mistake was made in the way the skeleton was put together. They now think the *Tyrannosaurus* held its tail up high above the ground.

A strong ribcage protected its heart, liver, stomach and lungs.

Massive leg bones supported the dinosaur's weight.

Strips of steel run underneath each bone, fitting snugly into the bone's shape.

The metal framework supporting the skeleton is called an armature.

A strong metal pillar holds up the metal strips, supporting the full weight of the skeleton.

Model making

This model of a *Maiasaura* nest was sculpted by a scientific artist.



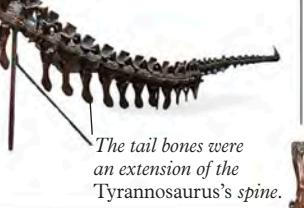
1. The basic *Maiasaura* shapes are made with wood and wire.



2. The nest site is built around the models. The wire skeletons are covered with paper and clay.



3. The clay models are carefully painted a sandy color. In life, *Maiasaura* was probably well camouflaged.





LOOKING CLOSER

Staring up at the towering skeletons of dinosaurs can make you feel tiny. But bones alone do not give the whole picture of a living, breathing dinosaur. What color was the dinosaur when it was alive? How strong were its muscles, and how big were its heart and lungs? Looking closely at animals alive today gives us useful clues about features, such as the skin color of dinosaurs. We can even imagine what their insides may have looked like!



Heavyweight or lightweight?
Barosaurus was a very heavy sauropod, like *Brachiosaurus*. Sauropod means “reptile foot.” Both dinosaurs had hollow bones in their spines. This was a useful weight-saving device.

Brachiosaurus's heart
nestled underneath its lungs.
It must have had very high blood pressure for the heart to be able to pump blood all around its body.

Brachiosaurus started absorbing nutrients from its food in its long, coiled, small intestine.

Two massive lungs fit snugly inside its ribcage.

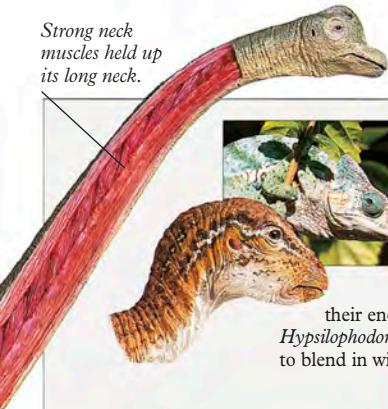
Powerful tail/muscles made it possible to swing this bulky tail.

Bacteria in the large intestine helped this big plant-eater to digest tough plant fiber.

Tough food was broken down inside the thick walls of the stomach.



Strong neck
muscles held up
its long neck.



Cunning colors

We can't tell the color of a dinosaur by looking at fossils. But we can follow clues given by the colors of modern animals.

Chameleons hide from their enemies among the leaves. *Hypsilophodon* may have been brown, to blend in with its dry surroundings.

This brightly colored cockatoo can recognize others of its own kind. *Corythosaurus* may have had a striking crest for the same reason.



Skin deep

Some dinosaurs left behind perfect skin prints. Dinosaur skin was usually covered with small scales that did not overlap each other. But some were protected by bony plates set in the skin.



Hadrosaur skin



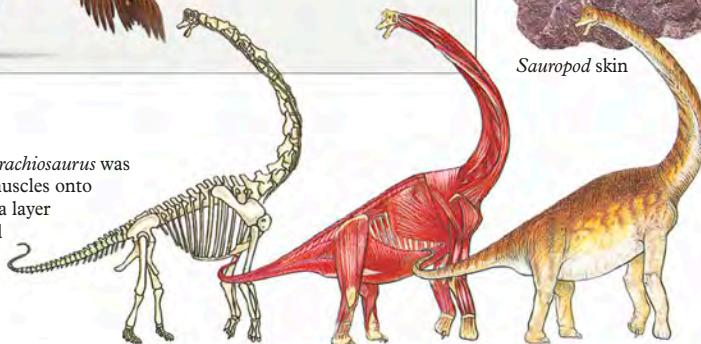
Scolosaurus skin



Sauropod skin

Skin and bones

The big model of *Brachiosaurus* was made by building muscles onto the skeleton. Then, a layer of skin was wrapped over the model to give it a lifelike appearance.



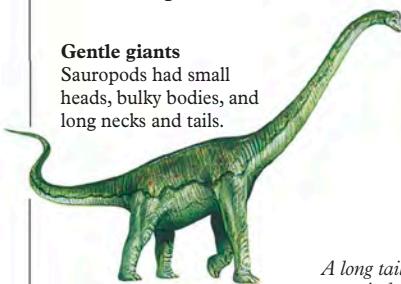


BIG HERBIVORES

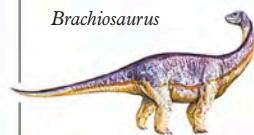
Plant-eating dinosaurs were some of the biggest animals that ever roamed the Earth. Imagine stepping into the footprint of a *Barosaurus*—it would be big enough to have a bath in! The big vegetarian dinosaurs called sauropods were peaceful creatures. They grew to their huge sizes on a diet of plants alone.

Gentle giants

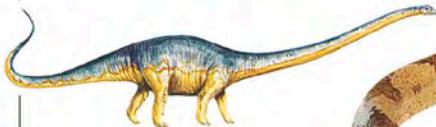
Sauropods had small heads, bulky bodies, and long necks and tails.



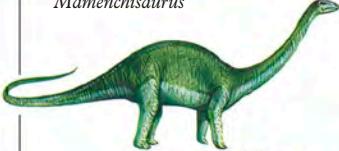
Brachiosaurus



Camarasaurus



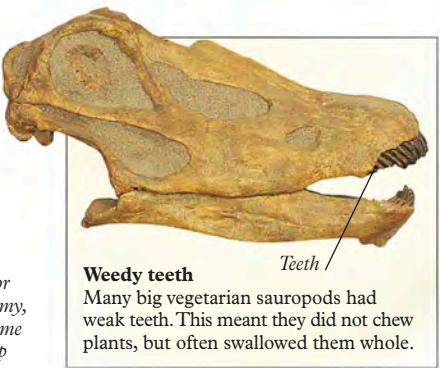
Mamenchisaurus



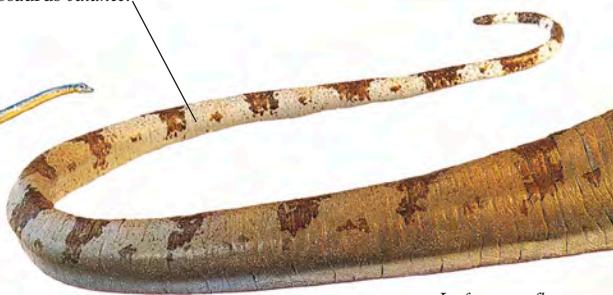
Apatosaurus

A long tail could come in handy for whacking an enemy, but most of the time it was used to help Barosaurus balance.

(Illustration by Steve Jenkins)



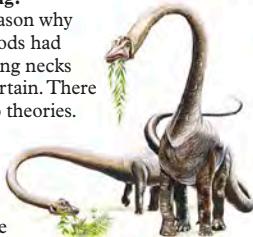
Teeth



Its feet were flat and padded, just like an elephant's.

So Long?

The reason why sauropods had such long necks isn't certain. There are two theories.



1. While

Barosaurus stayed in one spot, its neck stretched out for food on land or in the water.

2. Did *Barosaurus* use its neck as an underwater snorkel, breathing through the nostrils on top of its head? Probably not, as water pressure on its body would have meant it couldn't breathe at all.



Plant binge

No plant was safe from a sauropod unless it was more than 50 feet (15 meters) above ground!

Conifers are plants with cones. *Barosaurus* and many other vegetarian dinosaurs ate conifers.

Ferns varied in height, from small to tree-sized plants. No fern was too tall for *Barosaurus*!

Barosaurus ate cycads. These plants still grow in hot climates.

Huge legs supported the crushing weight of the *Barosaurus*.



FEEDING ON PLANTS

The huge, treetop-munching dinosaurs were not the only plant-eaters of their time. There were many smaller, beaked dinosaurs that also fed on plants, relying more on their teeth to mash the leaves to a pulp and make them easier to digest. *Iguanodon* was well adapted to chewing and chomping. Its jaws were packed with rows of ridged teeth. These grinders pounded away at leaves the *Iguanodon* nipped off with a sharp, beaky snout.

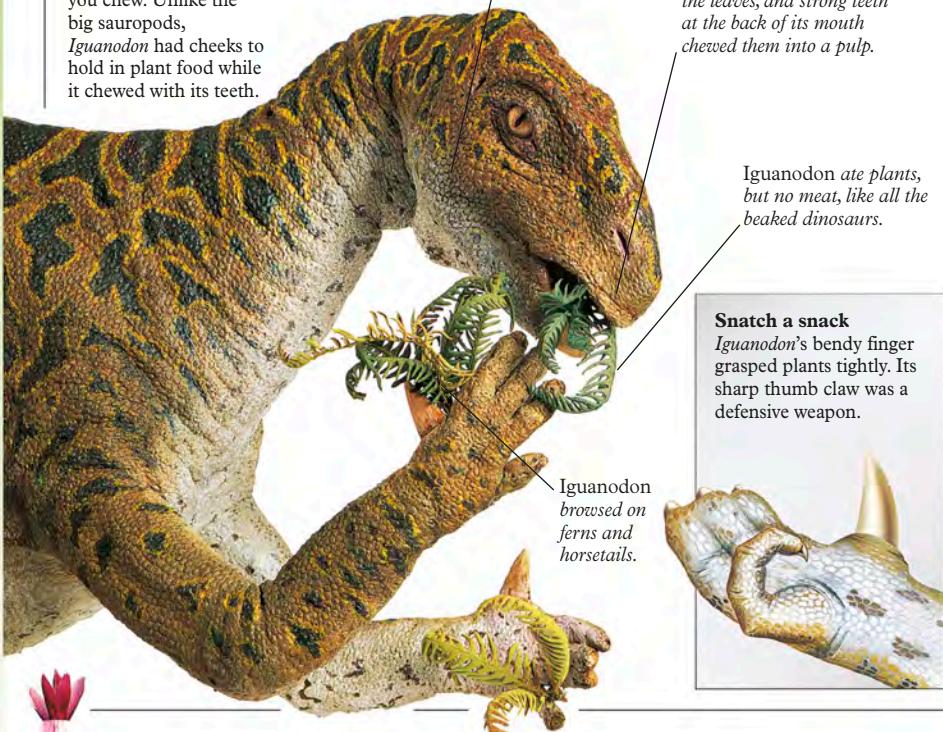
Chewy chops

Your cheeks keep food inside your mouth as you chew. Unlike the big sauropods, *Iguanodon* had cheeks to hold in plant food while it chewed with its teeth.

Big, fleshy cheeks kept food in the Iguanodon's mouth as it ate.

A sharp beak nipped off the leaves, and strong teeth at the back of its mouth chewed them into a pulp.

Iguanodon ate plants, but no meat, like all the beaked dinosaurs.



Snatch a snack

Iguanodon's bendy finger grasped plants tightly. Its sharp thumb claw was a defensive weapon.



Mouth shapes

The mouths of these dinosaurs were well adapted for eating plants. *Heterodontosaurus* ate meat and plants, and had three types of teeth, for cutting, puncturing, and grinding. *Edmontosaurus* had a broad snout for big mouthfuls. *Hypsilophodon* had a bony beak, with short teeth farther back in its mouth for chopping up its food.



Heterodontosaurus



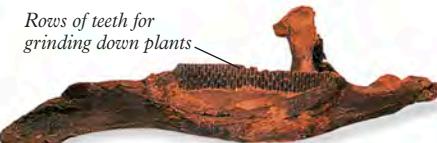
Edmontosaurus



Hypsilophodon



Edmontosaurus



Jaw bone of *Edmontosaurus*

Chomp

The jaws of *Edmontosaurus* had hundreds of teeth that were constantly renewed by new teeth replacing the old. The teeth were tightly packed together for grinding and pulping plants. Scientists think they are some of the most efficient chewing teeth ever.



Battle of the flowers

The first flowering plants bloomed about 100 million years ago. They were successful because they could spread their seeds and reproduce more quickly than the plant-eaters could gobble them up.

Fighting back

Dinosaurs were the biggest plant-eaters of all time. Plants had to find ways of fighting back to survive. Some were so successful, they outlived the dinosaurs, and are still around.

The spikes of a monkey puzzle tree put off most dinosaurs. Today, no animal will touch them.



Waxy pine needles taste as bad today as they did in the dinosaur age.



HUNTING IN PACKS

Not all dinosaurs were plant-eaters. Packs of hungry meat-eating dinosaurs roamed around, looking for their next meal. *Deinonychus* was a small dinosaur that might have hunted in a pack. It could outrun its prey and pounce to kill with frightening accuracy. Dinosaurs much bigger than *Deinonychus* probably lived in fear of this speedy hunter. *Deinonychus* was named after its most deadly weapon—its name means “terrible claw.”

Running reptiles

Deinonychus was in a family of feathered meat-eating dinosaurs called the dromaeosaurids, which means “running reptiles.”



Sinornithosaurus



Velociraptor



Utahraptor



Compsognathus fossil

Lizard lunch

Many pack-hunting dinosaurs chased other dinosaurs, but the smaller hunters enjoyed a diet of lizards or shrewlike mammals. This fossil of the hen-sized *Compsognathus* has the bones of its last meal inside its stomach. It was a *Bavarisaurus* lizard.

Sharp eyesight
was very
useful for
spotting prey.

Deadly claw

Deinonychus had a claw on the tip of each of its toes, but one claw was much bigger than the rest. This huge, sharp talon could swipe around in a semicircle, slashing a deadly wound into the flesh of the dinosaur's prey.

The claw was five inches (13 cm) long.





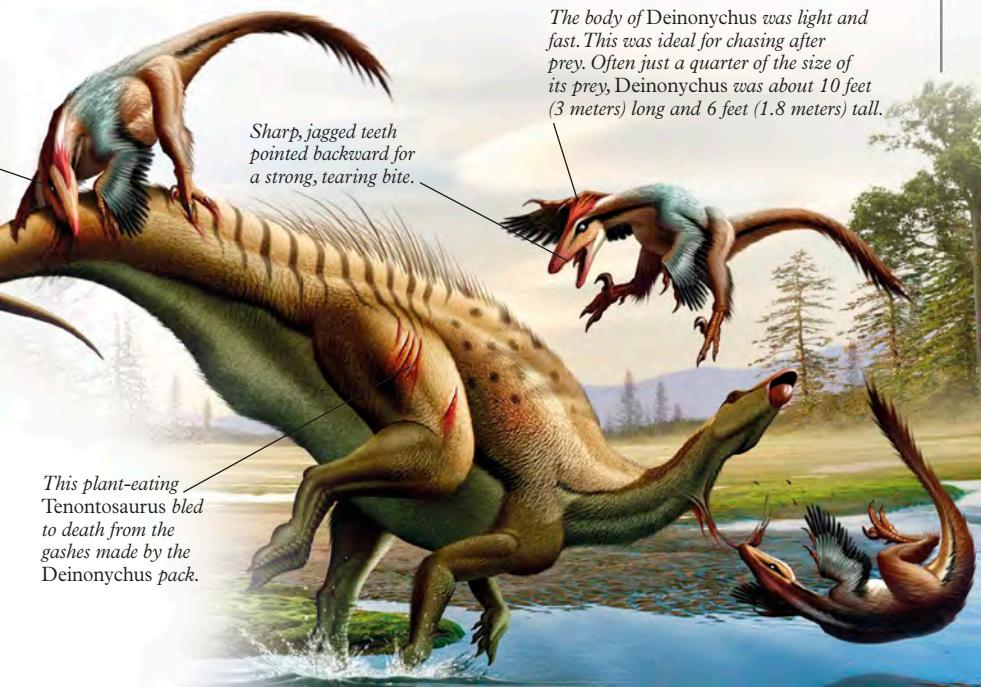
Savage hunter

Despite their large skulls, *Deinonychus* probably weren't smart enough to communicate with each other to use complicated hunting tactics when attacking their prey. It's likely that the pack hunt was more of a free-for-all, with each dino fighting for its own meal.



Why hunt in packs?

One wolf cannot attack a deer on its own, but a pack of wolves can easily pull one down, just as small, meat-eating dinosaurs joined together to overpower much bigger dinosaurs. However, wolves are more intelligent than *Deinonychus* were, and use more complicated hunting techniques.

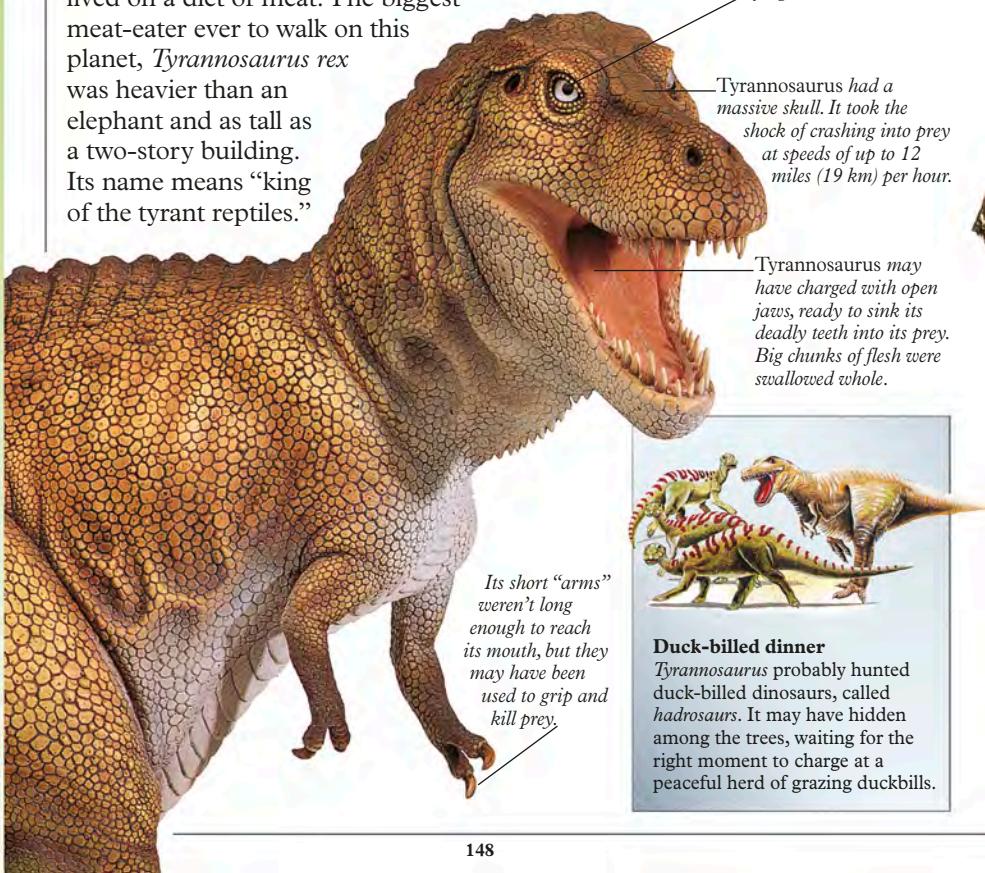




ENORMOUS CARNIVORES



Like tigers today, *Tyrannosaurus rex* may have hunted alone, terrorizing its prey with surprise attacks. This fierce dinosaur was a carnivore, which means it lived on a diet of meat. The biggest meat-eater ever to walk on this planet, *Tyrannosaurus rex* was heavier than an elephant and as tall as a two-story building. Its name means “king of the tyrant reptiles.”

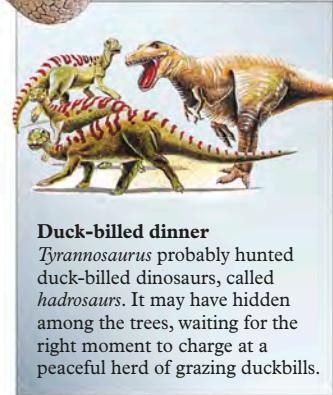


Hunters need good eyesight and a strong sense of smell. Large parts of *Tyrannosaurus's* brain controlled its senses of sight and smell.

Tyrannosaurus had a massive skull. It took the shock of crashing into prey at speeds of up to 12 miles (19 km) per hour.

Tyrannosaurus may have charged with open jaws, ready to sink its deadly teeth into its prey. Big chunks of flesh were swallowed whole.

Its short “arms” weren’t long enough to reach its mouth, but they may have been used to grip and kill prey.



Duck-billed dinner

Tyrannosaurus probably hunted duck-billed dinosaurs, called hadrosaurs. It may have hidden among the trees, waiting for the right moment to charge at a peaceful herd of grazing duckbills.



Life-sized tooth

A *Tyrannosaurus* tooth grew up to seven inches (18 centimeters) long.



A Tyrannosaurus tooth was covered with tough enamel.

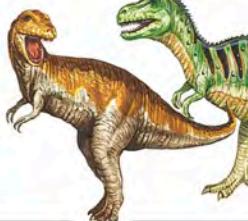
*The teeth of a *Tyrannosaurus* were massive—built for biting straight through the bones of its victims.*

Look how small a human tooth is!

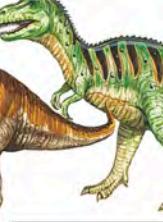
Meet the family

These big, meat-eating dinosaurs shown below are all theropods like *Tyrannosaurus rex*. Theropod means “beast-footed.”

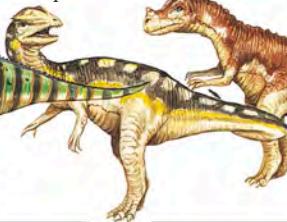
Albertosaurus



Tarbosaurus



Dilophosaurus



Ceratosaurus



Allosaurus



Stretch those legs

Tyrannosaurus's short “arms” may also have been used to help the dinosaur up after a rest on the ground.



1. Small front arms hold its body steady, as *Tyrannosaurus* begins to move.



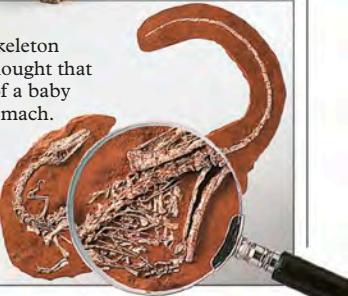
2. *Tyrannosaurus* then lifts its head and body backward, stretching out its long back legs.



3. *Tyrannosaurus* stands up straight. The weight of its tail balances its big head.

Not a cannibal

When this *Coelophysis* skeleton was found, scientists thought that there were tiny bones of a baby *Coelophysis* inside its stomach. It's now thought that this baby's bones were just underneath the adult's, and were never actually inside its stomach at all.



DEATH OF THE DINOSAURS



Rock-solid proof

Many rocks on the Earth's surface are formed in layers. The deeper the layer, the older the rock. No fossil of a big dinosaur has been found above the layer that formed 66 million years ago. This proves they died out this long ago.

We can tell how old dinosaur fossils are by looking at the age of the rock they were found in. From this, we know that the last of the giant dinosaurs died out about 66 million years ago. Perhaps a huge disaster wiped them all out in one shot.

From outer space

An enormous asteroid crashed into Earth 66 million years ago. It hit what is now part of Mexico, and the huge impact of the asteroid could have caused catastrophic climate change that made life impossible for the giant dinosaurs.



The asteroid may have hurtled toward Earth at about 40,000 miles (64,000 kilometers) per hour.





Slow change

The big, spectacular dinosaurs may not have disappeared overnight. The world's climate could have cooled over millions of years, slowly killing them off. New plants grew in this colder climate. The warm jungles that covered most of the dinosaurs' world slowly turned into cooler forests.



Wild guesses

Many theories try to explain the death of the dinosaurs. Some of the most unlikely include the idea that hungry mammals ate their eggs.



Or that dinosaurs were poisoned by new, nasty plants. But no single theory can explain what really happened.



Finding proof

The asteroid crushed rock in the Earth's surface as it hit Yucatán. Shocked quartz has been found at the crater site. Iridium is a rare metal, found in asteroids. There are high levels of iridium in the rock that contains dinosaur fossils.

The survivors
Despite the disaster, a few animals survived. They included birds, mammals, reptiles, and amphibians that became the ancestors of animals that live around us today.



Bird



Mammal



Reptile

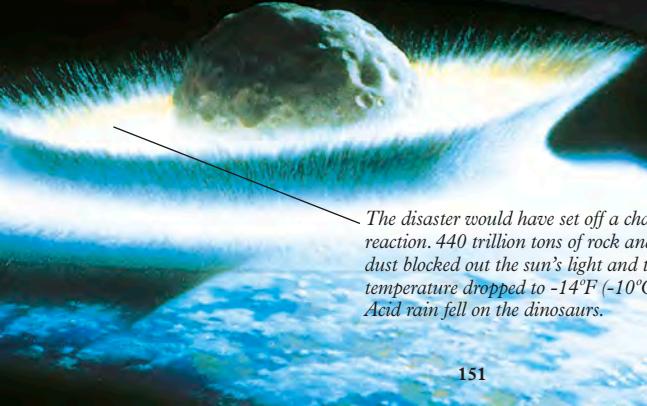


Amphibian



What a hole

The asteroid impact formed a gigantic crater 115 miles (185 kilometers) wide in Yucatán, Central America. This photo shows a similar crater in Arizona that was made by a more recent asteroid impact.



The disaster would have set off a chain reaction. 440 trillion tons of rock and dust blocked out the sun's light and the temperature dropped to -14°F (-10°C). Acid rain fell on the dinosaurs.

BIRDS

Any animal that grows feathers is a bird. Some are bigger than people; others are almost as small as bees. Birds hatch out of eggs, which are kept in a nest. All birds have feathers and wings, even the ones that do not fly.



Blue-tit nest Because they have no teeth, birds cannot chew. Instead, they grind food in a gizzard. Some food stays in a storage bag called a crop so it can be coughed up later for chicks to eat! Birds are like us in the way they breathe oxygen into their lungs. However, they appeared long before humans.



Birds are descended from small, feathered, meat-eating dinosaurs with long arms that could be used as wings. This means that all 10,000 different types of birds that live here with us on Earth are actually living dinosaurs!



Parrot feathers



Budgerigar feathers



Owl feather



Green-winged parrot skeleton



Wood duck



Flock of starlings in flight



Blue-tit
egg



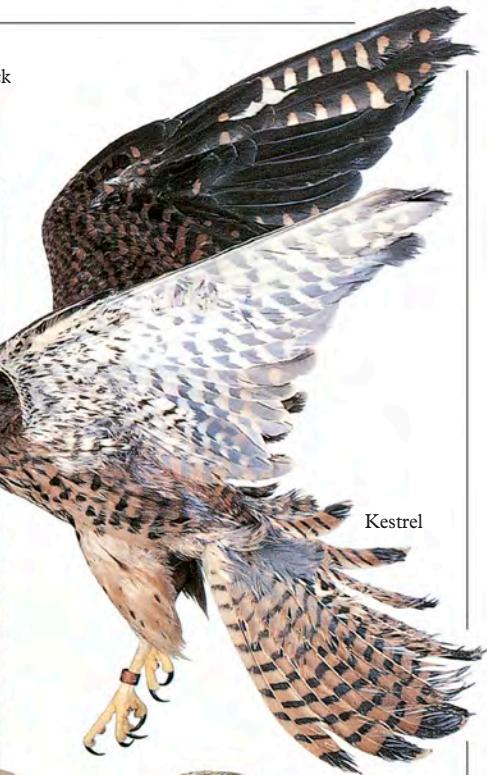
Magpie
egg



American
robin egg



Guillemot egg



Kestrel



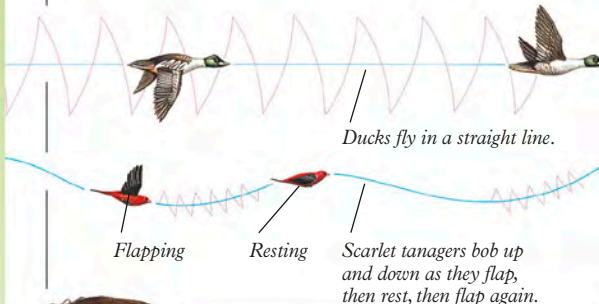
Senegal
parrot



FEATHERS AND FLYING



Three types of animals can fly—birds, bats, and insects. Birds are excellent fliers thanks to their coats of feathers. Long, light feathers or small, soft feathers cover almost every part of a bird's body. Usually, only a bird's beak, eyes, legs, and feet are bare. Feathers do much more than cover a bird's naked body: they keep birds warm and dry, and enable them to stay up in the air.



Flight patterns

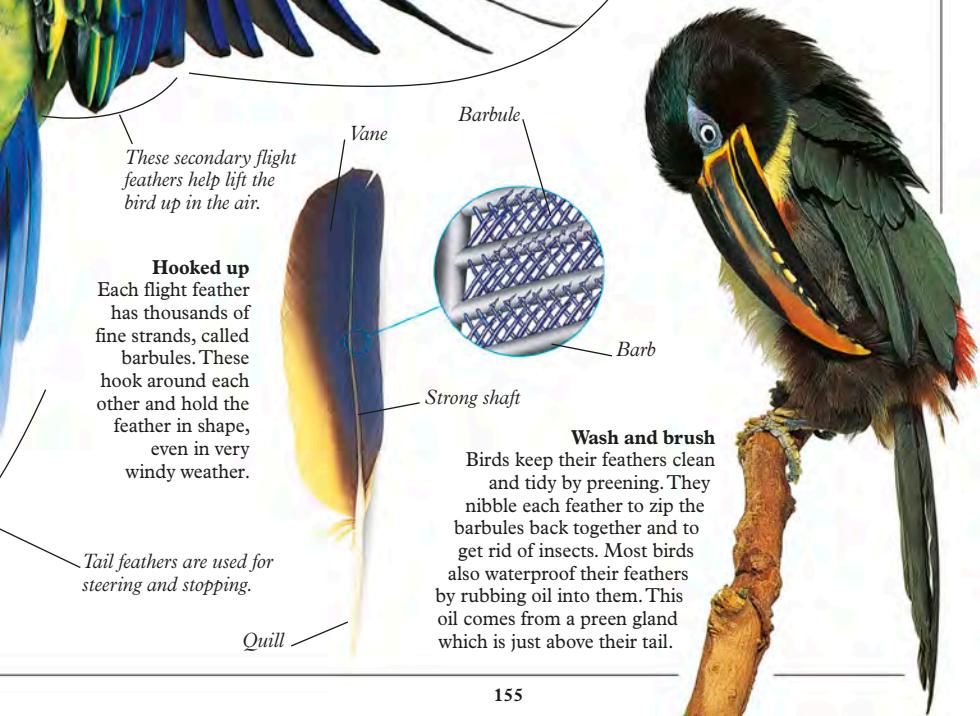
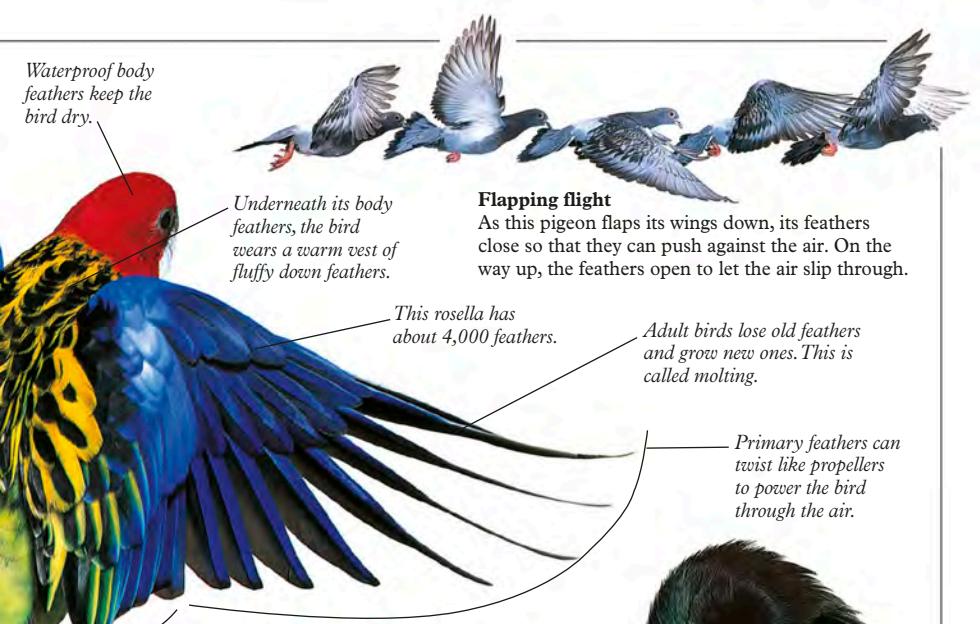
Flying can be hard work. Not all birds flap their wings all the time. Some birds save energy by resting between short bursts of flapping.



Wind power

If you blow hard across the top of a piece of paper, the air on top moves faster than the air underneath. This difference in air speed creates lift and the paper rises. In a similar way, the air moving over the top of a bird's wing moves faster than the air going underneath it. This lifts the bird up in the sky.





SETTING UP HOME



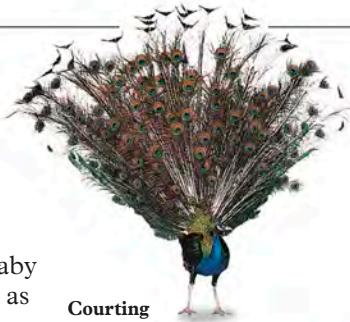
A nest is a cradle in which eggs and baby birds are kept safe from enemies such as snakes and rats. Nests can be holes in trees, mounds of earth, or piles of branches.

Greenfinches tuck their cup-shaped nests into bushes where they cannot be seen, whereas eagles' lofty nests are easy to see but hard to reach. Each species tries to give its chicks the best chance of survival.



Building a nursery

In many species of birds, both parents build the nest. These long-legged great blue herons are trampling on twigs to make a huge, cup-shaped nest.



Courting

Before starting a family, male birds have to attract a mate. Peacocks do this by showing off!



Cattle hair



Seeds



String



Tinfoil



Spot the eggs

Ringed plovers don't build a nest. They lay their pebblelike eggs on the beach.



No teacher needed

Weavers are brilliant builders, but they don't have lessons or copy other birds. They just know how to weave their nest. This "knowing without learning" is called instinct.

Cup-shaped nests have walls to stop eggs from rolling out.

Baby birds don't need pillows—they have soft feathers to lie on.

Nests in trees and bushes are kept dry by the leaves—they form little umbrellas!

This cup-nest was built by squashing! The greenfinch pressed the material into place with its breast as it spun round in a circle.

Lichen is used to camouflage the nest.

Dried moss helps to keep the eggs warm.



Knitted nest

The weaver uses his beak and feet to tie the grass into knots!



Grass is sewn into the nest to form a ring.



After weaving the walls, roof, and door, he hangs upside down from his home and invites a female to move in.



Burrowing bee-eater

Carmine bee-eaters nest underground! The male chooses a sandy riverbank and pecks at the earth. When the dent is big enough to cling to, he starts to dig with his beak and feet. The female moves in when all the work is done!





FAMILY LIFE

Family life for most birds is brief, but busy. After the female bird has mated, she lays her eggs, usually in a nest. The baby birds, or chicks, do not grow inside her because this would make her too heavy to fly. When they hatch, the chicks eat a lot, grow bigger and bigger, and then, as soon as they can fly, they leave home forever.



Baby sitting

Eggs must be incubated, or kept warm, otherwise the baby birds inside will die. The parents do this by sitting on them.

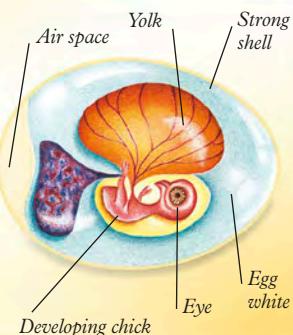


Ostrich eggs
are the largest.

What's inside an egg?

All bird eggs have the same things inside them: a growing baby bird which feeds on a yellow yolk, and a watery egg white that cushions the chick from knocks. Woodpeckers and warblers are ready to hatch in 11 days, but Royal albatrosses take more than 11 weeks!

Hummingbird eggs
are the smallest.



Peck, peck, peck . . .

Getting out of an egg is called hatching. The chick taps at the tough shell until it is free. This can take hours or even days!



First crack

The chick
cheeps to tell
its parents it
is hatching.

The blunt end of the egg is pecked off by the chick with a horny spike called an egg tooth.

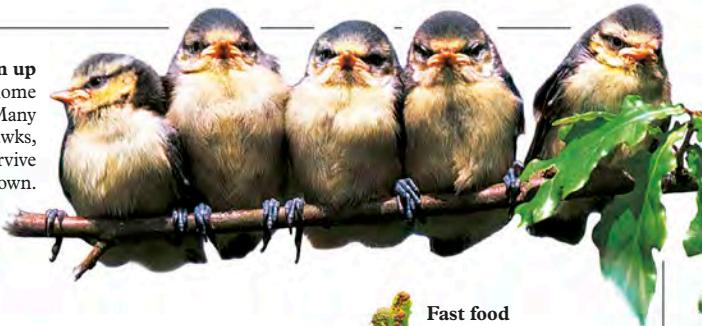


Empty shell



Nearly grown up

After baby birds have left home they are called fledglings. Many are eaten by cats and hawks, but some from each nest survive and have families of their own.



Feed me!

Most nestlings are helpless when they hatch; they are blind and naked. All they can do is eat and grow.



The parents push food into their chicks' bright, begging beaks.

Ducks' eyes are open when they are born.



The wet, sticky fluff, or down, soon dries out.

After the chick has pushed itself head-first out of the egg, it is very tired.



This egg tooth falls off after a few days.

Fast food

Blue tits bring back more than 1,000 juicy caterpillars and aphids to the nest each day for their hungry chicks.



Caterpillar



Follow the leader

Baby ducks follow the first big, moving thing that they see—usually one of their parents. This instinct is called imprinting.

Like most waterbirds, just one hour after hatching this duckling can walk, see, swim, and feed itself.





THE FROZEN NORTH



The North Pole lies in the middle of a frozen ocean, which is surrounded by a cold, flat, treeless, snowy wasteland, called the tundra. Few birds can survive the long, dark winters of the tundra. But in the summer, when the sun never sets, millions of birds arrive to raise their families. Flowers bloom and the air is full of buzzing insects, but in just a few short weeks the summer vacation is over, and they all fly south again.

The big melt

During the summer, the ice melts. But this water can't sink into the frozen ground, so it forms lots of lakes—ideal for ducks!

Bird's-eye view

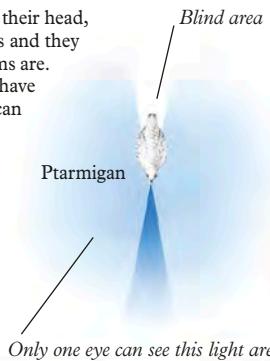
Hunting birds have eyes on the front of their head, so that the sight from both eyes overlaps and they can see exactly how far away their victims are. Birds which are eaten by other animals have eyes on the sides of their head, so they can look around for danger.

Snowy owl



Both eyes can see this dark area.

Ptarmigan



Only one eye can see this light area.

Tundra residents



Snowy owl



Snow bunting



Gyr falcon



Raven



Tough ptarmigans survive the winter by eating dwarf willow twigs.

Birds have a third eyelid that is see-through and helps keep their eyes moist.

Ptarmigans shiver to keep warm.

Snow-colored feathers camouflage ptarmigans.



Summer coat

Willow ptarmigans don't need thick, white coats in the warm summer, so they molt and grow dark red feathers.

Just like big, woolly socks, these feathers keep the ptarmigan's legs, feet, and toes warm.

Summer visitors



Ruff

Red phalarope



Red-breasted goose



King eider

Causing a stir

Red phalaropes reach the insects that live at the bottom of lakes by swimming in circles! This stirs up the water and makes the insects float upward. You can try this too—put some buttons in a bowl of water, stir it up, and watch!



Duck down

Eider ducks pluck soft feathers, called down, from their breast to line their nest. People collect this down to make soft pillows.



Eider down

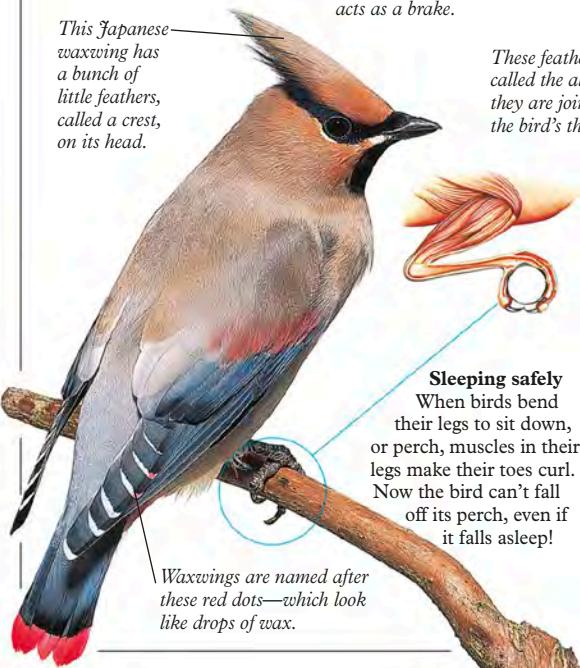


Willow ptarmigans are about 17 inches (43 centimeters) in length and live in the Arctic.

COLD FORESTS

One-tenth of the land on Earth, especially in the cold north, is covered in conifers. These tall trees, such as pines and firs, have needles instead of broad leaves and woody cones instead of flowers. They form forests that are home to many birds, from seed-eating siskins to big birds of prey.

This Japanese waxwing has a bunch of little feathers, called a crest, on its head.



Waxwings are named after these red dots—which look like drops of wax.

The siskin's tail spreads out and acts as a brake.



These feathers are called the alula—they are joined to the bird's thumb.



The feet are stretched out to grab the branch.



Sleeping safely
When birds bend their legs to sit down, or perch, muscles in their legs make their toes curl. Now the bird can't fall off its perch, even if it falls asleep!

Ant antics

A Steller's jay gets rid of mites or feather lice by making ants crawl all over its body. The ants get annoyed and squirt out formic acid, which kills the tiny pests!





Cone-opener

Crossbills' beaks can snip open cones a bit like a can opener. Red crossbills eat spruce seeds, but bigger species can open up large pine cones.



Starved out

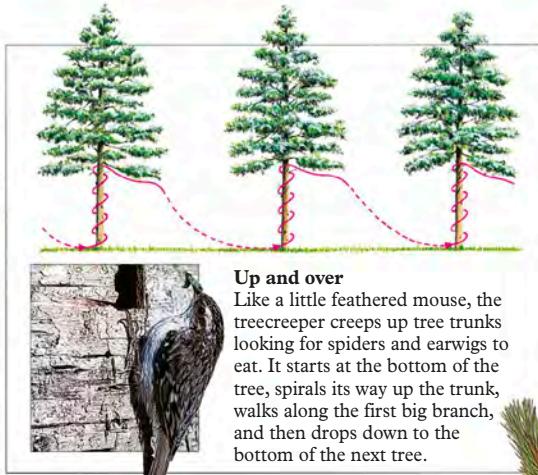
Every few years, winter is even colder than usual. When this happens, the crossbills and waxwings leave the cold forest to feed in warmer woods.

By opening up its feathers, the siskin can reduce its speed.



Touchdown

Birds have to slow down to land, but, just like planes, if they go too slowly they can stall and fall out of the sky. By sticking out their alula, they can change the flow of the wind over their body and avoid crash-landings!



Up and over

Like a little feathered mouse, the treecreeper creeps up tree trunks looking for spiders and earwigs to eat. It starts at the bottom of the tree, spirals its way up the trunk, walks along the first big branch, and then drops down to the bottom of the next tree.

IN THE WOODS



First-class flier

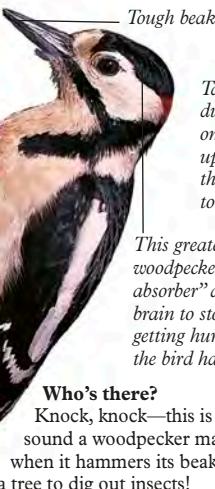
Woodland birds, such as this sassy blue tit, have short wings. This allows them to twist and turn between the trees.

Large parts of America and Europe were once covered by trees. Most of these maple, beech, and oak woods have been cut down to make room for farms and cities.

But if you go into the woods that are left, you may still find some of the beautiful birds that live there. Even if you cannot spot them through all the leaves, you will hear them. Male songbirds, such as nightingales, sing flutelike songs to defend their territory.

Woodpeckers' feet have two toes that point forward and two that point backward to get a good grip on tree bark.

Pied flycatcher chasing flies



Tawny owls sleep during the day. This one is being woken up by birds who think it is roosting too near their nests.

This greater spotted woodpecker has a "shock absorber" around its brain to stop it from getting hurt when the bird hammers.

Who's there?

Knock, knock—this is the sound a woodpecker makes when it hammers its beak onto a tree to dig out insects!

By placing their long, stiff tail feathers against the tree trunk, woodpeckers are able to stay steady while they feed.

Song thrushes open up snails by hitting them against rocks.

Robins sing to claim their territory.





All fall down

Most woodland trees are deciduous—they lose all their leaves in winter. Before they drop their leaves, a few, like this rowan, grow juicy berries that many woodland birds love to eat.



Crow's nest



Chaffinch eating a caterpillar



This hungry, crafty magpie is waiting for a chance to steal the wood pigeon's eggs.



Wood pigeon



Nuthatch



Woodcock

This sparrow hawk is plucking feathers from a hawfinch it has just caught.

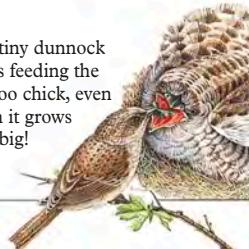
165



A cuckoo has laid its big egg in this dunnock's nest.



As soon as the baby cuckoo hatches, it pushes all the other eggs out of the nest.



The tiny dunnock keeps feeding the cuckoo chick, even when it grows very big!



Hawfinch eating seeds

SWAMPS AND MARSHES



Half water, half land, swamps and marshes are strange places to live. But to thousands of birds, the shallow water and soggy soil is an ideal home—it is full of food. Birds that live in these tree-filled swamps or murky marshes can either walk through the water or swim. Those

that walk are called waders. Wading birds have long, thin legs, sometimes thinner than a pencil!

To keep their eggs and chicks dry, reed warblers build their nests high up in the reeds, well above the water.

Young scarlet ibises have gray feathers. They only grow red feathers when they are several years old.

Black tip to the long, red wing

This is not a knee, but an ankle!

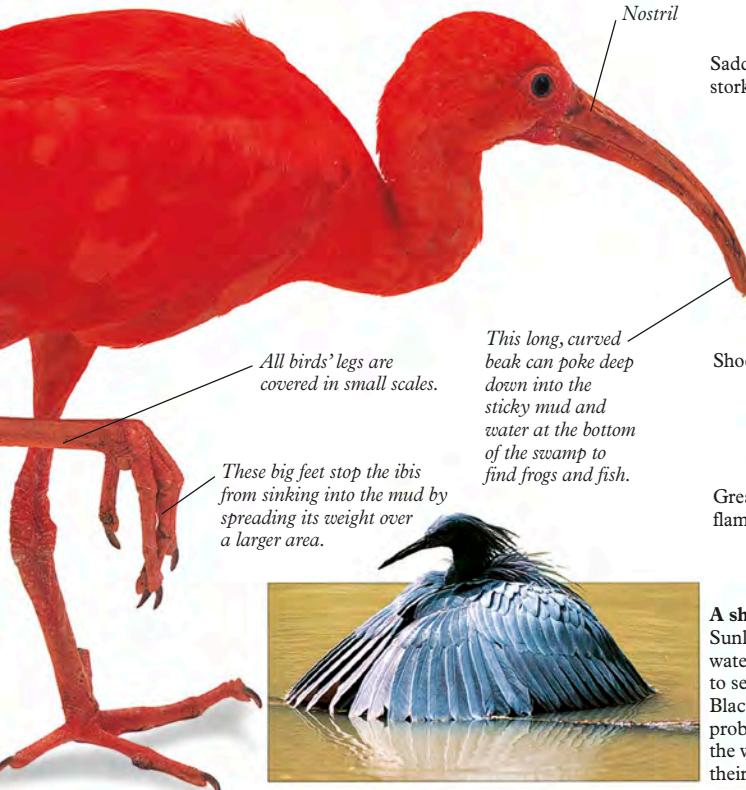
Highly strung
Foxes and other egg-thieves can't walk on marshy ground. So, to keep their family safe, reed warblers build their homes in tall marsh plants, called reeds. The nest is tied tightly onto the reeds and won't fall down, even on a windy day.

Scarlet ibises
are about 18 inches (46 centimeters) tall and live in swamps in South America.



Up in the air

Walking on stilts makes your legs longer. Now you can splash through puddles and your clothes still won't get wet. A little wading bird, called the black-winged stilt, likes to keep its feathers dry, so it has very, very long legs, which work like stilts.



All birds' legs are covered in small scales.

These big feet stop the ibis from sinking into the mud by spreading its weight over a larger area.



A shady bird

Sunlight shining on water makes it hard to see the fish below. Black herons solve this problem by shading the water with their wings.

Fitting the bill

Storks stab, shoebills dig, flamingos sieve, and spoonbills trap—these amazing beaks, or bills, are all shaped to catch food.



Spoonbill



Saddle-billed stork

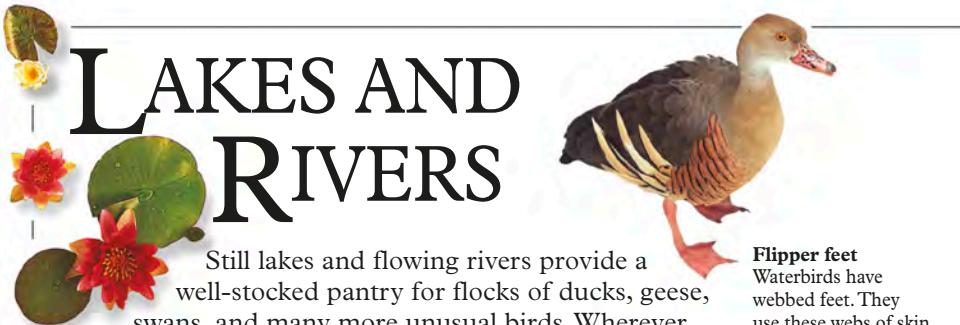


Shoebill



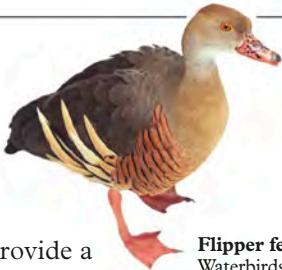
Greater flamingo





LAKES AND RIVERS

Still lakes and flowing rivers provide a well-stocked pantry for flocks of ducks, geese, swans, and many more unusual birds. Wherever you live in the world, you can spot these wonderful waterbirds bobbing around on the surface or paddling in the shallows, for they are not shy of people and live on lakes and rivers in cities, too.



Flipper feet
Waterbirds have webbed feet. They use these webs of skin like flippers, to push through the water.



Splash!

The brilliant blue kingfisher plunges into rivers to catch minnows that are half the length of its body. With its wings folded and its eyes and nostrils tightly shut, the kingfisher flies into the water. It has to struggle to free itself from the pull of the water, but it soon succeeds and flies away with its fish.



Treading water
These western grebes are dancing. When the birds have paired up, they dance across the lake together. Often, a male bird will try to steal another's partner!



Water skiing



Gathering speed



Touchdown



Liftoff

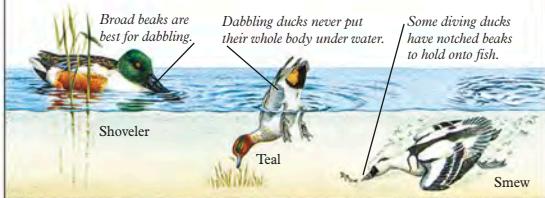


Water-runways

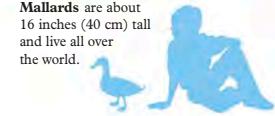
Heavy waterbirds can't land or take off on the spot. Like airplanes, they need runways!

Finding food

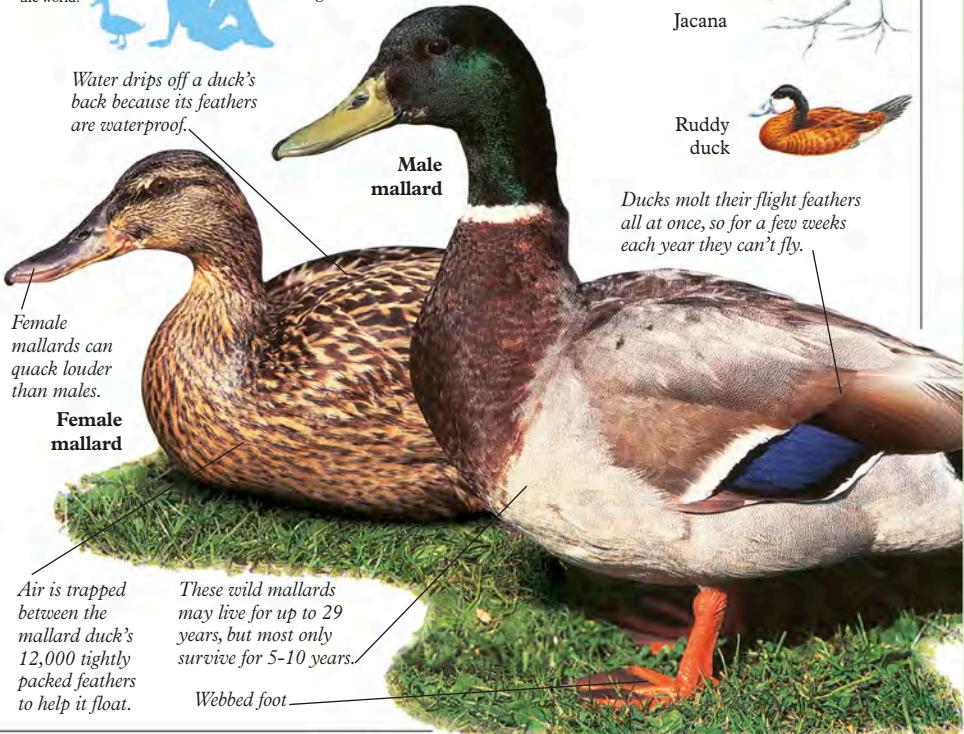
Different ducks feed in different ways. Some dabble—they dip their beaks into the water to sieve out tiny plants and animals. Others dive several yards under water to reach weeds, mussels, and insects on the bottom of the lake.



Mallards are about 16 inches (40 cm) tall and live all over the world.



It is easy to tell male and female mallards apart—males have green heads.



Waterbirds



Black swan

Slavonian
grebe

Jacana

Ruddy
duck



SEABIRDS

Playful puffins and graceful gannets, like most seabirds, feed, preen, and sleep out on the sea for most of the year. But each summer they come ashore to lay their eggs. Most nest in huge groups, called colonies.

Their families are safer with thousands of pairs of eyes watching for danger. Some seabirds choose to crowd onto steep cliffs, well out of the reach of many egg thieves.

These long wings catch the breeze and lift the herring gull up in the air like a kite.

Some seabirds spend most of their lives in the air, so they don't often use their legs.

Webbed feet

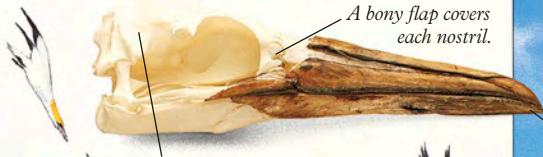
Waterproof feathers

Herring gull chicks peck at this red spot to make their parents cough up food.

Gannets dive from up to 150 feet (45 meters) into the sea and reach speeds of 60 mph (100 km/h).

Dive, dive, dive!

When a gannet spots a shoal of fish, it folds up its wings and hurtles into the water. Less than 10 seconds later, having swallowed the fish under water, it is flying again.



The hard skull protects the gannet like a crash helmet!

Seabirds do not get tired on long trips because they can glide for hours on end without flapping their wings.

This spear-shaped bill is ideal for catching fish.



Floating on air

When the wind hits a cliff, it shoots up toward the sky. By stretching out their wings, seabirds, such as puffins, can use this breeze to lift them up to their lofty nests.



Beaky bird

A puffin's big, bright beak is hinged so that it can snap up fish and still keep a grip on those it has already caught.



Spinning eggs

Guillemots do not build nests. Their eggs are pointed at one end, so if they are moved, they just roll in a circle and not off the cliff.

Gannet



Guillemot

Going up!

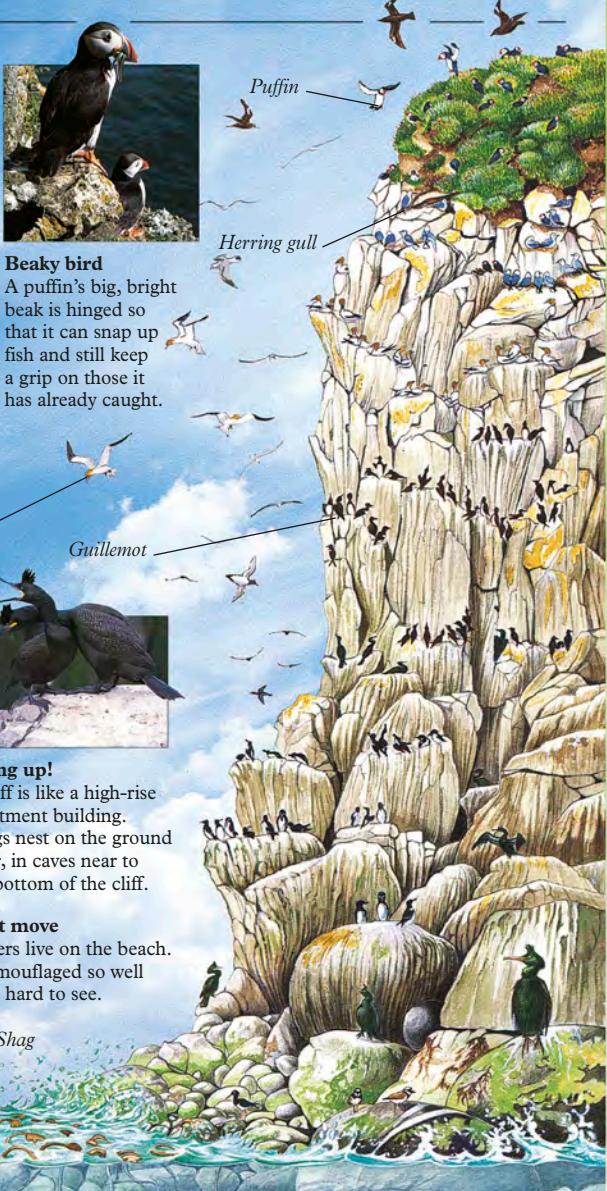
A cliff is like a high-rise apartment building. Shags nest on the ground floor, in caves near to the bottom of the cliff.



Pebbles that move

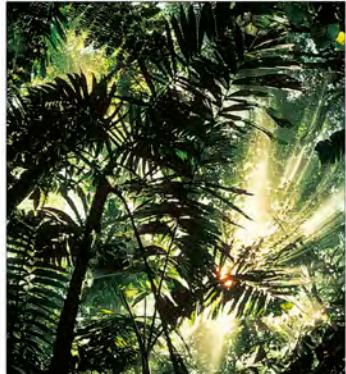
Ringed plovers live on the beach. They are camouflaged so well that they are hard to see.

Shag



TROPICAL FORESTS

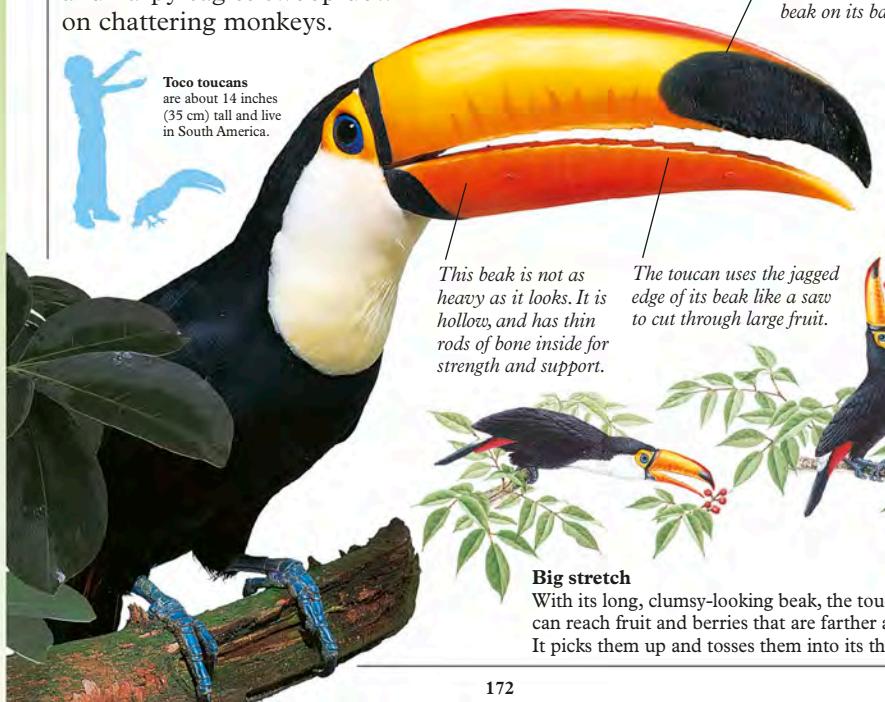
Giant trees, which seem to stretch to the sky, form a huge umbrella over the top of a tropical forest. In the shade beneath this green canopy live thousands of weird and wonderful birds. The hot, wet jungles are home to over half of the world's 10,000 species of birds. Noisy parrots gather fruit and nuts, colorful sunbirds sip the juice out of flowers, and harpy eagles swoop down on chattering monkeys.



When a toucan goes to sleep, it rests its big, brightly colored beak on its back.



Toco toucans are about 14 inches (35 cm) tall and live in South America.



This beak is not as heavy as it looks. It is hollow, and has thin rods of bone inside for strength and support.

The toucan uses the jagged edge of its beak like a saw to cut through large fruit.

Big stretch

With its long, clumsy-looking beak, the toucan can reach fruit and berries that are farther away. It picks them up and tosses them into its throat.



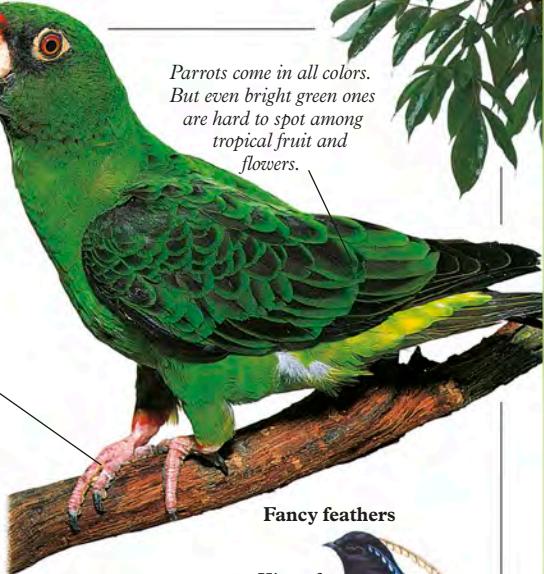
With their strong,
hooked beaks,
parrots can crack
open tough nuts.

Red-fronted parrots
are about 10 inches
(25 cm) tall and live
in Africa.

Parrots come in all colors.
But even bright green ones
are hard to spot among
tropical fruit and
flowers.

Parrots hold their food
with their claws. Some
use their right foot and
others their left!

This hummingbird's
beak is just the right
shape to reach to the
bottom of the flower.



Fancy feathers

King of
Saxony bird
of paradise



Magnificent
bird of paradise



King
bird of
paradise

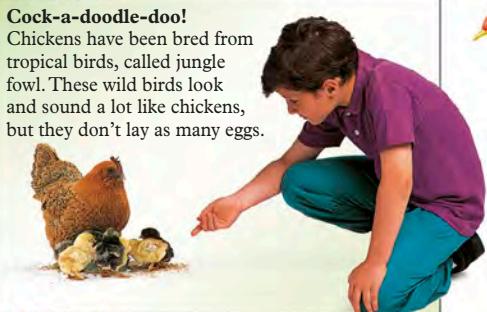


White-plumed
bird of paradise



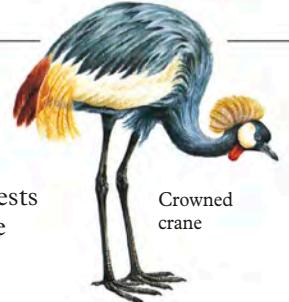
Cock-a-doodle-doo!

Chickens have been bred from
tropical birds, called jungle
fowl. These wild birds look
and sound a lot like chickens,
but they don't lay as many eggs.

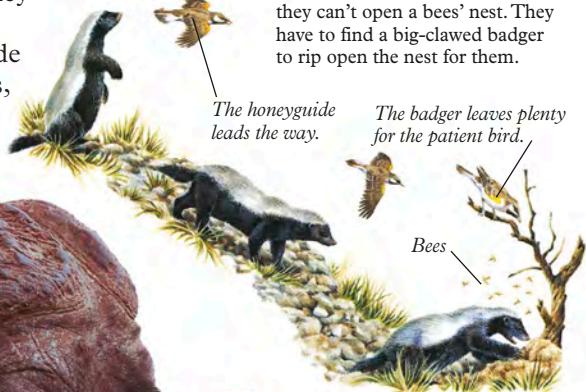


GRASSLANDS

Grass grows in the vast spaces between wet forests and dry deserts. These rolling seas of grass have several names: the tropical African plains are known as savanna, while the colder grasslands are called prairies, pampas, or steppes. These green lands are important to people because they make good farmland. To birds, they are a perfect place to live. There are tall grasses to hide in, and seeds, grasshoppers, beetles, and worms just waiting to be eaten.



Crowned crane



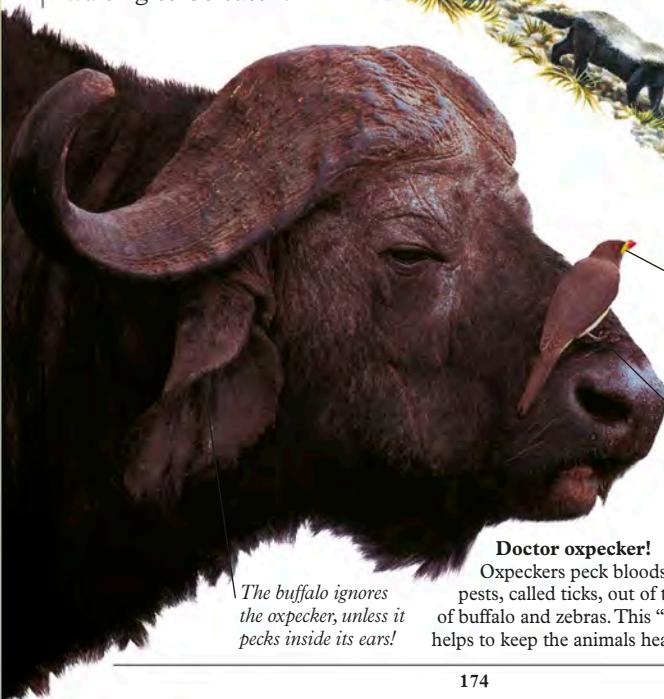
The honeyguide leads the way.

The badger leaves plenty for the patient bird.

Bees

If an oxpecker sees a lion, it calls very loudly and warns the buffalo of danger.

Oxpeckers have strong, sharp claws for clinging to thick skin.



The buffalo ignores the oxpecker, unless it pecks inside its ears!

Doctor oxpecker!

Oxpeckers peck bloodsucking pests, called ticks, out of the skin of buffalo and zebras. This "surgery" helps to keep the animals healthy.

Oxpeckers are about 5 inches (12 cm) tall and live in Africa.



Grassland birds



Western
meadowlark

Vulturine
guinea fowl



Budgerigar



Gouldian finch



Save the chicken!

Every year there are fewer and fewer prairie chickens living on the American prairies. This is because the grass is being plowed up and turned into gigantic fields of corn.

Grassland parrots

Budgerigars are small, green Australian parrots. In rainy years, there are more "budgies" in Australia than any other species of bird.

Hitching a ride

Kori bustards kick up thousands of insects as they stride through tall grass. Bee-eaters use the bustard as a perch to catch these swarming flies.

The bustard's back is used as a takeoff and landing strip!



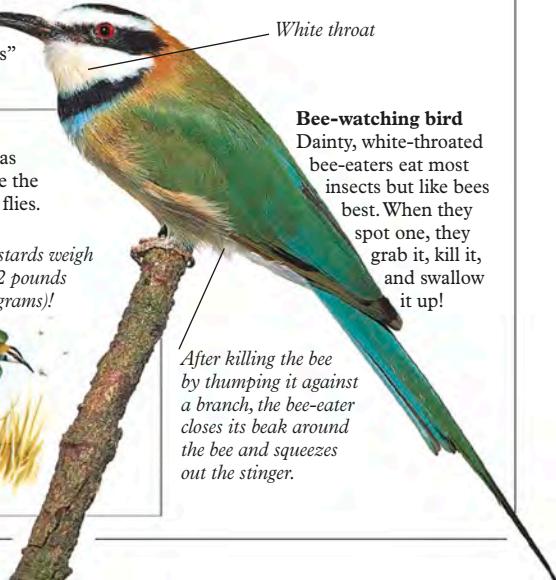
Kori bustards weigh about 42 pounds (19 kilograms)!

White throat

Bee-watching bird

Dainty, white-throated bee-eaters eat most insects but like bees best. When they spot one, they grab it, kill it, and swallow it up!

After killing the bee by thumping it against a branch, the bee-eater closes its beak around the bee and squeezes out the stinger.



DRY LANDS

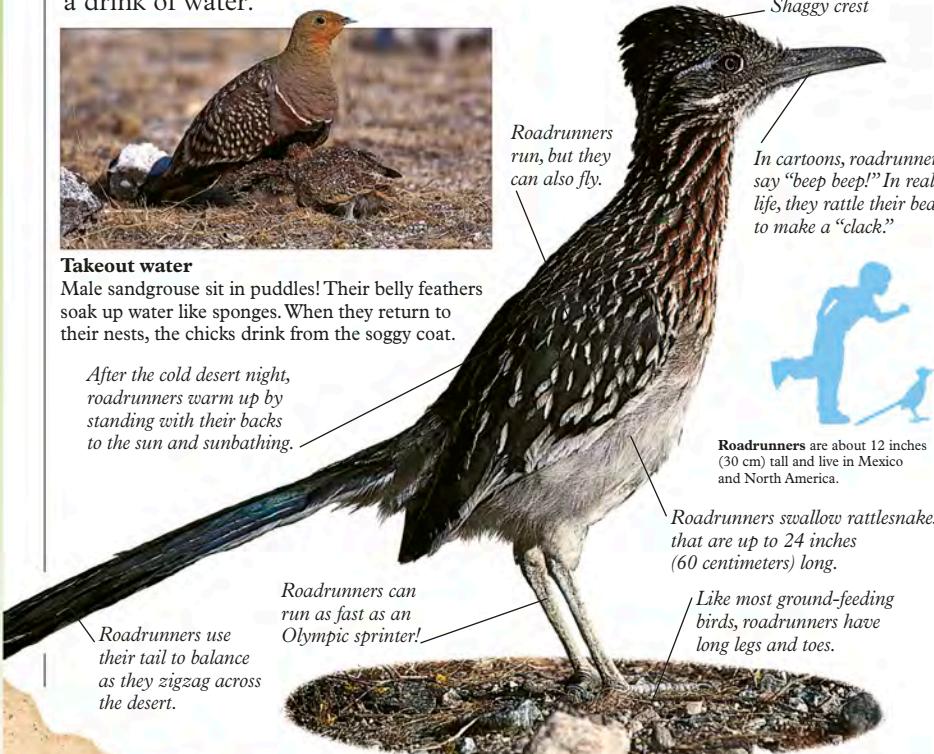
At midday, hot, dusty, dry lands are quiet and appear to be empty. Only at sunrise and sunset, when the air and ground are cooler, do birds come out of the shade to feed and find water. Elf owls are lucky—they eat juicy meat and do not need to drink. Sandgrouse eat dry seeds and have to fly up to 75 miles (120 kilometers) every day to get a drink of water.



Takeout water

Male sandgrouse sit in puddles! Their belly feathers soak up water like sponges. When they return to their nests, the chicks drink from the soggy coat.

After the cold desert night, roadrunners warm up by standing with their backs to the sun and sunbathing.



Sandgrouse suck

Most birds have to tip their heads back to make water trickle down their throats. Sandgrouse are unusual—like you, they can suck.

Building a sand castle!

A mallee bird doesn't build a nest, it makes a massive mound. It piles leaves into a pit and covers them with sand. The rotting leaves give off heat and incubate the eggs.



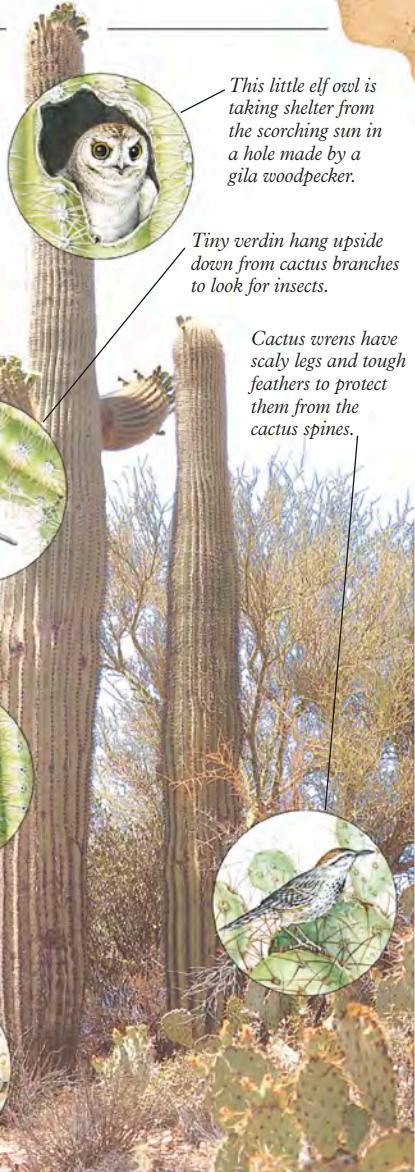
Sandy birds

Pale-colored feathers reflect the sun's heat and are good desert camouflage.

Gila woodpeckers peck away dead bits of cactus as they hunt for insects.

This Western bluebird is keeping cool in a shady bush.

Gambel's quail search under stones for seeds and scorpions.



This little elf owl is taking shelter from the scorching sun in a hole made by a gila woodpecker.

Tiny verdin hang upside down from cactus branches to look for insects.

Cactus wrens have scaly legs and tough feathers to protect them from the cactus spines.



THE FROZEN SOUTH



Antarctica, the land that surrounds the South Pole, is almost empty. The layer of ice 1.2 miles (two kilometers) thick, howling winds, and freezing temperatures stop plants and land-living animals from surviving. Yet the ocean around this frozen land is full of fish and krill, so the coasts are home to millions of birds. Penguins are the best-known residents of the snowy south, but there are also seabirds such as skuas, petrels, and terns.



Chinstrap penguin

Belly flop

The quickest way to get around on slippery ice is to slide. Penguins can't use a sled like you, so they scoot along on their big bellies!

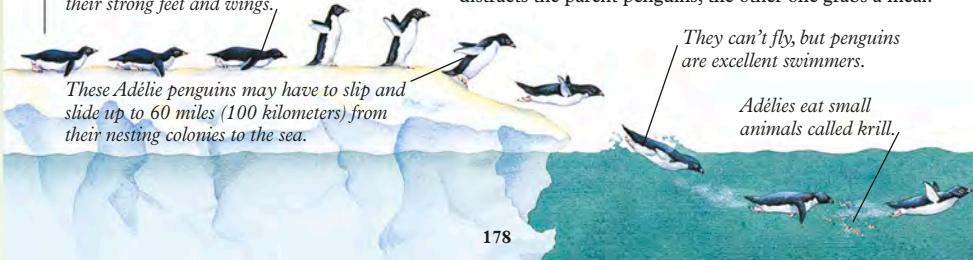


They push themselves along with their strong feet and wings.



Egg thief

Skuas rarely go hungry because there are plenty of penguin eggs and chicks for them to steal. While one skua distracts the parent penguins, the other one grabs a meal.



These Adélie penguins may have to slip and slide up to 60 miles (100 kilometers) from their nesting colonies to the sea.

They can't fly, but penguins are excellent swimmers.

Adélies eat small animals called krill.



The longest night

Once the Antarctic winter sun sets, it is dark for more than six months.

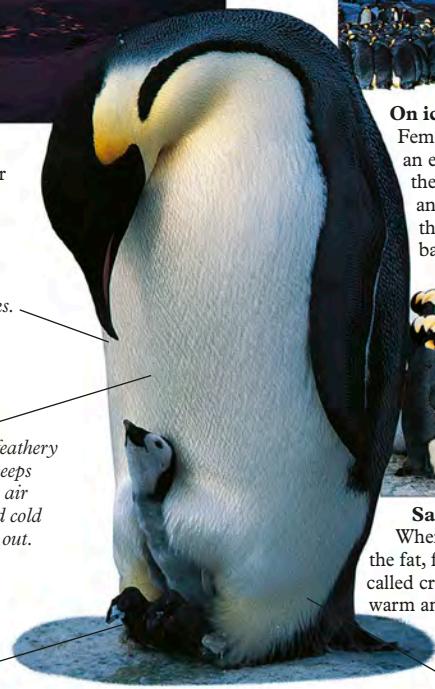
Male and female penguins cough up food from their stomachs to feed their chicks.



This feathery coat keeps warm air in and cold water out.

Emperor penguins are the biggest birds in Antarctica. They can be 4 feet (1.2 meters) tall.

Baby penguins keep warm by sitting on their parents' feet!



On ice

Female emperor penguins lay an egg at the start of winter. For the next 62–67 cold, dark days and nights, the male incubates this egg by standing still and balancing it on his feet.



Safety in numbers

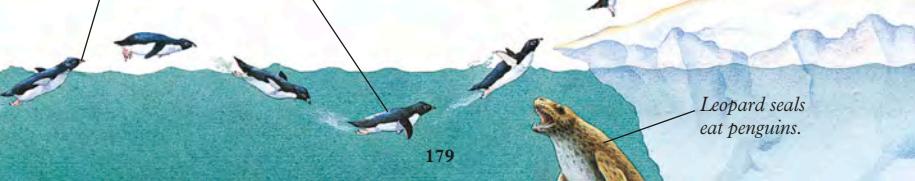
When their parents are fishing, the fat, fluffy chicks form groups called crèches. This helps keep them warm and protects them from skuas.

Thick fat, called blubber, keeps penguins warm.

Penguins come to the surface to gulp down air about every 2–3 minutes.

Adélie penguins can swim at up to 20 miles (32 km) per hour.

By building up speed, they can shoot themselves out of the sea.





BIRDS OF PREY



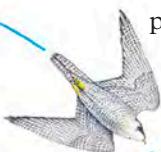
Eagles, hawks, and falcons are birds of prey, or raptors. These strong, fast, fearless birds kill and eat other birds and animals—their

prey. Whether they are the size of a sparrow or have a wingspan of 10 feet (three meters), like the condor,

they all have three things in common: hooked beaks, sharp claws, and “eagle” eyes that can spot rabbits more than three miles (five kilometers) away!

Steep stoop

Peregrines have been timed diving at speeds of more than 185 miles (300 kilometers) per hour. At the last moment, they thrust out their feet and stab their victim with their claws.



Wings are swept back, and the tail closes like a fan.



The biggest nest in the world

Golden eagles' nests, often called aeries, can be over 13 feet (four meters) wide—bigger than some cars! They do not build a new nest every year but fly back to an old nest and just add new twigs. Some nests are hundreds of years old.



The pigeon dies and falls to the ground

The tail is used for steering.



Peregrine falcons are about 13 inches (32 centimeters) tall and live all over the world.



Dressed for dinner

Vultures poke their heads into dead animals to eat. Their heads are bare—feathers would get messy!

The wings are strong enough to lift the falcon into the air even if it is carrying a dead duck.

Its pointed wings help the peregrine falcon fly faster than any other bird.





Bendy legs!

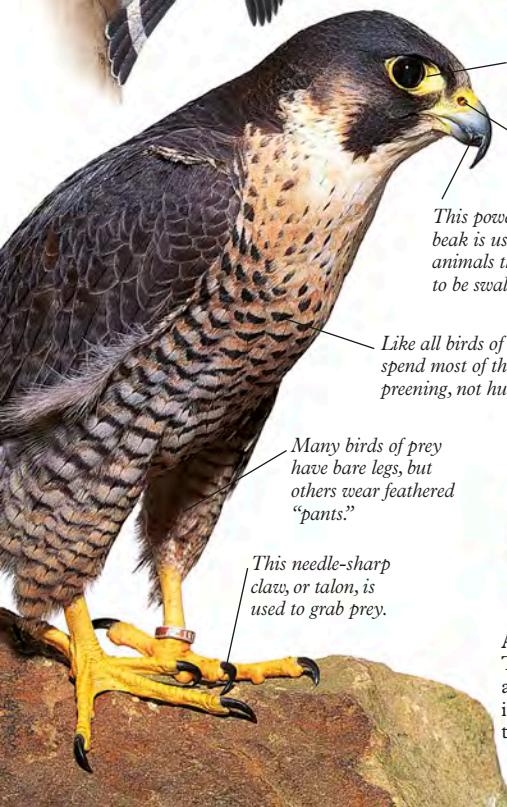
African harrier hawks have long legs which they use to reach eggs, chicks, and bats inside holes in trees. To make it easier to snatch a meal, they can bend their legs backward, forward, and even sideways.



Working together

Raptors do not hurt humans, and for many hundreds of years, they have been trained to hunt with people. In the Middle Ages, this lanner falcon would have been flown by a squire, a boy who worked for a knight.

The glove stops the bird's claws from scratching you.



Birds of prey have excellent color vision.

Nostril

This powerful, hooked beak is used to pull apart animals that are too big to be swallowed whole.

Like all birds of prey, peregrines spend most of the day resting or preening, not hunting.

Many birds of prey have bare legs, but others wear feathered "pants."

This needle-sharp claw, or talon, is used to grab prey.



All-American eagle

This US army badge has a bald eagle on it because it is the national bird of the United States.

Harpy eagle

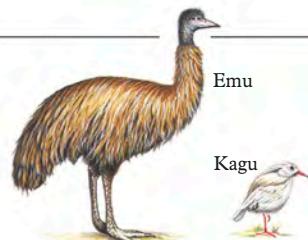


Meat-eating birds

FLIGHTLESS BIRDS



Eye-to-eye
Ostriches' round eyes
are nearly as big as
tennis balls!

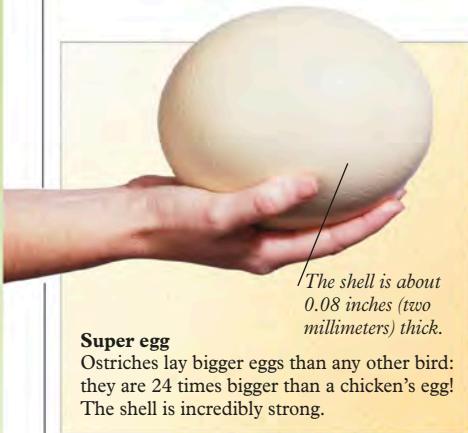


Emu

Kagu

Flying is hard work—it takes a lot of energy to flap wings and lift off the ground. For most birds it is worth the effort because it helps them escape from danger or search for things to eat. But some birds, such as kiwis and kagus, live on islands where there are no enemies, and others run or swim after food instead of flying.

Over millions of years, birds such as ostriches, emus, and penguins have gradually lost the ability to fly.



Sniff sniff

The national bird of New Zealand, the kiwi, is one of only a few birds to have a good sense of smell. It sniffs out worms that are in the soil.



Ready, set, go!

Ostriches live on the African grasslands. They cannot fly away from lions and hyenas, but they can run very fast. They sprint at speeds of 45 miles (70 kilometers) per hour—much faster than a galloping horse.



King penguin



Kakapo

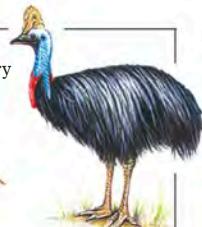


Rhea

Takahe



Brown kiwi



Cassowary



Rheas are five feet (1.5 meters) tall, weigh more than 45 pounds (20 kilograms), and live in South America.

Rheas peck the ground with their big, flat beaks to snap up grass, seeds, and leaves.

These frilly feathers keep the rhea warm at night.

By spreading its wings out like a sail, the rhea can catch the wind and run even faster.

Males wave their skinny, bare necks from side to side to attract a female.



Come to daddy

Rheas are unusual. The males, not the females, incubate the eggs and look after their big babies for up to five months.



Cassowary foot



Ostrich foot

Running "shoes"

The ostrich is the only bird to have two toes; most birds have four.

The bones inside their legs are solid. Rheas don't fly, so they do not need lightweight bones.

Three front-facing toes.



Rheas look shaggy because the barbules on their feathers do not "zip together." Flightless birds do not need neat feathers.





NIGHT BIRDS

As the sun sets, most birds settle down to sleep, but some are just waking up. Owls and other birds that feed and fly in the dark are called nocturnal birds. They come out

at night to find animals to eat and also because many of their enemies are asleep! Owls hoot loudly to one another in the dead of night—they are often heard but rarely seen.



Owls can fly without making a noise because special fringed feathers slow down the air as it rushes over their wings.



Slow, silent swoop

In the dark, barn owls use their ears, not their eyes, to find food. They can even hear a tiny mouse munching on a seed.



Did you spot this nightjar?

Short tail



Spot the bird

During the day, nightjars sleep on the ground. Their feathers are the color of leaves, so if they don't move, foxes and falcons won't find them.

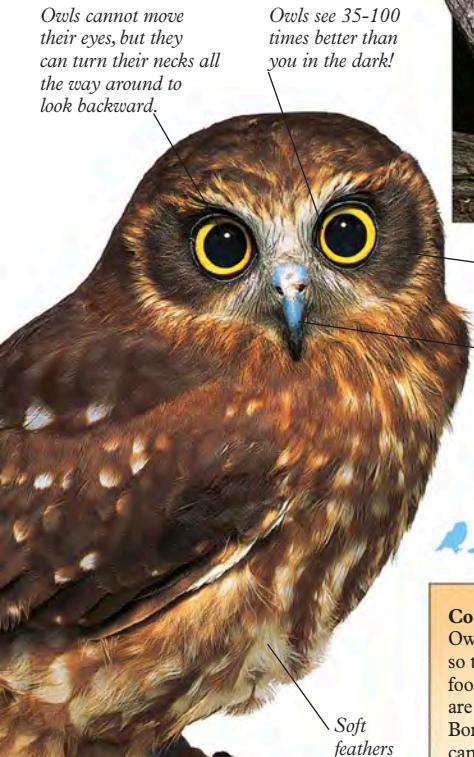


Night fishing

Waders, like this black-crowned night heron, feed in shallow water. So if the tide is out in the middle of the night, that is when they fish.

Wooden actor

If a frogmouth sees you, it will point its head up at the sky and pretend to be a broken branch. It leaves one eye slightly open though, just in case you're not fooled.



Face to face



Long-eared owl



Elf owl



Barn owl



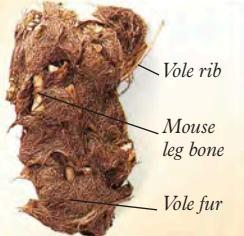
Eagle owl



Boobook owls are about eight inches (20 centimeters) tall and live in Australia and New Zealand.

Cough it up

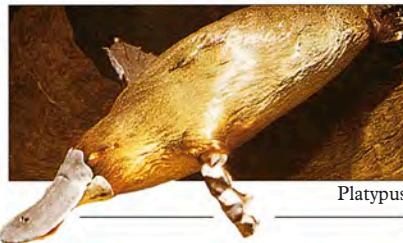
Owls don't have teeth, so they can't chew their food—mice and birds are swallowed whole! Bones, feathers, and fur cannot be digested, so they are made into pellets and coughed up.



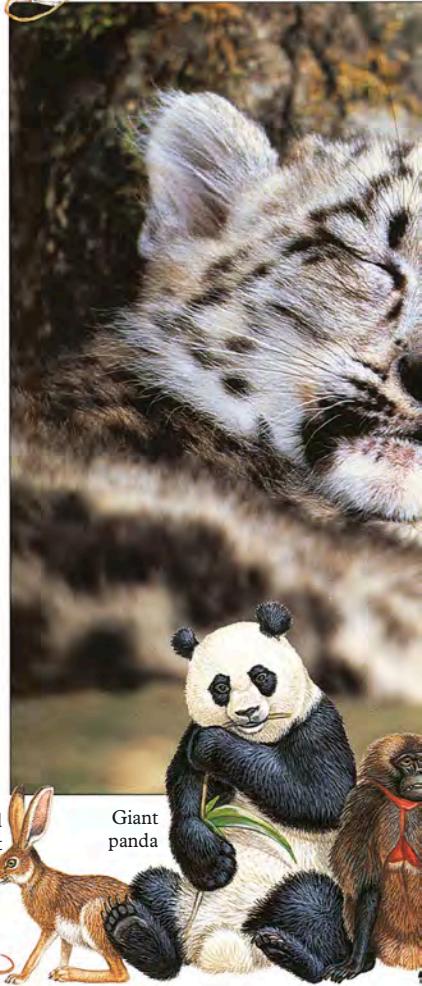
MAMMALS

Mammals are amazing animals. Some climb trees, others race across the ground, burrow, or even fly. Seals and otters are examples of mammals that live in the water. Mammals come in many shapes and sizes—a giraffe is tall, a mouse is small, and a platypus looks like an otter with a duck's beak. So what makes them all mammals? They are hairy, they breathe air into lungs, and they feed their babies milk.

Mammals are warm-blooded, which means their temperature is controlled by their bodies. Most are born live, not hatched from eggs, although platypuses lay eggs. Marsupials are a special kind of mammal because they give birth to babies that are only half formed. These tiny creatures grow into adults nestled in a warm safe pouch on their mother's body. Many mammals eat only plants, while others eat meat or insects. You are a mammal, too.



Pale kangaroo mouse







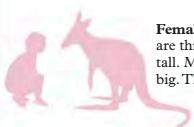
MARSUPIALS



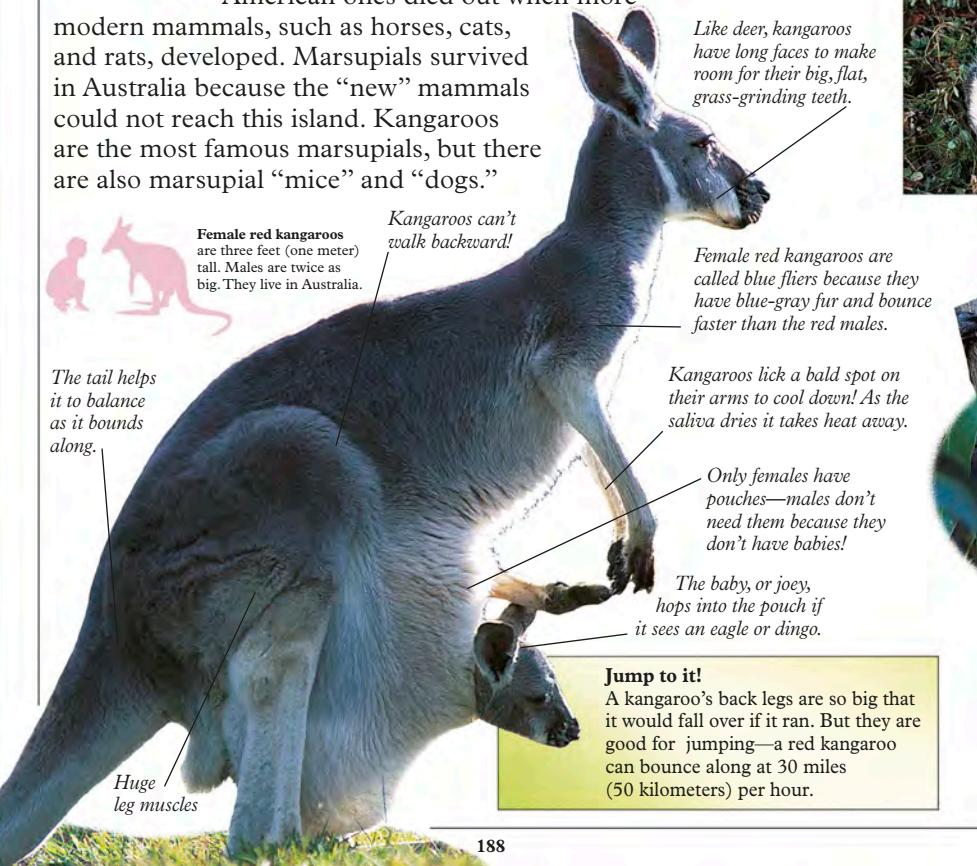
Australia

A marsupial is an animal that has a pocket, called a pouch, on its tummy for carrying its babies. Inside this nursery the baby is safe and has milk to drink. Today, the widest variety of marsupials live in Australia, but 50 million years ago many more lived in the Americas and the Antarctic. Most of the American ones died out when more

modern mammals, such as horses, cats, and rats, developed. Marsupials survived in Australia because the “new” mammals could not reach this island. Kangaroos are the most famous marsupials, but there are also marsupial “mice” and “dogs.”



Female red kangaroos are three feet (one meter) tall. Males are twice as big. They live in Australia.



Kangaroos can't walk backward!

The tail helps it to balance as it bounds along.

Huge leg muscles

Like deer, kangaroos have long faces to make room for their big, flat, grass-grinding teeth.

Female red kangaroos are called blue fliers because they have blue-gray fur and bounce faster than the red males.

Kangaroos lick a bald spot on their arms to cool down! As the saliva dries it takes heat away.

Only females have pouches—males don't need them because they don't have babies!

The baby, or joey, hops into the pouch if it sees an eagle or dingo.

Jump to it!

A kangaroo's back legs are so big that it would fall over if it ran. But they are good for jumping—a red kangaroo can bounce along at 30 miles (50 kilometers) per hour.



Missing marsupial

The last Tasmanian tiger is thought to have died in a zoo in 1936. It was striped like a tiger and had a thick tail like a kangaroo. Farmers shot them all because they ate sheep.



Acting star

Opossums are the only living American marsupials. When a Virginia opossum is attacked, it sticks out its tongue, lies very still, and pretends to be dead—it plays possum!



Honey possum



Numbat

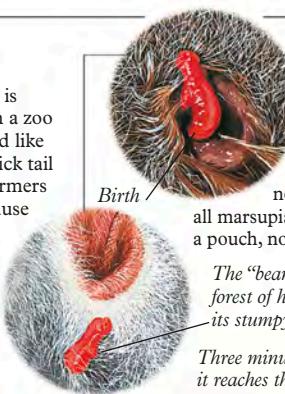


Ring-tailed rock wallaby



Jumping bean?

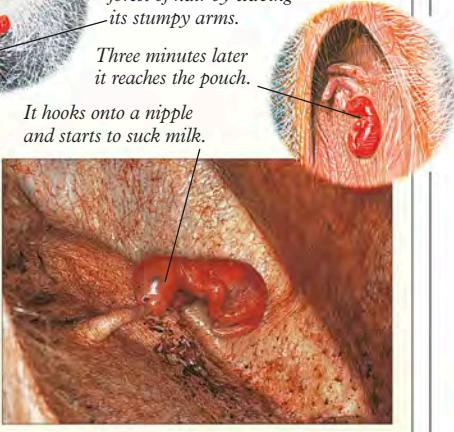
A newborn wallaby looks like a red bean! It is less than one inch (two cm) long and has no legs, hair, or eyes. Like all marsupials, it continues to grow in a pouch, not inside the mother's body.



The "bean" squirms through the forest of hair by waving its stumpy arms.

Three minutes later it reaches the pouch.

It hooks onto a nipple and starts to suck milk.



Hold on tight

This baby koala is too big to fit inside its mother's pouch, so it clings to her fur as she climbs through the eucalyptus leaves!

Mammals with pouches

Tasmanian devil





INSECTIVORES

Insectivores are sharp-toothed, long-nosed animals that eat insects and juicy worms, slugs, and snails!

Their busy little bodies lose heat easily, so they need to eat frequently. The food they eat produces the energy needed to keep them warm. But how do insectivores survive winters, when there are fewer insects to eat? Shrews search through rotting leaves and most manage to find enough food. Moles stay underground, and hedgehogs spend cold winters in a deep sleep, called hibernation.



How hungry?

Imagine having to eat a pile of food that weighs twice as much you—shrews have to do this every day!

The tiny eyes are covered by fur. A mole can barely tell the difference between light and dark.

Little bumps on its tail and its nose help this European mole sense where it is going.



A bite for lunch

The water shrew is one of the few venomous mammals. Its saliva can kill frogs, but not people!



A mole's wide front feet are shaped like spades—ideal for digging.



Molehill

The grass nest is the size of a football.

Worms burrow into the tunnel and are caught by the mole.

Moles turn around by doing forward rolls. If the tunnel is too narrow, they run backward.

Moles eat more than 50 worms a day! Live ones are stored in a pantry.

Moles live alone. This worm thief will soon be chased away.



Greedy guts

Shrews often eat animals that are bigger than themselves. This long, juicy worm will fill its tummy for two or three hours!



Worms in a week

Streaked tenrecs grow up faster than any other mammals. They stop drinking milk and start to eat worms when they are only six days old.

Insect eaters



Golden mole



Desman



Star-nosed mole



Solenodon

White-tailed shrews

Roll up, roll up!

Fearless hedgehogs don't run away from danger—they stick out their spines and roll into a ball. No one wants to eat a mouthful of needles!

Some foxes and badgers have learned to push hedgehogs into puddles to make them unroll!



Adult European hedgehogs have more than 5,000 needle-sharp spines.

Spines are just stiff, hollow hairs.



Head



The hedgehog's skin is larger than its body. When it curls up, it can pull its prickly skin over its head!

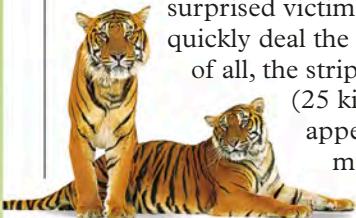
One-week-old baby shrews hold onto one another so that they don't get lost.





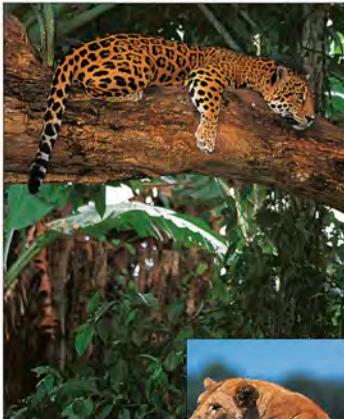
CATS

Cats are carnivores. Most creep up on their prey by sneaking slowly and silently through the undergrowth. Then, suddenly, they will hurl themselves onto their surprised victim. The sharp canine teeth quickly deal the deadly blow. The biggest cat of all, the striped tiger, can eat 55 pounds (25 kilograms) of meat in a meal! Its appetite is almost matched by the majestic lion, the biggest cat and most powerful hunter in Africa.



Tigers

A cheetah can accelerate as quickly as a Ferrari car.



Aerial ambush
All cats climb trees. This spotted jaguar is waiting to drop down on a passing peccary or tapir. It will even tackle alligators.



Bright eyes

When light shines on a cat's eyes, they glow like the reflectors on the back of a bike. This happens because the light bounces back off a special layer in the cat's eyes. This layer collects light. It helps cats see six times better than you in dim light.



Grassland queens
Lions are the odd-cats-out because they live in groups, called prides. Male lions are often called the "Kings of the Jungle," but they do not live in jungles, and the females, or lionesses, do most of the hunting.



Bendy backbone

A cheetah can only sprint for 20 seconds because it gets tired.

Speedy cat

Cheetahs are the only cats that run down their meals. They can sprint at 60 miles (100 km) per hour and are the fastest mammals.

Play fight

Baby cats, or kittens, are playful. They chase one another, jump into the air, and chew twitching tails! This is the way they learn to hunt.



Leopards are about 24 inches (60 cm) tall. They live in Africa and southern Asia.



Leopards sleep 16 hours a day, usually in short "cat naps."

The rough tongue can rub meat off bones!

Sensitive whiskers



Big cats roar; they can't purr.

Cats comb and clean their fur coat with their tongue.

Soft pads let cats creep quietly.



Really wild cat

There are more than 300 million pet cats in the world. They are believed to have been bred from wildcats over 12,000 years ago. This Scottish wildcat is much fiercer than a tame tabby!

Black leopards, or panthers, can be born to "yellow" parents.

Panthers are spotted, but their spots are hard to see!

Leopards live and hunt on their own. Groups of lions often gang up on them and steal their food.



Put your claws in! Little muscles pull most cats' daggerlike claws into special pockets, to stop them from becoming dull.





DOGS

On its own, a dog can only trap animals that are smaller than itself, but 20 African hunting dogs working together can easily catch and kill a zebra. Many dogs have learned this lesson and prefer to live and hunt in family groups, called packs. The 39 types of wild dogs have often been treated as enemies, not loved like pet dogs. Wolves have been wiped out in many places. Foxes only survive because they are smaller and more cunning.



Hooooow!

In the dead of night, the wolves in a pack get together, throw back their heads, and howl. This warns other wolves to keep out of their territory.

Gray wolves are about three feet (one meter) tall. They live in Canada, the US, Europe, and northern Asia.



Team effort

Female African hunting dogs can have as many as 16 puppies. They are looked after by the whole pack, not just the mother. They are even suckled by other females.



All pet dogs have been bred from gray, or timber, wolves. The first dogs were tamed more than 12,000 years ago!

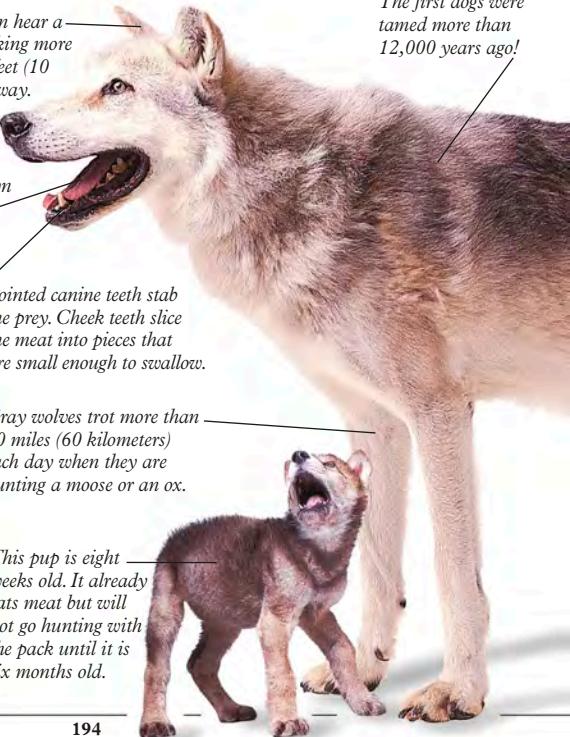
A wolf can hear a watch ticking more than 30 feet (10 meters) away.

Dogs cool down by panting.

Pointed canine teeth stab the prey. Cheek teeth slice the meat into pieces that are small enough to swallow.

Gray wolves trot more than 40 miles (60 kilometers) each day when they are hunting a moose or an ox.

This pup is eight weeks old. It already eats meat but will not go hunting with the pack until it is six months old.





New neighbor

Red foxes used to live in the woods, but many have moved into cities. They roam the streets at night, searching for fruit and mice or garbage cans to raid!



A fox's tail is called a brush.

A gray wolf's thick coat can be any color, from white to black!

Bushy tail

Dogs are marathon runners, not sprinters. A wolf can only run 28 miles (45 kilometers) per hour—much slower than a lion.

Ankle

Dogs walk on their toes.

The claws stay out all the time.



Cleaning up

The African dogs called jackals love leftover lion food—lions hardly ever finish their dinners! Meat eaters that do not kill their own food are called scavengers.



Win by a nose

When you smell a flower, you can often tell what sort of flower it is without opening your eyes. Dogs can do even better than this—they can smell who touched the flower the day before!



Dog "talk"

Every dog has to know its place in the pack—they can't all be the leader! Dogs can't talk, so they use body language instead to let one another know whether they make or take orders.

Dogs wag their tails when they are happy.

The pack leader holds its tail upright and snarls.

This Indian wild dog, called a dhole, does not want to fight, so it rolls on its back.



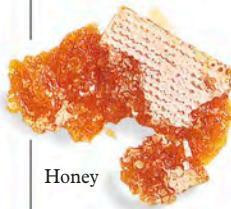


BEARS



Bears are big and usually have thick, shaggy coats. Brown bears are the most common, but giant pandas are more famous. People have argued for years about whether giant pandas are bears or not. Scientists

now think, as any child can see, that they are black-and-white bears! Bears look cuddly, but they are fierce. People have shot so many of these big beasts that today bears only survive in hilly hideaways.



Honey

Honey and nuts for dinner?

Most bears eat all sorts of things—they are omnivores. These are a few of their favorite foods.



Hazelnuts



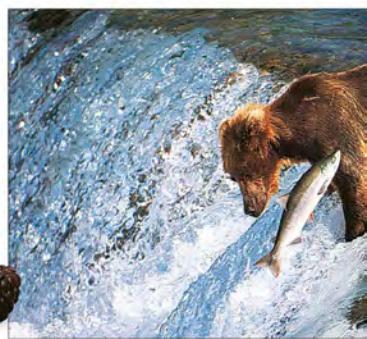
Berries



The big sleep

Bears that live in cold places spend the winter inside warm caves. The females give birth to their tiny cubs, usually twins, while they are asleep.

Polar bear pawprint



Open wide!

A grizzly bear has a simple way of fishing. It stands in a river and waits for fish to jump right into its mouth.

Masters of disguise

Polar bears live in the icy Arctic and are the only completely carnivorous bears. Seal skin is their favorite food.



The polar bear hides its black nose with its white paw.

Half-webbed toes



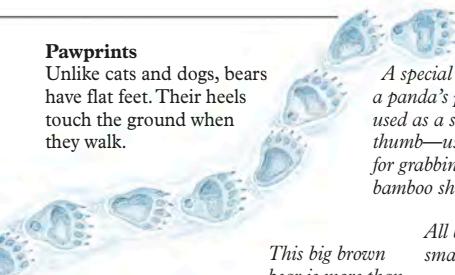
It sneaks up on the seal by pretending to be an iceberg!

The cunning bear springs out of the icy water to kill the surprised seal with one swipe of its huge paw.

Ringed seal pup

Pawprints

Unlike cats and dogs, bears have flat feet. Their heels touch the ground when they walk.



A special pad on a panda's paw is used as a sort of thumb—useful for grabbing bamboo shoots.



A bear's face always looks the same—you can't tell whether it is angry or happy!



This big brown bear is more than twice the size of a tiger!

All bears have small, round ears.



Save the giant panda!

There are less than 2,000 giant pandas left. It is not going to be easy to save them—females are only fertile for three days a year. They also need to eat 30 pounds (14 kilograms) of one special type of bamboo a day.

Grizzly bears are a type of brown bear. They are called grizzly bears because the tips of their brown hairs are gray, or grizzled.

With their big, strong arms, bears can hug a person to death!



Grizzly bears stand up to 10 feet (3 meters) tall. They live in Canada and the US.

The front paws can be used as clubs to hit other large animals.





A PES

There are four sorts of apes: chimpanzees, orangutans, gibbons, and gorillas. They all live for many years, have big brains and no tails, and can walk upright. Apes are the closest relatives of people.



Orangutan (male)

Gorillas are the biggest and strongest apes, but they are gentle giants. Chattering chimps are sassy and cute, but much more dangerous—they even kill deer and monkeys to eat! Family life is important to all of these intelligent animals; chimps cuddle and shake hands when they meet.

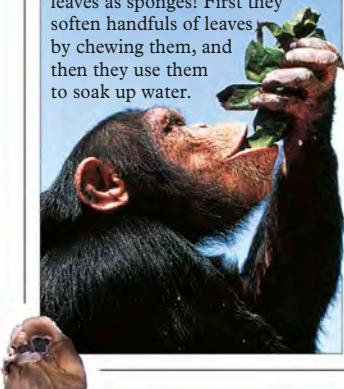
Playtime

Baby chimps take a long time to grow up. Their mothers feed them milk for five or six years—so they have plenty of time to play.



Brainy beast

Chimps are one of the few animals to use tools. They use leaves as sponges! First they soften handfuls of leaves by chewing them, and then they use them to soak up water.



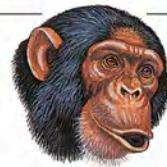
Walk like an ape
All apes can stand on just two feet, but they usually walk on all fours like this.



Apes walk on their knuckles.



Playful



Begging for food



Go bananas

Gorillas really do eat bananas. They also like nettles, giant celery, and banana leaves.



Frightened



Angry



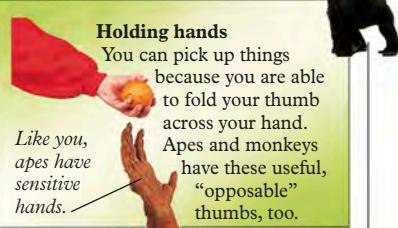
Is it a bird?

Every night, orangs build a cozy nest to sleep in. It takes just five minutes to build a mattress of branches and a blanket of leaves.

Not a word
The chimp is one of the few mammals that can make faces to show its feelings.



Gorillas have about the same number of hairs as you. They look hairier because their hair is long and thick.



Like you, apes have sensitive hands.

Holding hands

You can pick up things because you are able to fold your thumb across your hand. Apes and monkeys have these useful, "opposable" thumbs, too.

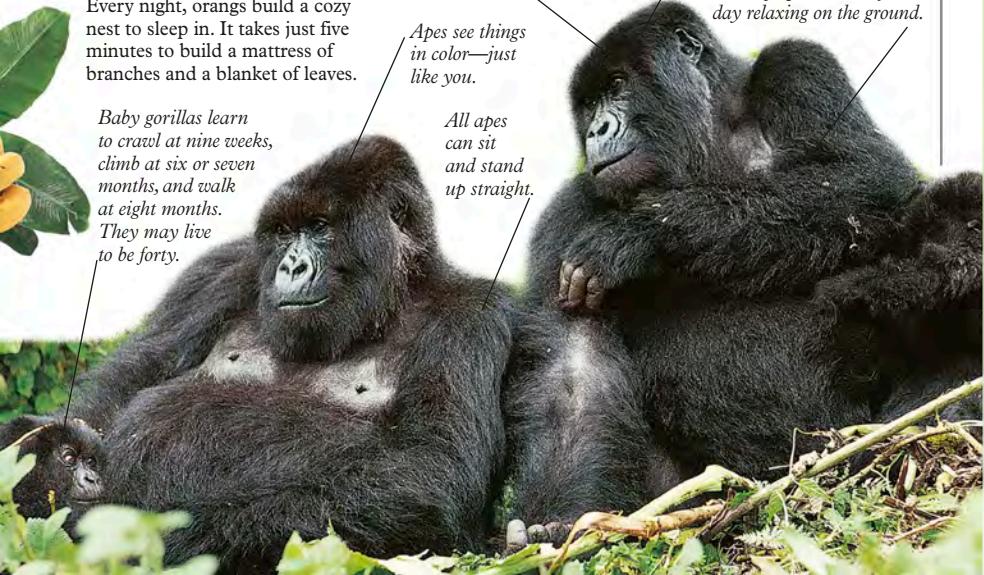


Male gorillas stand up to 6.5 feet (two meters) tall. They live in Africa.

An orangutan's big toes can grip things, too!

Big brain

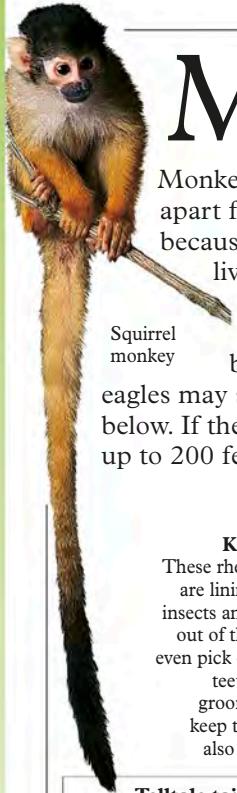
Gorillas can climb trees, but they spend most of the day relaxing on the ground.



Baby gorillas learn to crawl at nine weeks, climb at six or seven months, and walk at eight months. They may live to be forty.

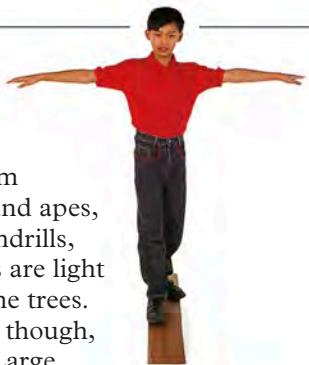
Apes see things in color—just like you.

All apes can sit and stand up straight.



MONKEYS

Monkeys are primates. It is easy to tell them apart from the smarter primates, people, and apes, because they have tails. Some, such as mandrills, live on the ground, but most monkeys are light enough to jump or swing through the trees.



Squirrel monkey

They always look before they leap, though, because there is danger all around. Large eagles may swoop down from above and leopards lurk below. If they miss their footing, monkeys may plunge up to 200 feet (60 meters) to the ground!

Keep it clean!

These rhesus monkeys are lining up to have insects and dirt picked out of their fur. They even pick one another's teeth clean! This grooming helps to keep them tidy and also good friends.

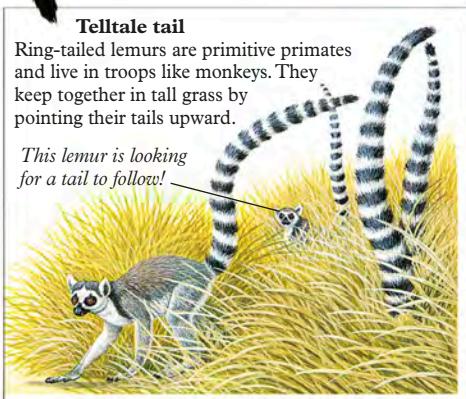


Built to balance

If you start to lose your balance, you can use your arms to steady yourself. Monkeys use their tails instead—leaving their arms free for climbing.

Groups of monkeys are called troops.

Face to face



Telltale tail

Ring-tailed lemurs are primitive primates and live in troops like monkeys. They keep together in tall grass by pointing their tails upward.



Mandrill (male)



Proboscis monkey (male)



Bald uakari



Cotton-top tamarin



A gripping tail

Many South American monkeys have three "arms"—their tails are prehensile, so they can hold on to things. A spider monkey can hang by its strong tail, leaving both hands free for feeding.

Both eyes face forward to spot safe landing places!



All primates, including you, see in color.

Narrow chest

Mane of soft, silky hair.

Monkeys are not fussy eaters. They eat fruit, flowers, lizards, butterflies, and even frogs' legs!

Monkeys' legs are shorter than their arms.

This tamarin weighs only 21 ounces (600 grams), so it is light enough to scamper across small branches without breaking them.

People have chopped down so many of the trees that golden lion tamarins live in that there are only about 1,000 of these monkeys left in the wild.

Hairy tail



Golden lion tamarins are 13–15 inches (32–37 centimeters) tall. They live in Brazil.



Bath time

These Japanese snow monkeys relax and warm up in winter by sitting in pools of hot water that bubble up from beneath the icy ground.





BATS

Bats are furry, flying mammals. Their wings are made of thin, leathery skin, which is stretched across their fingers like material over the spokes of an umbrella. Bats live all over the world, but you will not often see them flying. Most bats hang upside down and sleep during the day. They hunt at night. Most small bats eat moths and flies. Larger, vegetarian bats, often called flying foxes because they have foxlike faces, feed on bananas and nectar.

The ears of this long-eared bat are almost as big as its body. It tucks them under its wings when it sleeps.

Bats hear better than all other mammals.





Camping bats
Imagine having to build a new house every night—tent bats do! These small, white bats nibble through the middle rib of a palm leaf until it droops down to form a tiny tent. The bats hang underneath, out of the wind and rain.



The wing can be used as a scoop to catch flying insects.



The smallest mammal
The bumblebee bat can fit in the palm of your hand. Its body is one inch (three cm) long and its wingspan is just 5 inches (13 cm). It weighs less than a grape.

Long finger



The bat hears the tiny echo and swiftly swoops down to grab the fish.



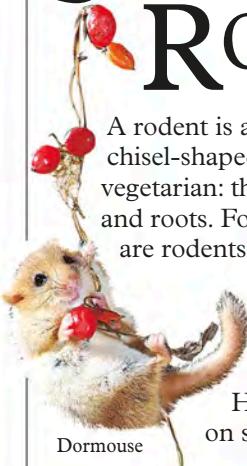
Fangs for dinner!
Vampire bats love the taste of blood. This one has sliced open the foot of a sleeping chicken with its sharp teeth. It will lap up about one tablespoonful of blood.

Sounds tasty

Many bats can't see well enough to fly in the dark, so they use their voice and ears instead! American fishing bats make clicking noises as they fly over ponds. When these sounds bounce back off ripples, they know that a fish is near to the surface.



SMALL RODENTS



Dormouse

A rodent is an animal that gnaws with sharp, chisel-shaped teeth. Most are mouselike and vegetarian: they nibble plant stems, seeds, and roots. Forty percent of all mammals are rodents. They live all over the world, from African jungles where crested rats clamber up trees, to scorching deserts where jerboas hop across the sand. House mice have even hitched rides on ships to reach huts in Antarctica.

A plague of rats

Every year, millions of nibbling rats wreck one fifth of the world's crops!



Many brown rats live in sewers. They use their feet as paddles when they swim and can tread water for three days!



Scaly tail

These newborn, rubbery, wriggling mice can only squeak, sleep, and suckle.



Moving house

Every three or four years, thousands of lemmings run from their overcrowded homes. Many die in the frantic search for new places to live and feed.



The greasy fur leaves dirty marks on things it touches.

Flat teeth in the back of a rat's mouth grind up grass and grains.

After walking through dirt, rats may walk over food and spread diseases.



Out on a limb

Harvest mice climb up small plants, like monkeys in a tall tree! They hold on tightly with their tails.



They are 18 days old and ready to leave home.

Their eyes begin to open and fur appears when they are 10 days old.



The most common mammal

House mice are small and cannot defend themselves. The species survives by having lots of babies. A female can give birth when she is six weeks old and have 10 litters a year. If all her babies survived, she could have a million descendants when she was one year old!



Nonstop teeth

Your adult teeth grow in the spaces left behind by your baby teeth. When they have filled the gap, they stop growing. Rodents' front teeth are different—they never stop growing!

They get worn down by the tough food that the rodents eat.

Rodents even chew soap.

Growing tooth



Tiny nibblers

Pale kangaroo mouse



Great jerboa



Indian gerbil



Fat dormouse



Crested rat





LARGE RODENTS



Chipmunks

Most rodents are small and look like mice, but some are much bigger. There are two sorts of large rodents—those that look like squirrels and those, such as porcupines, that look like pigs. Rodents' teeth get worn down by gnawing, and all rodents have front teeth that keep growing throughout their lives.

A porcupine can hear fruit drop to the ground several yards away.



Size of a sheep!

The capybara is the largest rodent in the world. It is a relative of the guinea pig.



Busy nibblers

European red squirrel



Chinchilla



Rock cavy



Springhare

Woodchuck





Planting trees

Squirrels bury nuts to eat later. Those that they can't find again may grow into trees.

A squirrel's strong jaws can crack open acorns.



Warm, leafy lining

Digging "dogs"

Prairie dogs live in underground towns! These towns usually have a population of about 1,000, but one in Texas had more than 400 million prairie dogs in it.



The "garden" is weeded.

Watch "dog"

Prairie dogs touch teeth when they meet.

Timber!

Beavers are excellent builders. They bite through trees with their teeth and then pile up the logs in a river. Behind this dam, a pond soon forms where they can build their home.

Dam

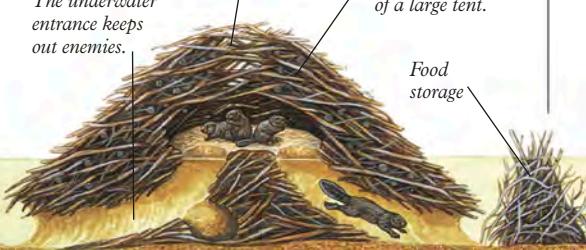
Squirrels can walk up and down the sides of trees to reach their nests.

The underwater entrance keeps out enemies.

A hole in the roof lets in air.

The house, or lodge, is the size of a large tent.

Food storage



Grey squirrels race through trees at up to 24 km (15 miles) per hour.

A gray squirrel can leap more than six meters (20 feet) from one tree to another.



Tufted squirrel

European red squirrels don't scamper through gardens and parks like their gray American cousins. They are shy and hide from people in forests.



THE HORSE FAMILY



Almost all the horses in the world are tame. The only wild species left is the Przewalski's horse. It survives in zoos. The most common wild member of the horse family today is not

Przewalski's horse, but a zebra. Fast, striped zebras are herbivores—they chew grass with their flat back teeth. Horses, zebras, and asses walk on the tips of their toes, which are hidden inside hard "shoes," called hooves.

The ears twist around to listen for danger.



Plains zebras are up to 5 feet (1.5 meters) tall at the shoulder. They live in Africa.

Best friends

Zebras and wildebeest like to live together. The zebras keep watch, while wildebeest sniff the air for lions.

Wildebeest eat the short grass left by the zebras.



Desert "donkeys"
Wild asses are shy and rare. They live in the dry North African deserts.



Quick, run!

Asses, zebras, and horses can run at speeds of up to 40 miles (65 kilometers) per hour.

All four hooves leave the ground when it gallops.

Long legs are best for taking big steps and running fast.



Plains zebras are plump.



Spot the zebra!

Nobody knows why zebras are striped. Maybe their crazy pattern confuses lions, making it hard for them to pick their prey.

A zebra scratches its back by rolling on the ground.

The swishing tail swats annoying, buzzing flies.

Females, foals, and stallions live together in the same herd.

Big thigh muscles power plains zebras across the African grasslands.

There is only one toe inside this hard hoof.



Make your mark

Your fingerprints are different from everyone else's. So are a zebra's stripes—each zebra has a different-patterned coat! Some even have thin, white stripes on a black background.

Trespassers will be kicked
Mountain zebras don't live in herds. Each male, or stallion, "owns" a patch of land, called a territory. He will chase off any male zebra that enters his home.



Born free

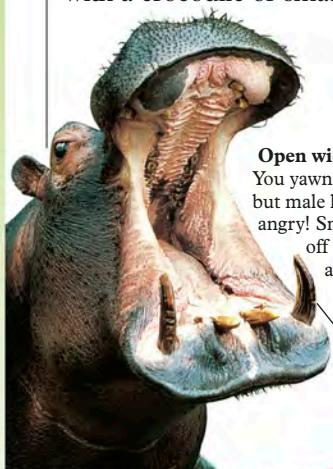
Some of the 75 million tame horses have escaped and learned to live in the wild. The ancestors of these American "wild" horses, called mustangs, belonged to cowboys.





HIPPOS, PIGS, AND PECCARIES

Hippo is short for hippopotamus, which means “river horse.” They are called river horses because they live in rivers and lakes, and eat grass. Pigs and peccaries do not live in rivers, but they enjoy wallowing in mud as much as their huge relatives. Although these water-loving mammals are not carnivores, they are all able to protect themselves. Wild pigs can stab and kill tigers with their tusks, peccaries fight jaguars, and a heavy hippo will tussle with a crocodile or smash into a boat!



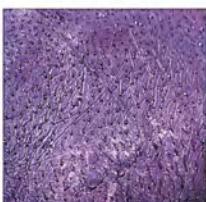
Open wide

You yawn when you are tired or bored, but male hippos yawn when they are angry! Smaller males are frightened off by the big teeth and swim away without starting a fight.

Built-in suntan lotion
Hippo skin oozes tiny blobs of pink liquid. This oil stops their skin from drying out and also protects them from sunburn.



Very important pig
Farmyard pigs have all been bred from wild boars.



Hippos are 5 feet (1.5 meters) tall. They live in Africa.



The 1.5 feet-long (half meter) tusks are sometimes used to stab crocodiles.

Smooth, almost hairless, skin.

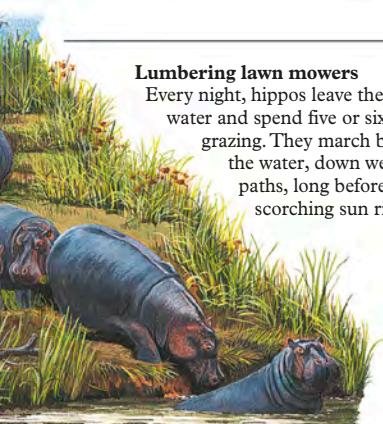
This big male hippo weighs as much as 120 eight-year-old children!



The eyes and nostrils are high up on a hippo's head. This means it can stick just the top of its head out of the water and still see and breathe.

Lumbering lawn mowers

Every night, hippos leave the water and spend five or six hours grazing. They march back into the water, down well-worn paths, long before the scorching sun rises.



Plucky peccary

If a mountain lion attacks a group of peccaries, one brave animal may charge the lion with its sharp tusks while the others escape, but it will be lucky to survive.



Pigs on parade



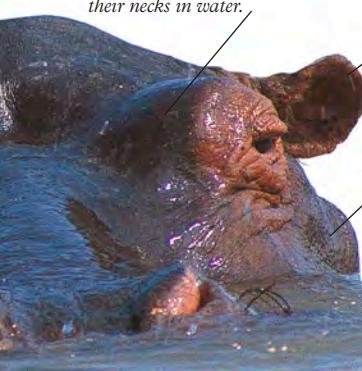
Bush pig



Collared peccary

Underwater ballet

Hippos can hold their breath for more than five minutes. This is plenty of time to dive down and tiptoe gracefully across the bottom of the lake.



The hippo shuts its ears and nostrils when it is under water.

Thick skin protects the hippo from snapping crocodiles.

Hippos do eat water lilies, but prefer grass.



Hippo



Pygmy hippo





THE CAMEL FAMILY

Camels and their smaller South American relatives, vicuñas and guanacos, are found on sandy deserts, rocky plains, and bare mountains. They survive in some of the harshest places on Earth.

Vicuñas can breathe thin mountain air and camels can cope with freezing nights and scorching desert days. People have made good use of these animals' amazing survival skills—most are domesticated and work for a living. There are few wild members of the camel family left.

Domestic dromedary

Desert people could not survive without their one-humped camels. They are ridden, milked, and eaten. Camel skin is made into shoes, hair is woven into clothes, and dry droppings are used as fuel!



Food is brought back up from the rumen to be rechewed.

The rumen is the large part of the stomach where chewed food goes first to be partly digested.

Third stomach

Second stomach

Twice as tasty

To get all the goodness out of grass, some mammals, such as camels, deer, and cattle, have more than one stomach and chew their food twice!



The fat inside a camel's humps is an energy store, so it can survive a long time without food.



Swallow that!

Camels can go for months without water, then drink up to 29 gallons (130 liters) of water in 13 minutes.





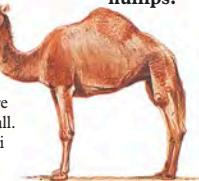
Two rows of eyelashes keep out sand and stop their eyes from freezing on cold desert nights.

A camel doesn't waste water. Liquid from its runny nose drips down the split lip into its mouth!

How many humps?

The ears and nostrils can be pressed flat to keep out sand.

Bactrian camels are 7 feet (2.2 meters) tall. They live in the Gobi desert in Asia.



Dromedary



Camels spit at things that annoy them.

Tough lips can grip thorny desert plants.

Camels hardly ever sweat. This saves water.

King of the castle

While the females graze, the male vicuña stands on a rock. If it spots a mountain lion, it whistles and the fleecy females flee.



Camels roll from side to side when they walk because they lift both legs on one side at the same time.

The two toes spread out to stop the camel from sinking into soft sand.

Hardworking mammals

Llamas and alpacas have been bred by people from wild guanacos. Llamas are milked and used to carry heavy loads. Alpacas are kept for their fine wool.

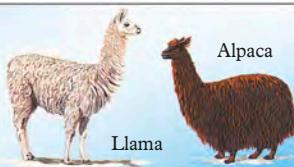
Bactrian camel



Guanaco



Vicuña



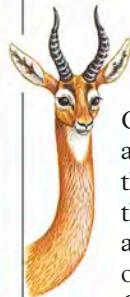
Alpaca

Llama





CATTLE AND ANTELOPES



Cattle, antelopes, and their relatives goats and sheep, are all bovids. This means that they have horns attached to the tops of their heads. Horns have a bony core and an outer layer made of the same stuff as your fingernails.

Gerenuk antelopes eat leaves, but

Gerenuk bison prefer to graze on grass. Like (male) all bovids, they make the most of their poor-quality food by coughing up partly digested food and chewing it a second time. This is called chewing the cud.



Roundup

Musk oxen form a ring around their babies to protect them from hungry wolves—who can't get through the circle of horns.



These horns are about half as tall as you!

Arabian oryx

This rare Arabian oryx antelope chews the cud as it walks across the desert.



On the march

At the beginning of the dry season, huge herds of wildebeest walk more than 990 miles (1,600 km) to wetter, greener pastures. When the wet season begins, they come back. These long, yearly journeys are called migrations.

It sniffs the air for rain and then walks to where the grass is growing.

Like all cattle, bison have split hooves.

Built-in radiator

The Tibetan yak lives near the top of the world in the Himalayan mountains. It does not get cold because it has its own central heating system—the moss being digested in its stomach is hot and keeps it warm.



Heads with horns



African buffalo (male)



This thick, winter coat falls off in big clumps during the spring.

A dark coat soaks up the sun's heat. This helps to keep the bison warm in cold weather.

Male bison fight for females by putting their heads together and pushing. The winner is the one who pushes the other backward.

Horns are different than antlers. They never form branches or stop growing, and they are not replaced each year.

Male bison weigh more than a small car!

American bison
are 6.5 feet
(two meters)
tall. They live
in Canada
and the US.



Bighorn sheep (male)



Blackbuck (male)



Wild goat (male)



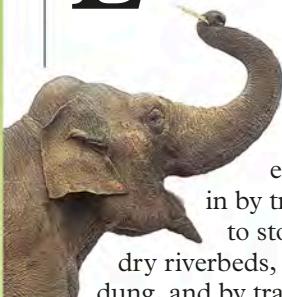
Herds of bison spend most of the day eating grass and most of the night chewing!



ELEPHANTS



Matriarch



Elephants have enormous ears, long noses, tusks—and weigh more than six cars. They are the biggest land mammals. Herds of elephants shape the land they live in by treading paths that are wide enough to stop bush fires, by digging wells in dry riverbeds, by fertilizing the ground with dung, and by trampling grass for zebras to eat.

They also open up forests by pushing over trees!

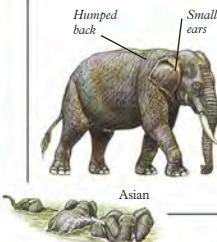


It's all relative

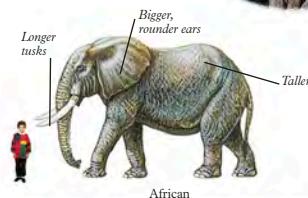
The elephant's closest relative, the hyrax, looks like a guinea pig! Millions of years ago they were huge. All that elephants and hyraxes have in common now are tusks and nails instead of hooves.

Who's who?

There are two sorts of elephants.



Asian



African

Wrinkles trap water to help to keep them cool.

Ivory towers

Many elephants are killed for their valuable ivory tusks. People have burned huge piles of old tusks to show that they want this cruelty to stop.



Elephants never stop growing.

Tusks are teeth. They grow about 7 inches (17 centimeters) a year and can be as long as a car!

Elephants eat grass, bark, and leaves for up to 16 hours a day.

This toenail is bigger than your whole hand!





Young females act as nannies.



Males leave their families when they are about fourteen.

An African elephant's ears are almost as big as sheets for a single bed!



The elephant spreads out its ears to make itself look bigger and more dangerous.

Elephants keep in touch by making deep, rumbling noises in their tummies!

The bendy trunk is formed from the nose and the upper lip. It is used for breathing, smelling, touching, and picking up things.

Toe



What's inside?

Elephants may look like they have flat feet, but they really walk on their tiptoes!

The heel rests on a fatty cushion.



This is one of the first four teeth.

The sixth, and last, set of teeth are bigger than bricks!



Always teething!

Other than tusks, elephants have only four teeth. These molars are replaced every few years. Bigger teeth appear at the back of the mouth and push out the old, worn teeth—like a conveyor belt of teeth!



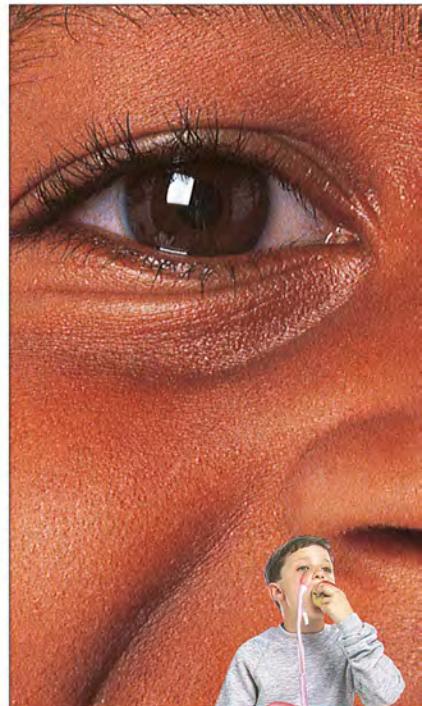
THE HUMAN BODY

Your body is one of the most amazing machines in the world. It is made up of thousands of parts all working together. Each group of parts is called a system. The body is so complicated that it is easier to imagine the different systems separately. But your digestive system, nervous system, skeleton, blood or circulatory system, and muscles all work together. You need all of them to stay alive.

When you are born, all you can do is sleep, eat, and cry. It takes time to discover how the parts of your body move and how to get them to work together. As you grow, you learn to do more difficult things, like crawling, walking, and riding a bicycle.



Human skull

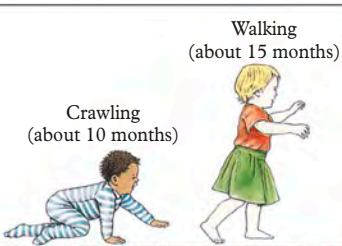


There are over 100 muscles in your face.



Digestive system

Crawling
(about 10 months)



Walking
(about 15 months)



Hopping
(about
4 years)



Skipping
(about
5 years)



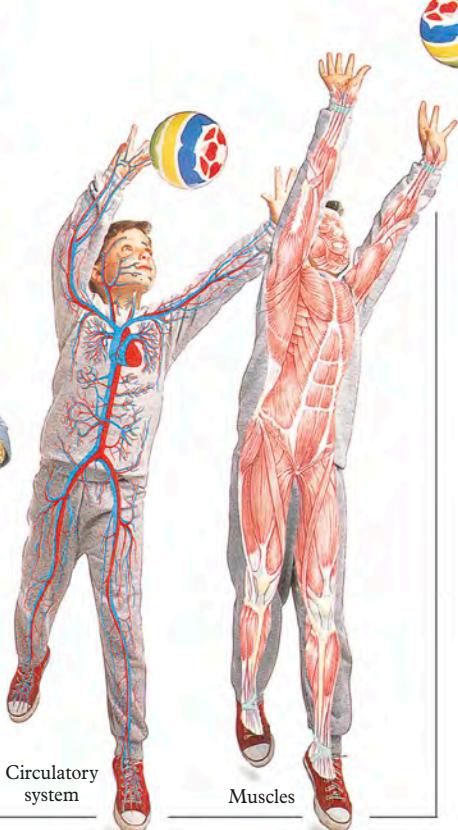
Riding a
two-wheeled bicycle
(about 5 years)



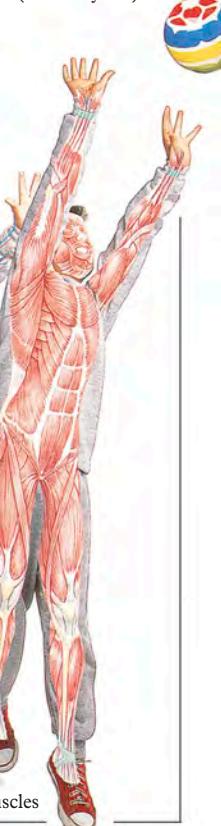
Nervous
system



Skeleton



Circulatory
system



Muscles



HEARING

"Canaphone"

A piece of string threaded through two empty cans works kind of like a telephone. If you speak into one can, the vibrations travel along the string to the other can—allowing your voice to be heard.

Hearing is one of your five senses. Your ears are important and delicate: they pick up sounds and send messages to your brain. Sounds travel through the air in waves. Your outer ears, the shell-shaped flaps on the side of your head, catch sound waves and funnel them inside. These waves hit the eardrum and make it vibrate. The middle ear and the inner ear change the vibrations into electrical signals, which are sorted out and recognized by your brain.

The outer ear collects the sounds and funnels them along the ear canal.

Crash!

The loudness of sound is measured in decibels. Quiet whispering is less than 25 decibels, the clash of cymbals about 90, and a jet plane taking off can measure more than 130 decibels. Noises over 120 decibels can cause pain and may damage your ears.



Talking in signs

If deaf people have never heard speech, they may not have learned to talk. To help them to communicate, many learn a special language called signing. There are many different forms of sign language used in different countries and regions. Deaf people also learn to spell using their hands, and to read lips by watching the shape of people's mouths as they speak.



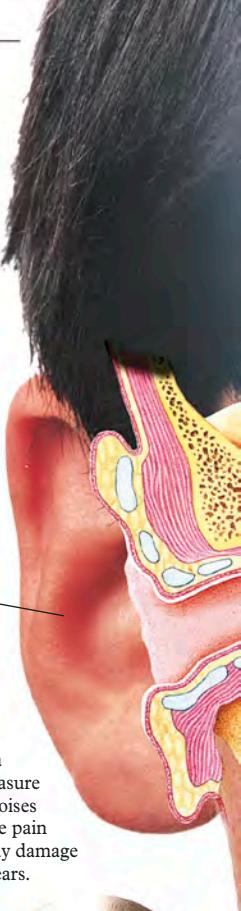
Kneel



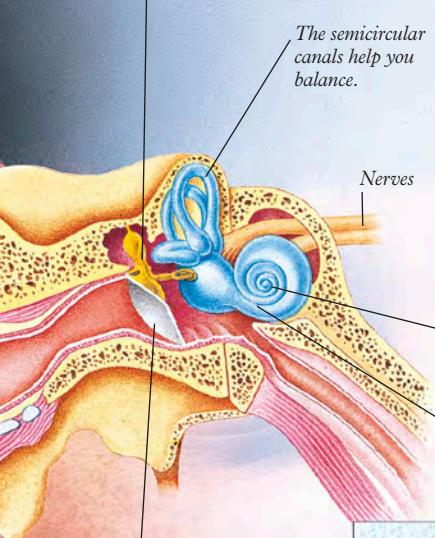
Hunger



Hope



Three tiny, connected bones in the middle ear—the hammer, anvil, and stirrup—pass sound vibrations from the eardrum to the cochlea.



The eardrum is a thin sheet of skin that vibrates when sound waves hit it—just like the skin on a drum.

The semicircular canals help you balance.

Nerves

Hello . . . hello!

If you shout in a large, empty space, the sound waves from your voice bounce off the nearest surface, back to your ears. This is called an echo. The farther a sound has to travel before it is reflected, the longer you must wait for the echo.



Nerve cells in the cochlea send messages about sounds to the brain.

The inner ear is made up of the cochlea and the semicircular canals. It is filled with liquid.



Visible and invisible ears

Not all animals hear the same way you do. Some do not have any ears on the outside of their body.

Elephants have huge ear flaps and good hearing.

Birds and lizards have good hearing but no ear flaps on the sides of their heads.

A rabbit can turn its ears to hear sounds all around it.





SEEING

Tear-full

Tears help to keep your eyes moist and clean. When too many are made, they cannot all drain away down your nose, so tears come out of your eyes.

Sight is perhaps the most important of your five senses. Your eyes work together with your brain to help you to see. The cornea, at the front of your eye, bends light. This light is then focused by the lens, to form an image of what you are looking at on the retina at the back of your eye. But the image is upside down! Nerve cells in the retina send messages to your brain, which sorts out the messages so that you see things the right way.

Tricky eyes

Sometimes your eyes play tricks on you, called optical illusions. Try these:

Which of these two girls is the taller?



Which red circle is bigger: the left one or the right one?

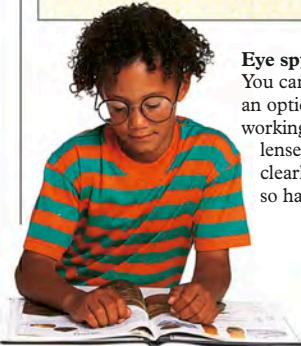


Which line is longer?



Double vision?

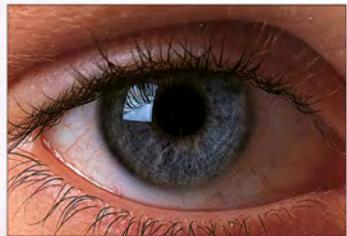
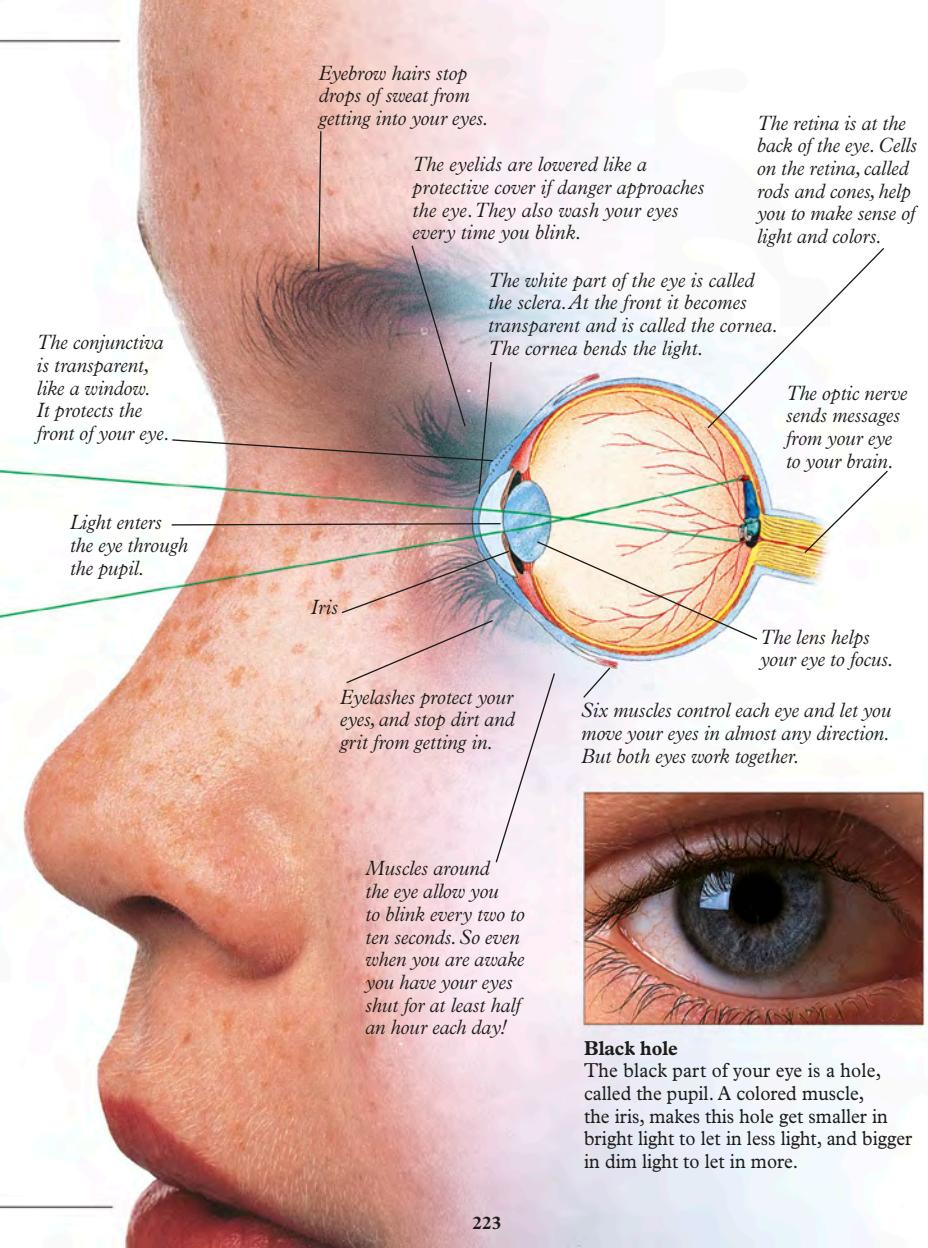
Because they are set apart, each of your eyes sees a slightly different picture. Your brain puts the two pictures together. This is called stereoscopic or binocular vision, and it means you can judge depth and distances. Try this: close one eye, point to something, and keep your finger still. Now look through the other eye. Are you still pointing to the same place?



Eye spy

You can have your eyes tested by an optician to make sure they are working properly. Glasses or contact lenses will help if you cannot see clearly. Your eyes are very important, so have them checked regularly!





Black hole

The black part of your eye is a hole, called the pupil. A colored muscle, the iris, makes this hole get smaller in bright light to let in less light, and bigger in dim light to let in more.



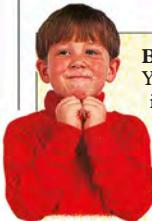
BRAIN



Inside your head, protected by a bony skull, is your brain. It looks crinkled like a walnut and is the control center for your entire body. Your heart pumps oxygen-filled blood into it through a mass of tubes, called arteries.

After only four minutes without oxygen, brain cells will die and they cannot be replaced. Your brain is very complex and is divided into many parts that have different functions. The largest and uppermost part in the human brain is called the cerebrum. It has two halves, called hemispheres. The outermost layer of the cerebrum also contains sections known as lobes, which control different activities and make sense of the information from your five senses.

The frontal lobe is the part of the brain where you do your big thinking. You use it when you make a decision or solve a problem. It also allows you to communicate with other people and express your own unique personality.



Brain control

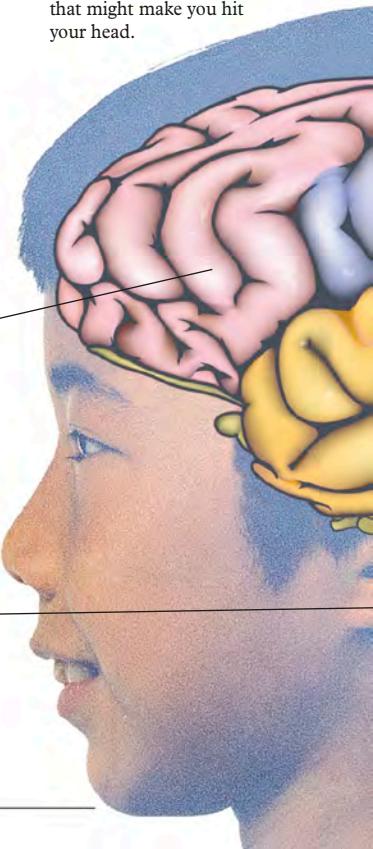
Your brain is the most important part of your body. It is your control center, but it is only a little bigger than your two fists!

Each part of your brain has a different job to do. Some parts send out signals to your body and some parts make sense of signals that come in.



Brain protection

To stop you from injuring your brain, you should wear a helmet whenever you take part in a sport that might make you hit your head.



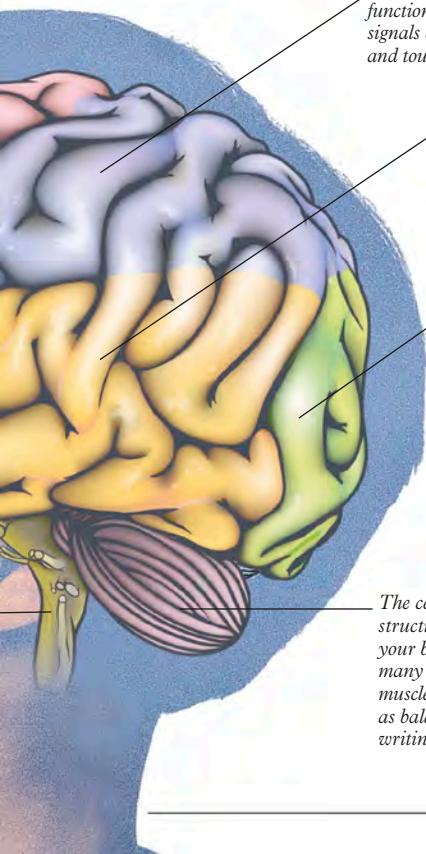
The brain stem controls many of your automatic actions, such as your heartbeat and breathing.





Kim's game

When we are learning, we depend on our memory to help us. Test your memory with this game. Set out a number of objects and look at them for a few moments. Ask a friend to remove an object, then try to tell what is missing.



The parietal lobe has many functions, such as processing signals associated with taste and touch.

The temporal lobe is connected with your sense of hearing. It helps you to understand sounds, including people talking.

The occipital lobe is connected with your sense of sight. It helps control eye movement, makes sense of what you see, and allows you to remember things that you've seen before.

The cerebellum is a structure at the base of your brain. It controls many of your voluntary muscle movements, such as balancing, walking, writing, and speaking.

Different brains

Animals have brains of various shapes and sizes, suited to the things they do.



Fish



Bird



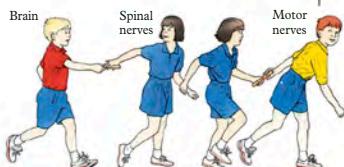
Cat



Human

Brain relay

When you want to touch something, a signal is passed from your brain to other parts of your body like a baton in a relay race. It goes first to the spinal nerves then to the motor nerves, which tell muscles to move.





NERVES



Nerves are like telephone wires carrying information between the brain and all parts of the body. One set of nerves—the sensory nerves—carries signals to your brain from your senses, telling your brain what is happening around you. When your brain has decided what to do, it sends signals along another set of nerves—the motor nerves—to make your muscles work.

Nerve network

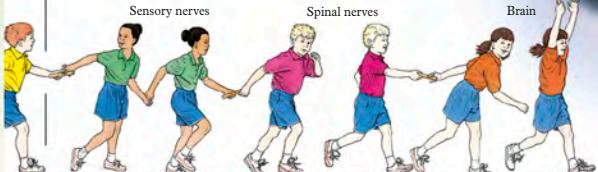


Reading by touch

Blind people cannot see to read, so they learn a special alphabet of raised dots, called braille. They feel these dots with their fingertips.

Get the message?

Messages about how objects feel are sent through the sensory nerves and the spinal nerves to the brain to be understood.



Speedy reflex

If someone claps their hands by your face, your brain thinks something is flying toward your eyes and they blink. This blink is a reflex action to protect them.

With your eyes covered, can you tell it is a teddy bear?

What's on the "feely table?"

The sense of touch is very important. It is one of your five senses. Receptor cells under your skin send messages, through sensory nerves, to your brain about what your fingers are feeling.

A bottle feels hard and smooth.



If you touch some honey, your fingers will feel that it is sticky.



Ice is cold and slippery. When it starts to melt it feels wet.



Skin sense

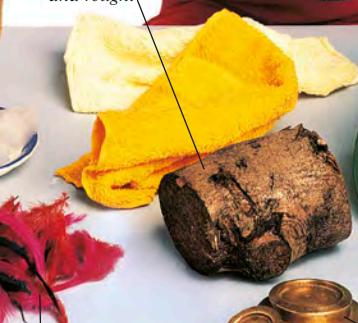
Find out which part of your skin is most sensitive with this test. Close your eyes and ask a friend to touch different parts of your body with the points of two pencils. Try this test on your fingertips and on your knee to see which parts feel two points and which feel only one.



Blindfold



The wood feels hard and rough.



Feathers are very light and soft. They can sometimes tickle, especially if you stroke your face gently with them.

Your fingers can tell if something is soft. It feels good to use towels made of soft material.

Hot things are good to feel when you are cold—but if something is too hot your nerves will send messages to make your hand move away quickly.

Even when you are blindfolded, you can feel that this smooth, round object is a ball.



The bristles on this brush are sharp and prickly.



Your eyes tell your brain that something may be heavy. Your muscles are then prepared to lift a heavy weight. If you cannot see the weight, you may be surprised when you try to lift it!

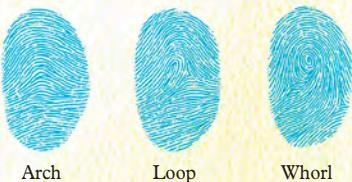


SKIN

If you could unwrap your skin, you might be surprised at how much you have—enough to cover a large towel. It goes over all your bumps and curves, and into every crease of your body. Your skin grows with you, so that when you are an adult it will cover an area of about 5.6 square feet (1.7 square meters). It is waterproof and protective, and can heal itself if it gets damaged.

Personal prints

Fingerprints are patterns of lines and swirls on your fingers. Try printing yours using paint or ink! Everyone has different fingerprints, so they are used to identify people. There are three basic patterns.



Arch Loop Whorl

A fingernail takes about six months to grow from base to tip. It grows about 0.02 inches (half a millimeter) a week.

Nails are made of dead cells which contain a protein called keratin.

The cuticle is the fold of skin overlapping the nail bed from where the nail grows.

The half moon at the base of your nail looks white because this part is not firmly attached to the skin below.

New skin grows all the time to replace old skin that rubs off. Most house dust is really old, dead skin!

The thinnest skin is on your eyelids.

Hairs grow on every part of your skin except for your lips, the palms of your hands, and the soles of your feet.

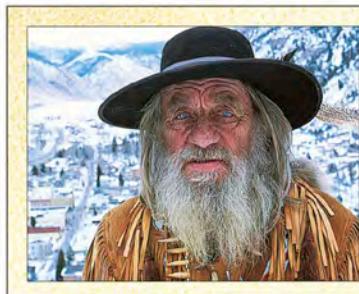


Shades

All skin contains a coloring substance called melanin. Dark skin contains more melanin than fair skin. As a protection from burning by the sun, the skin produces more melanin, which tans the skin a darker color.



The roots of your hair are alive and grow about 0.08 inches (two millimeters) a week. When the hairs reach the surface of your skin they die—so having your hair cut does not hurt!



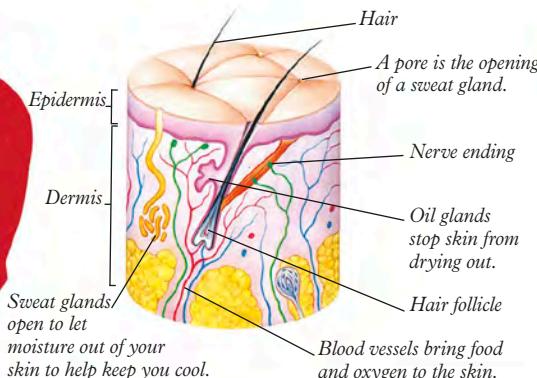
Growing old

Your skin is elastic. If you pinch the back of your hand and then release it, the skin goes back to its original place. As people get older their skin becomes less elastic and often gets wrinkled. Some people's hair turns gray because it stops making melanin.



Dead or alive?

Your skin has two layers. The dead, outer layer, called the epidermis, protects the living dermis underneath.



Hair styles

How straight or curly a hair is depends upon the shape of the pocket, or follicle, it grows from. The color of your hair depends upon the amount of black or red melanin there is inside these pockets.



BLOOD

Blood is pumped all around your body by your heart. It travels in long tubes called blood vessels. Before it begins this journey, it is pushed to your lungs to collect oxygen. Then it returns to your heart to be pumped around your body.

Blood also carries nutrients from your food to the cells.

Power pump

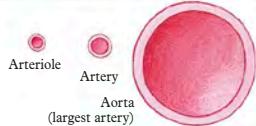
Your heart is made of strong muscle. In just one minute, it can pump a drop of blood all the way down to your toes and back to your heart again.

The heart is divided into four spaces called chambers, two at the top and two at the bottom. There is a wall of muscle down the middle.

Blood enters the top right chamber through the vena cava. It passes down to the bottom right chamber. Then it is pushed out to your lungs.

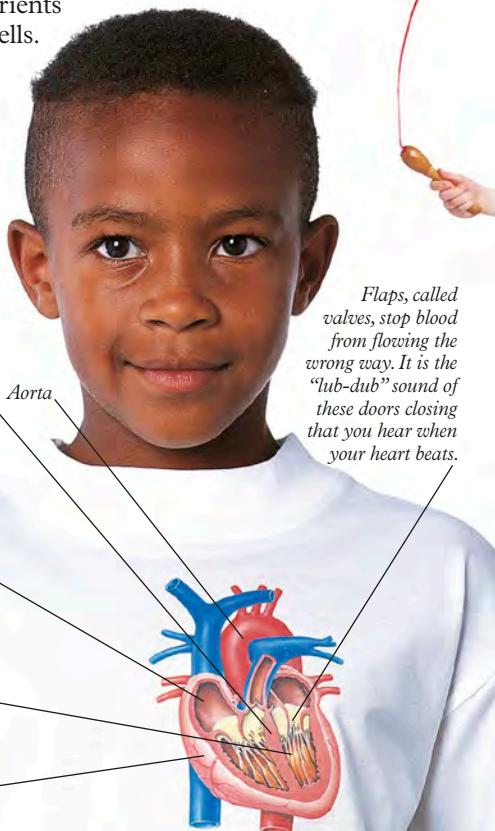
Blood, filled with oxygen from the lungs, comes into the top left chamber. It passes down to the bottom left chamber. Then it is pumped around your body.

After going around your body, the blood returns to the right side of your heart, to start the journey again.

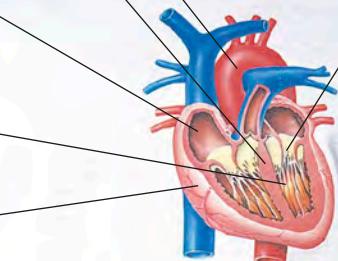


There ...

Blood vessels that take blood away from your heart are called arteries.



Flaps, called valves, stop blood from flowing the wrong way. It is the "lub-dub" sound of these doors closing that you hear when your heart beats.





Vena cava
(largest vein)

... and back

Those that take blood back to your heart are called veins.



Feeling the pressure
You can feel the beat of your heart as it pumps blood, at high pressure, through your arteries. This beat is called the pulse.

Put the fingers of one hand on the inside of your other wrist, in line with your thumb. You can feel your pulse beating there.

You can only hear a heartbeat by using a stethoscope or by putting your ear to a friend's chest.



Heart work

When you skip, or do any kind of exercise, your muscles need extra oxygen and food from your blood. To provide this, your heart has to pump faster.

You have nearly one gallon (about four liters) of blood in your body. An adult has more and a baby has less.

A drop of blood goes around your body more than a thousand times a day. Every five minutes all your blood passes through your kidneys to be cleaned.

Super cells

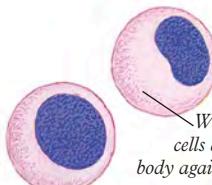
In one tiny drop of blood there are red cells, white cells, and platelets, all floating in a liquid called plasma. The blood in your arteries is carrying more oxygen, which makes it a brighter red color than the blood in your veins.



Side view of a red blood cell



Red cells carry oxygen around the body. They are made in the bone marrow.



White blood cells defend the body against germs.

If you cut yourself, platelets rush to the broken blood vessel and stick themselves together to plug the cut.





BREATHING

Lung capacity

Breathe in deeply. Blow into a balloon until you run out of breath. Tie a knot in the balloon. Now you can see just how much air your lungs are able to hold.

You must breathe all the time to stay alive. If you try to hold your breath for more than about a minute, your body will force you to start breathing again. The air that you breathe is made up of many different gases mixed together, but your body only needs one of them, oxygen, to keep you alive. If you ran out of oxygen, even for a very short time, you would die. The air you breathe goes into two soft, moist sponges, called lungs. You have one on each side of your chest.



Bad breath!

The air that you breathe can contain things that are bad for you. This woman is wearing a mask to protect herself from car fumes.

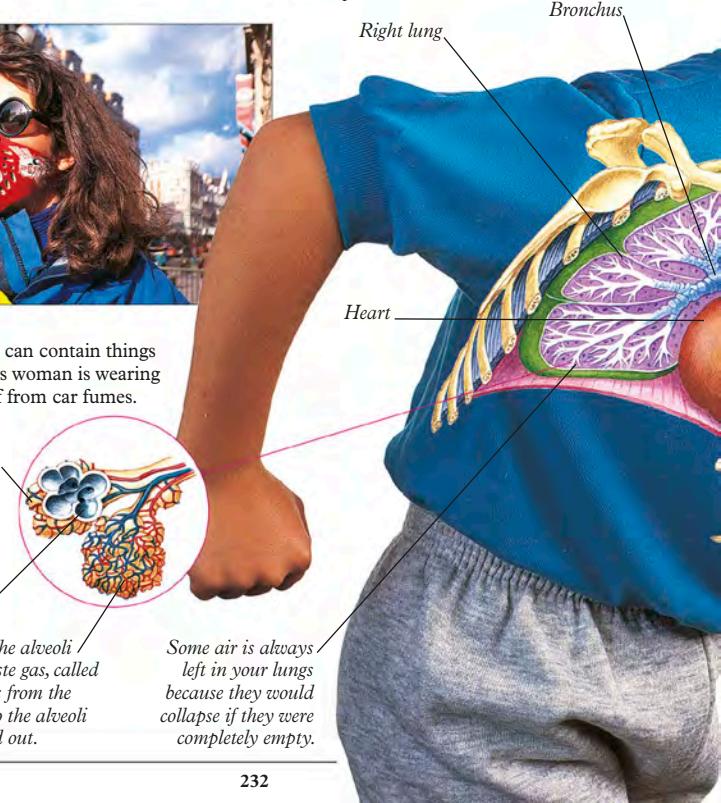
Blood vessels surround the alveoli.

Alveoli are stretchy, so they can blow up like balloons. Gases can pass right through the alveoli's stretched skin.



Oxygen seeps from the alveoli into the blood. A waste gas, called carbon dioxide, seeps from the blood back into the alveoli to be breathed out.

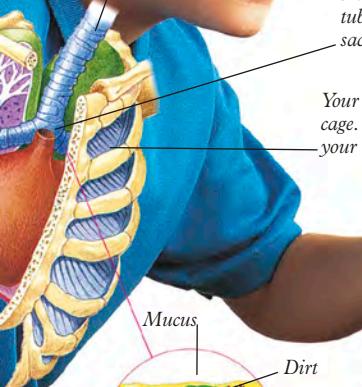
Some air is always left in your lungs because they would collapse if they were completely empty.



You breathe air in through a tube called the windpipe, or trachea.



Air enters the lungs through two large tubes called the bronchi. Each bronchus divides into smaller and smaller tubes ending in tiny sacs called alveoli.



Your ribs form a cage. They protect your lungs.



Mucus

Dirt

Tiny "hairs" trap dirt.

Special cells

Little "brushes" help to push dirt out of your body.

Hot air

The air that you breathe out is warm and has water in it.



You can see this if you breathe onto a mirror. The water in your breath cools down and forms a mist as it hits the cold mirror. If you touch the mirror you can feel the moisture. You can also see the water misting up when you breathe out on a cold day.



Breathe in

A powerful muscle called the diaphragm helps you breathe air into both your lungs. When this muscle is pulled tight, it moves downward, leaving more space for the lungs. As the lungs spread out to fill this larger space, they suck in air.

Breathe out

When your diaphragm relaxes, it moves back up again and squashes your lungs. There is no longer enough space in your lungs for all the air, so it is squeezed up your windpipe and out of your nose or mouth.

Sneezing

A sudden rush of built-up air blows dust or germs from your nose.



Coughing

Dust or germs in the tubes of your lungs are forced out quickly.



Laughing

The diaphragm jerks, forcing air up through your voice box and windpipe.



TASTE AND SMELL



Your senses of taste and smell are very closely linked. They depend on each other. Tiny dimples on your tongue, and hairs at the top of the inside of your nose, detect chemicals that cause tastes and smells. Special sensory cells then send messages through to your brain to be recognized. Your sense of smell is twenty thousand times stronger than your sense of taste! Often what you think you are tasting you are really just smelling.



Nice and not so nice
You are able to distinguish several thousand different smells. The clean smell of the countryside can be lovely, but the smell of milk that has spoiled is horrible. Bad smells can warn you not to drink or eat things that are not fresh.

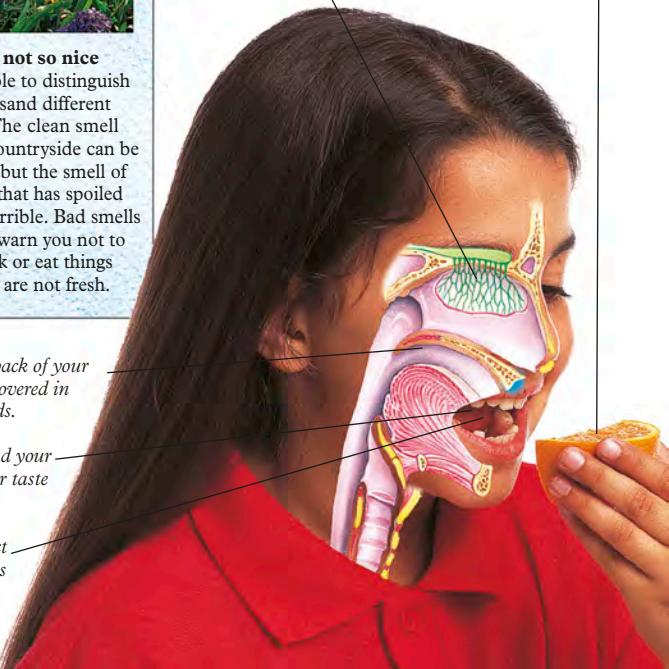
When you want to smell something, you have to suck air right up to the top of your nose to reach your smell sense cells.

The smell of tasty food automatically makes you produce saliva.

The roof of your mouth, the back of your throat, and your tongue are covered in small dimples called taste buds.

As the food is pushed around your mouth by your tongue, your taste buds pick up its taste.

Taste buds can only detect the flavors of food that has been dissolved in saliva.



Trick your taste buds

When you eat something, your sense of smell helps you to get the flavor. Block your nose and taste carrot and cucumber. It is hard to tell the difference between them. If you hold a piece of onion under someone's nose and give them mashed apple to eat, they think they are eating onion. This is why you cannot taste your food properly when you have a cold.



Honey
is sweet.



Five tastes

You have around 20,000 taste buds on your tongue, which pick up five different types of taste: salty, sweet, bitter, sour, and umami (savory).



Kippers
are salty.



Coffee grains
are bitter.



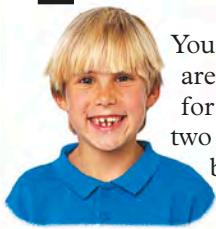
Busy buds

If you look at a tongue through a strong magnifying glass you can see lots of bumps. Around the base of these bumps there are taste buds. Inside them there are special cells that sense taste.





TEETH



Gappy grin

Children are left with gaps where their baby teeth have fallen out and they are waiting for their adult teeth to come through.

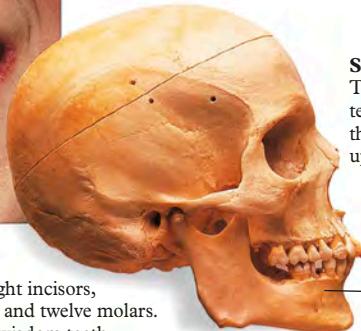
You use your teeth to break food into pieces that are small enough to swallow. Some teeth are shaped for biting and others for chewing. You have two sets of teeth. The first set are called baby teeth, and there are 20 of them. At the age of about six, you start to lose your baby teeth. One by one, the second set, the 32 adult teeth, grow in their place. Teeth are strong and keep working for many years.



Cases for braces

Sometimes teeth grow crookedly or become overcrowded in the mouth. Often this can be corrected by wearing braces.

Healthy gums are just as important as healthy teeth—they help to hold your teeth in place.



Still rooted

This skull shows how teeth are rooted firmly in the strong bone of the upper and lower jaws.

Complete set

A full set of adult teeth has eight incisors, four canines, eight premolars, and twelve molars. Four of the molars are called wisdom teeth.



Incisors



Canine



Premolar

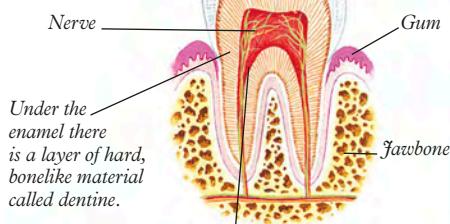


Molars

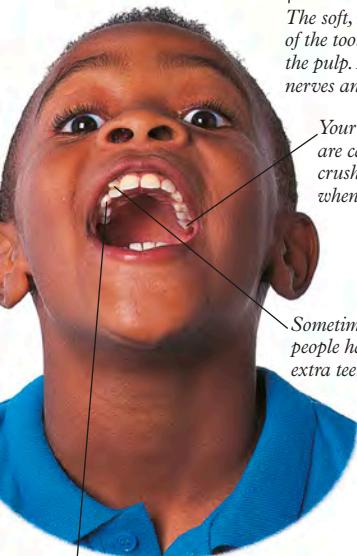


Inside story

Your teeth are alive. The part that sticks out from your gum is the crown. The part under the gum is the root.



Enamel is the hardest substance your body makes. A thin layer of it covers all your teeth.

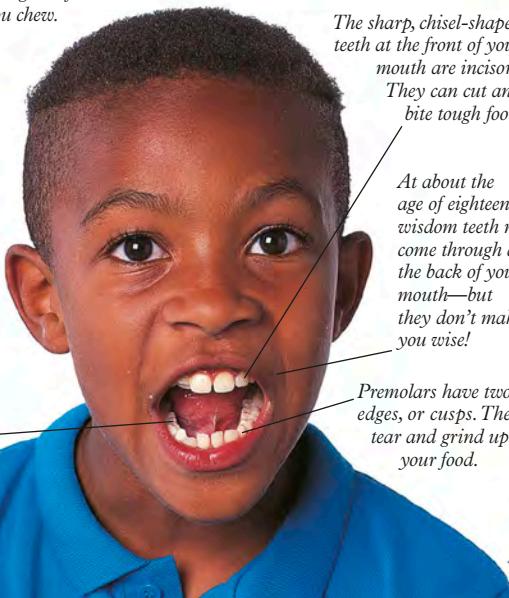


Canine teeth are sharp and pointed. They are used for tearing food.

There are molars on the bottom, too.

Your bumpy back teeth are called molars. They crush and grind food when you chew.

Sometimes people have extra teeth.



At about the age of eighteen, wisdom teeth may come through at the back of your mouth—but they don't make you wise!

Premolars have two edges, or cusps. They tear and grind up your food.

The sharp, chisel-shaped teeth at the front of your mouth are incisors. They can cut and bite tough food.



Brushing up

If you don't keep your teeth clean, bacteria build up to form a layer called plaque. If plaque builds up on your teeth, it can cause them to decay and even fall out. Brushing your teeth and gums after meals and before going to bed helps to remove the sugary foods that the bacteria use to grow.





EATING

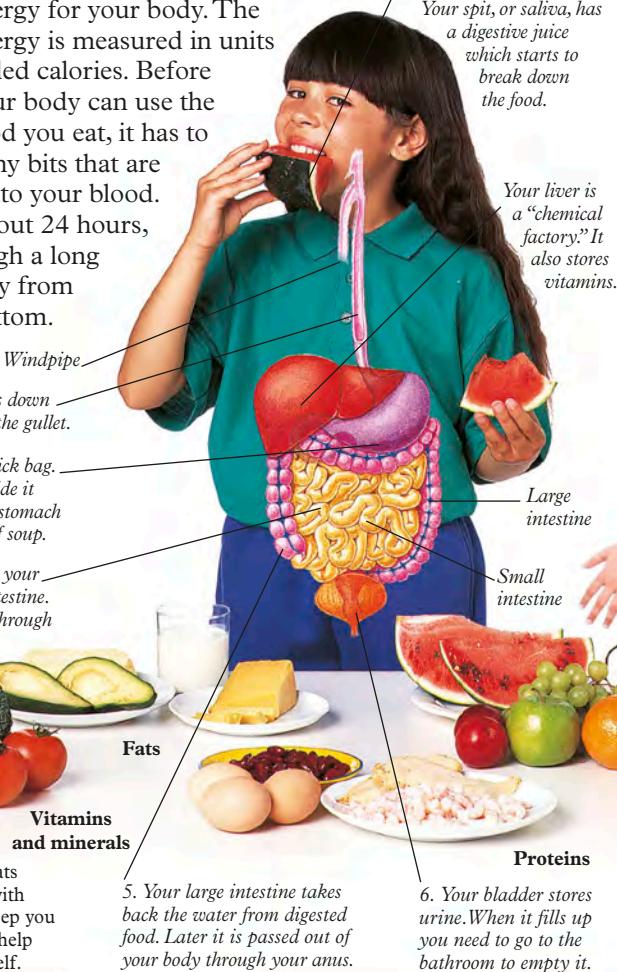
In and out

The inside wall of the small intestine has a very bumpy surface.

Food is the fuel that provides energy for your body. The energy is measured in units called calories. Before your body can use the food you eat, it has to be broken down into tiny bits that are small enough to pass into your blood. This digestion takes about 24 hours, as the food flows through a long tube winding all the way from your mouth to your bottom.

1. Food starts being digested in your mouth. Your spit, or saliva, has a digestive juice which starts to break down the food.

Your liver is a "chemical factory." It also stores vitamins.



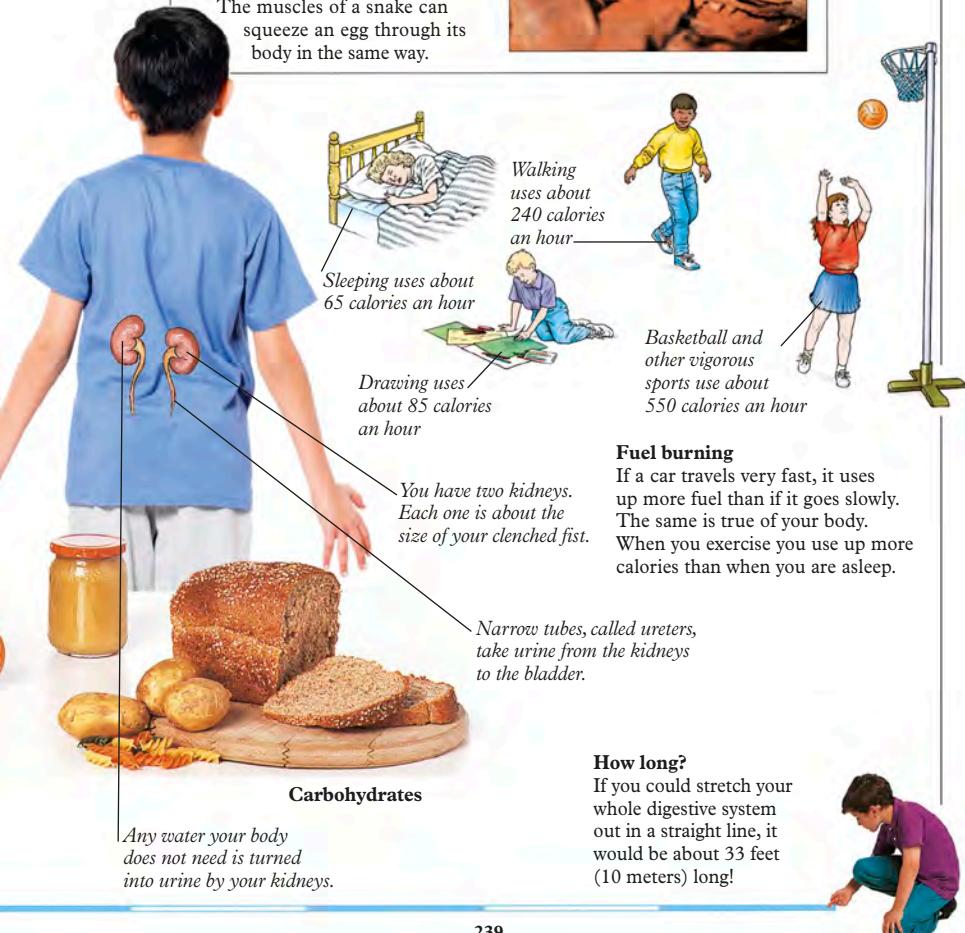
Get into groups!

Foods can be put into groups. Fats and carbohydrates provide you with energy. Vitamins and minerals keep you healthy. Proteins build cells and help your body to grow and repair itself.

A lump in the throat

You can swallow even if you are standing on your head! This is because your food does not slide down through you—it is squeezed along by muscles in your digestive tube. This is called peristalsis and it happens all the time, without you having to think about it.

The muscles of a snake can squeeze an egg through its body in the same way.



Carbohydrates

Any water your body does not need is turned into urine by your kidneys.

You have two kidneys. Each one is about the size of your clenched fist.

Sleeping uses about 65 calories an hour

Walking uses about 240 calories an hour

Drawing uses about 85 calories an hour

Basketball and other vigorous sports use about 550 calories an hour

Narrow tubes, called ureters, take urine from the kidneys to the bladder.

Fuel burning

If a car travels very fast, it uses up more fuel than if it goes slowly. The same is true of your body. When you exercise you use up more calories than when you are asleep.

How long?

If you could stretch your whole digestive system out in a straight line, it would be about 33 feet (10 meters) long!

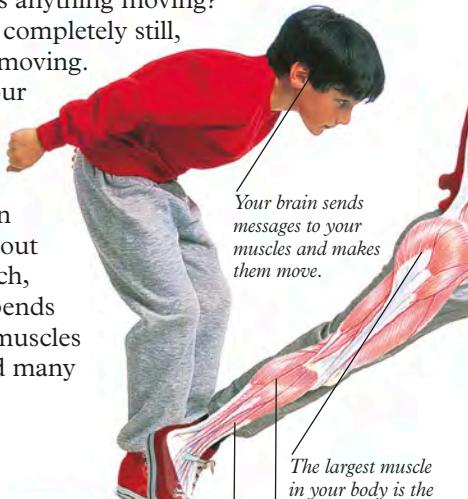
239



MUSCLES

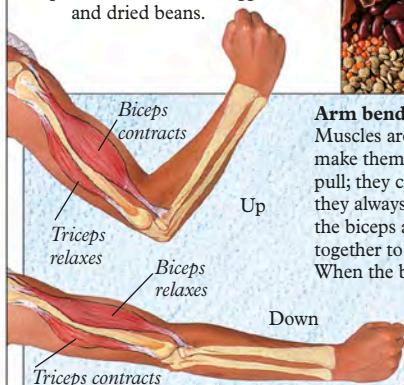
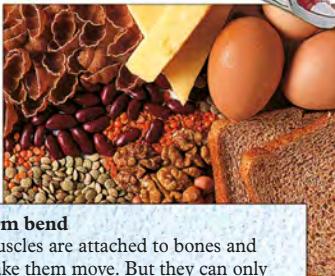
Try to sit as still as you can. Is anything moving? Even when you think you are completely still, many parts of your body are moving.

Your heart is beating and your intestines and lungs are working. All these movements are made by muscles. You have more than 600 muscles spread throughout your body. Every bend, stretch, twist, and turn you make depends on them. You use about 200 muscles each time you take a step, and many more when you jump.



Muscle food

To keep your muscles working properly you need a diet that includes protein. Foods that are full of protein include meat, eggs, cheese, and dried beans.



Arm bend

Muscles are attached to bones and make them move. But they can only pull; they cannot push—which is why they always work in pairs. In your arm, the biceps and triceps muscles work together to move it up and down. When the biceps pulls, or contracts, it gets shorter and fatter and bends the arm. As the biceps pulls, the triceps muscle relaxes.

The largest muscle in your body is the *gluteus maximus* muscle in your thigh and bottom.

If you stand on tiptoe, you can see your calf muscles in the back of your leg.

Before you begin to make any strenuous movements, you should always warm up your muscles by doing gentle warm-up and stretching exercises.



Holding hands

The muscles in your hands allow you to make delicate, accurate, or powerful movements. Your flexible fingers are attached to many small muscles which are useful for precise jobs. Your fingers and thumb work together to let you hold things tightly. Your hands are strong enough to support your entire body if you hang from a bar.

Cheeky!

Your tongue is a group of strong muscles which help you to eat and speak—and also to lick your lips . . .



or your chin . . .



or your nose . . .



or your cheek!

Tendons are the tough cords that join the muscle firmly to the bone. You can feel one of them, called the Achilles tendon, in the back of your ankle.

Some of your arm muscles are attached to bones in your back. This strong anchor enables you to pick up heavier things.

It takes about 15 muscles to smile!

You learned how to control your bladder muscles as you grew older.

The muscles in your intestines are pushing food along all the time.



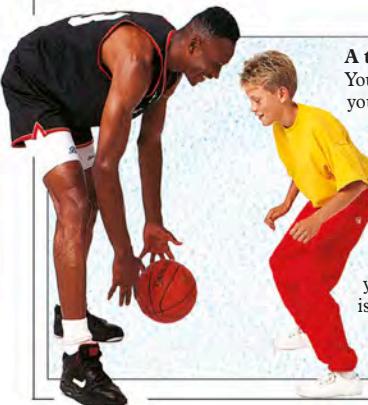


SKELETON

Without a frame to support your body you would collapse, lose your shape, and be unable to move. Your body's frame is called a skeleton. It gives your body strength and it protects the soft parts inside. Your skeleton is made up of more than 200 bones. They are light enough to allow you to move around easily, and they have joints so that you can bend your body to do many things.

You have twelve pairs of ribs. They are all joined to a row of bones in your back called your spine.

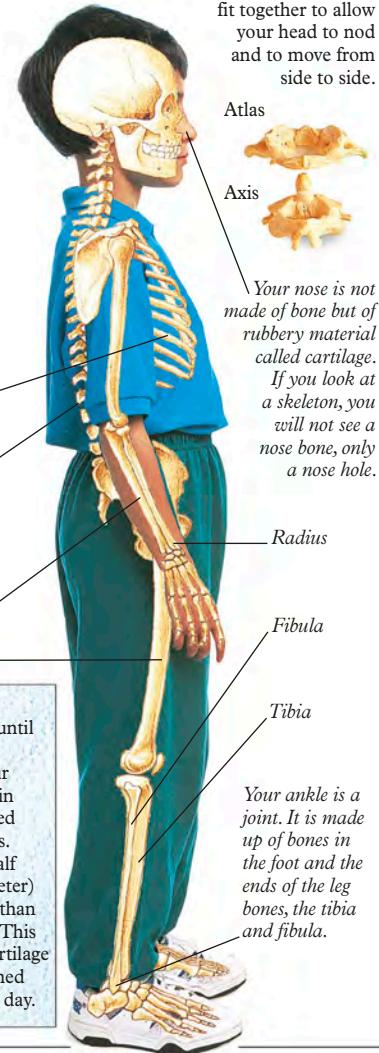
From the side, your spine looks curved, like the letter S. It helps you to stand up straight.



A tall order

Your bones keep growing until you are in your early 20s.

You cannot change your height—it is decided in your genes and passed on from your parents. But you are about half an inch (one centimeter) shorter in the evening than you are in the morning! This is because the pads of cartilage in your spine get squashed as you walk around all day.



Yes and no bones

The bones of your spine are called vertebrae. The top two vertebrae, the atlas and axis, fit together to allow your head to nod and to move from side to side.

Atlas



Your nose is not made of bone but of rubbery material called cartilage. If you look at a skeleton, you will not see a nose bone, only a nose hole.

Radius

Ulna

Fibula

Femur

Tibia

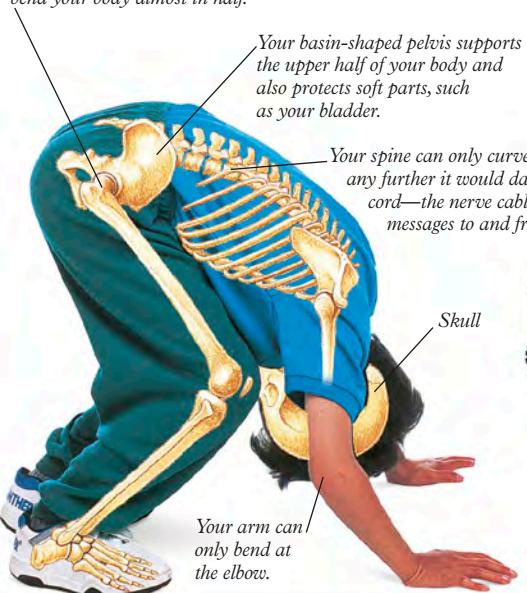
Your ankle is a joint. It is made up of bones in the foot and the ends of the leg bones, the tibia and fibula.

Soft center

Some animals, such as this crab, do not have a skeleton inside them. Instead, they have a hard outer covering, called an exoskeleton.



Your hip joint is where the end of the thigh bone, or femur, fits into a socket in your pelvis. This joint helps you to bend your body almost in half.

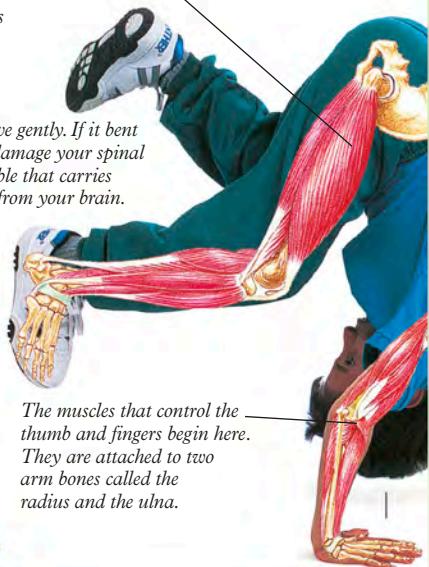


Inside information

Your bones are all hidden inside your body. So if doctors want to look at them, they have to take special photographs, called X-rays. The X-ray camera can see straight through your skin and show what the bones look like. On this X-ray of a hand, you can see that the bone connected to the little finger is broken.



Bones give muscles a place to hang on to, but without these muscles, the bones would not be able to move. Muscle power is transferred to the bones along strong bands called tendons.



BONES

Your bones are hard and strong. They are not solid though, so they are not as heavy as you would think. In fact, they only make up 14 percent of your total body weight—they are lighter than your muscles. Bones are not dead and dry. They are living, and can repair themselves if they break. Your body is made up of lots of bones all working together and linked by joints. If you had no knee joints, you would have to walk with stiff legs.

What's inside a bone?

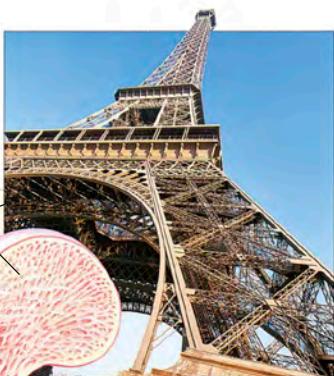
The outer part of all your bones is hard and tough, but the inside of many of them is spongy.

These lightweight, soft centers are crisscrossed by small struts which make your bones strong, but not too heavy. This idea of strength without weight is copied in buildings such as the Eiffel Tower.

The spongy inner bone looks like a honeycomb.

Blood vessels take oxygen and food to bone cells.

Crisscross
struts

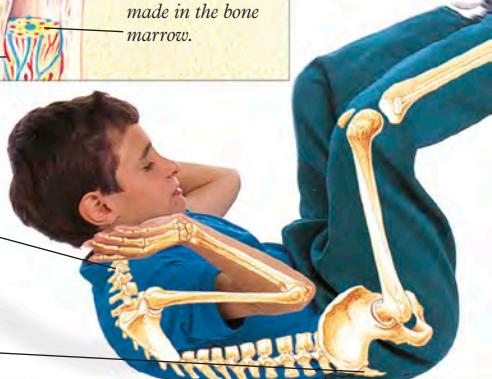


Some bones are filled with jellylike marrow. Platelets and red and white blood cells are made in the bone marrow.

Your two feet contain one quarter of the bones in your whole body!

Your neck is much shorter than a giraffe's, but it has the same number of vertebrae!

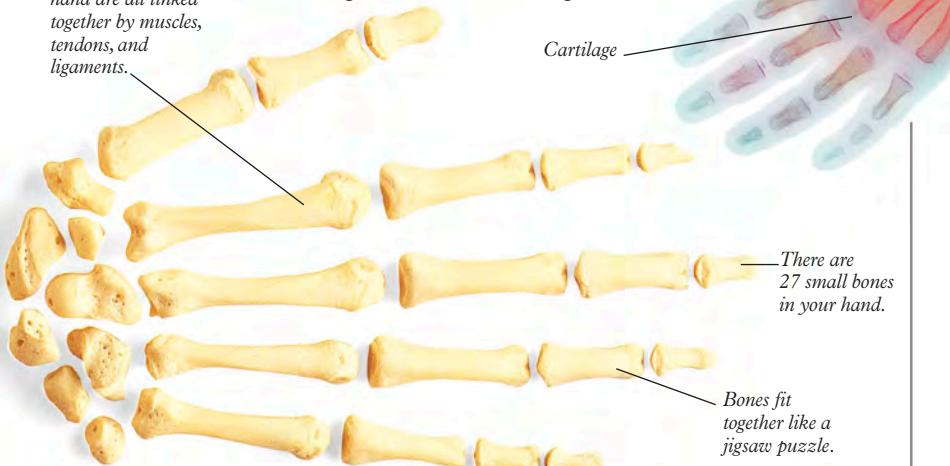
The tiny tailbones at the end of your spine, called the coccyx, help to support your body when you sit down.



Baby bones

Newborn babies have soft bones. Their bones are mostly made of cartilage, a tough, rubbery material that gradually becomes hard. In this X-ray of a child's hand, you can see the areas of cartilage where, later, bones will grow.

The bones in your hand are all linked together by muscles, tendons, and ligaments.



Bone work

You have three kinds of bones—long bones such as those in your legs, short bones such as those in your hand and spine, and flat bones such as your shoulder and skull. Bones are linked by different kinds of joints, which allow them to move in different ways.



The shoulder has a ball-and-socket joint. The round end of one bone fits into a cup-shaped hole in the other. Your shoulder can move in a complete circle.



Your thumb is special. It has a saddle joint in it which allows you to move your thumb in two directions.



You have flat gliding joints in your foot.



Your kneecap, or patella, protects your knee.



Your knee joint, like your elbow, is a hinge joint. The end of one bone fits into a sort of hollow in the other. This kind of joint will only bend in one direction.



WHERE DO I COME FROM?

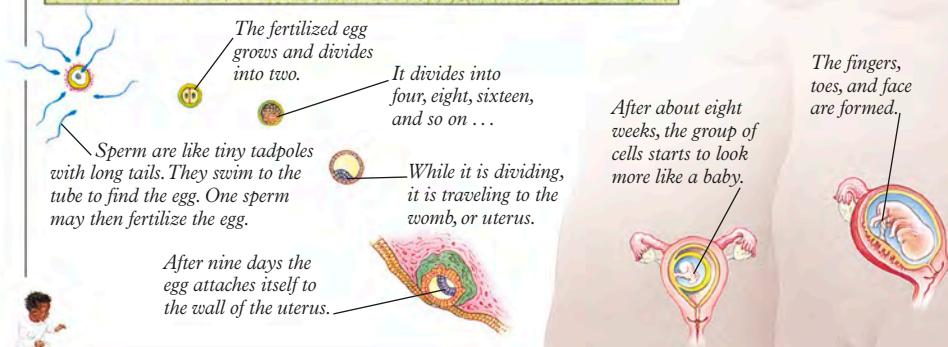


You began your life as an egg, which was only about the size of this period.

This tiny fertilized egg grew for about nine months inside your mother before you were born. While a baby is growing, it relies on the mother for everything, and although a baby cannot do very much when it is first born, already it is a complete and very special person.

The beginning

Everyone is made up of billions of living units, called cells. A baby starts when an egg cell from a woman and a sperm cell from a man join together to make one new cell. For the egg and sperm to meet, the man and woman must have sexual intercourse. This is sometimes called making love because the man and woman treat each other lovingly. The man's penis gets firm and he puts it into the woman's vagina. The penis releases a mixture called semen, which has sperm in it, to join the egg.





An ear to touch

After 19 weeks the baby, or fetus, is properly formed, but it could not yet live outside the mother's body. It is growing very fast and is moving around a lot inside the mother.

The baby grows inside a warm, safe bag which is full of watery liquid. There is not much room so it curls up.

After forty weeks the baby is ready to be born. When a mother is having her baby it is called labor because it is very hard work.

The baby usually comes out head first. The muscles of the uterus help to push it out.

Nutrients and oxygen travel from the mother to the baby through a mass of blood vessels, called the placenta.



A special tube, called the umbilical cord, links the placenta to the baby's tummy.







CHAPTER 3

OUR WORLD

Early people hunted animals and gathered wild plants for food. Later, they learned to farm, growing crops and keeping animals so they had a more regular supply of food.

Today, most of the food in stores and supermarkets still comes from farms—meat and dairy products, grains and rice, fruit and vegetables. However, machines now do most of the work, and special chemicals kill pests and help crops to grow.

As their lives became more settled, our ancestors gathered into communities and their forms of entertainment changed. Singing, dancing, and drawing branched out over time into plays, and, much later, films, and television.

Today, whether they live on high mountains, in dry deserts, or in swampy marshlands, all men and women have to feed, clothe, and house themselves. But from country to country, people do these things in an enormous variety of ways.

People in the Past Arts and Entertainment Food and Farming People and Places



PEOPLE IN THE PAST

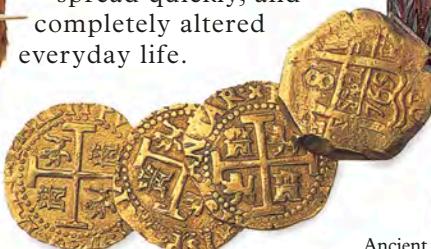
The lives of men and women who lived a long time ago were very different from ours. The first people made their homes in caves and had to kill their food or find it growing wild. For a long time, no one could read or write, so information and stories had to be learned by heart so they could be passed on.

Changes in the way people lived came gradually, when travelers—traders, or soldiers who went to war in foreign lands—took new ways of doing things, new foods, or new materials from one place to another. Sometimes, changes were particularly important, like the invention of the wheel or the printing press.

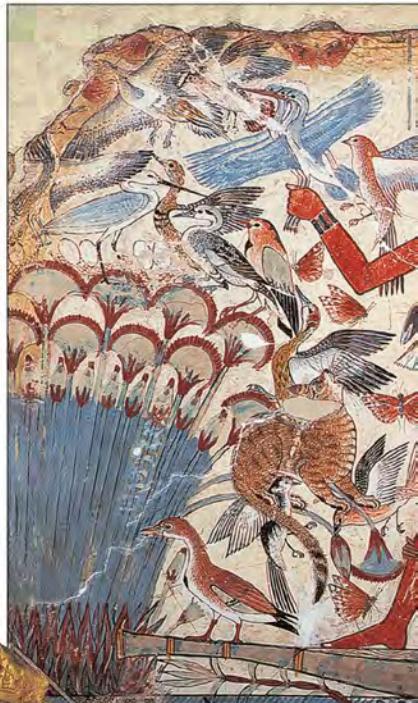
These changes tended to spread quickly, and completely altered everyday life.



Viking warrior



18th-century gold doubloons



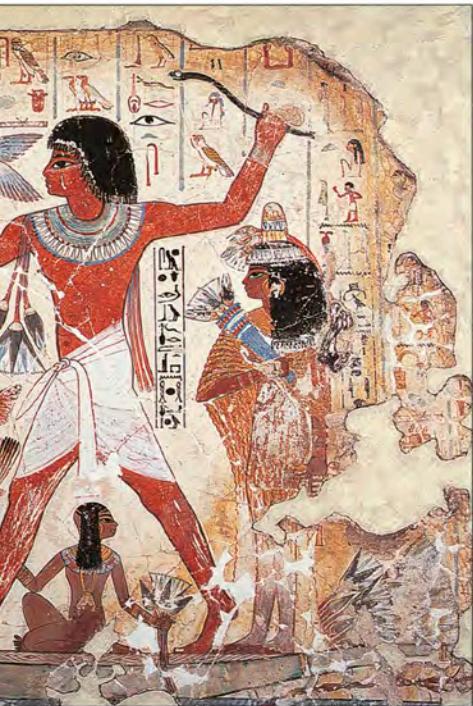
Ancient Peruvian pot



Pottery beaker
c. 2200 BCE

19th-century
Russian
cossack
pistol

17th-century samurai sword



Egyptian wall painting c. 1400 BCE

Ancient
Egyptian
reed pens

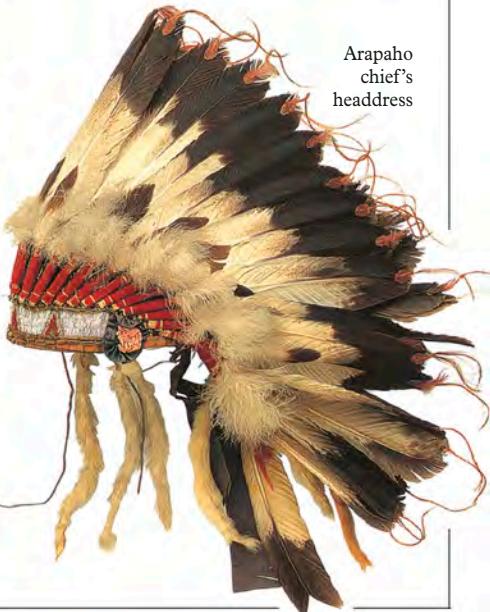


Beaded
Blackfoot
moccasins



Illuminated manuscript

Arapaho
chief's
headdress

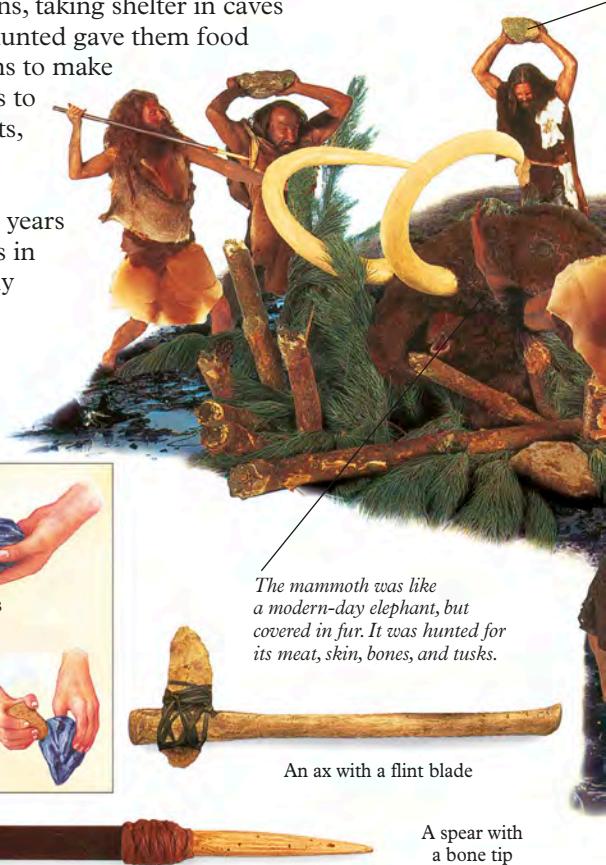




HUNTERS AND GATHERERS

The earliest people lived by hunting and gathering to find their food—meat, fish, vegetables, and fruit. They moved with the seasons, taking shelter in caves or tents. The animals they hunted gave them food to eat, fat to fuel lamps, skins to make tents and clothes, and bones to make weapons, tent supports, jewelry, and toys.

Some European hunter-gatherers, who lived 35,000 years ago, painted animal pictures in caves. We don't know exactly why they did this, but cave painting may have been part of a ritual or a kind of magic.

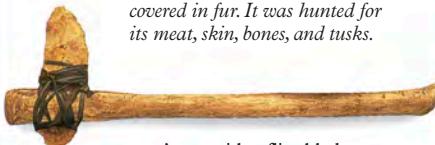


Making flint tools

Flint was a stone that was easy to work and could be given a sharp edge. Hunter-gatherers used it to make tools and weapons. A pebble or bone hammer was used to strike long flakes of flint from the main stone. The flakes were shaped and then the edges were chipped to make them razor sharp.



The mammoth was like a modern-day elephant, but covered in fur. It was hunted for its meat, skin, bones, and tusks.



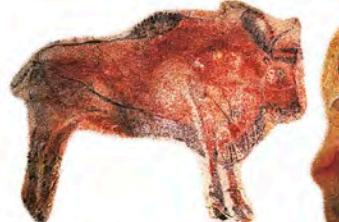
An ax with a flint blade



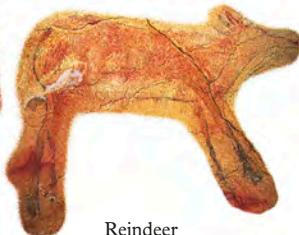
A spear with a bone tip

Animal magic

Beautiful pictures of the animals hunted by these people were painted on the walls and ceilings of caves in southwest France and in parts of northern Spain.



Bison



Reindeer



The hunters hurled heavy stones at their prey.

The spears used for hunting were often made from a flint or bone arrowhead tied onto a wooden shaft.

The hunters wore clothes made from animal skins.



Unusual decoration
Teeth and bones from animals were made into pieces of jewelry, such as this necklace.



First fashion

Animal skins were used to make clothes. First the skins were pegged down and then scraped to clean them and make them soft. Next the skins were cut to shape. The pieces were sewn together using needles made from animal bone and long, thin strips of hide.



Skin scrapers



A thong made from animal hide



A knife used to cut animal hide





THE EARLY FARMERS

About 12,000 years ago, there was an important change in the way people lived. People in parts of western Asia began to settle in one place and farm the land. They learned how to grow crops for food, and how to tame wild animals so they had a regular supply of meat. This new way of life was so successful that it soon spread far and wide.

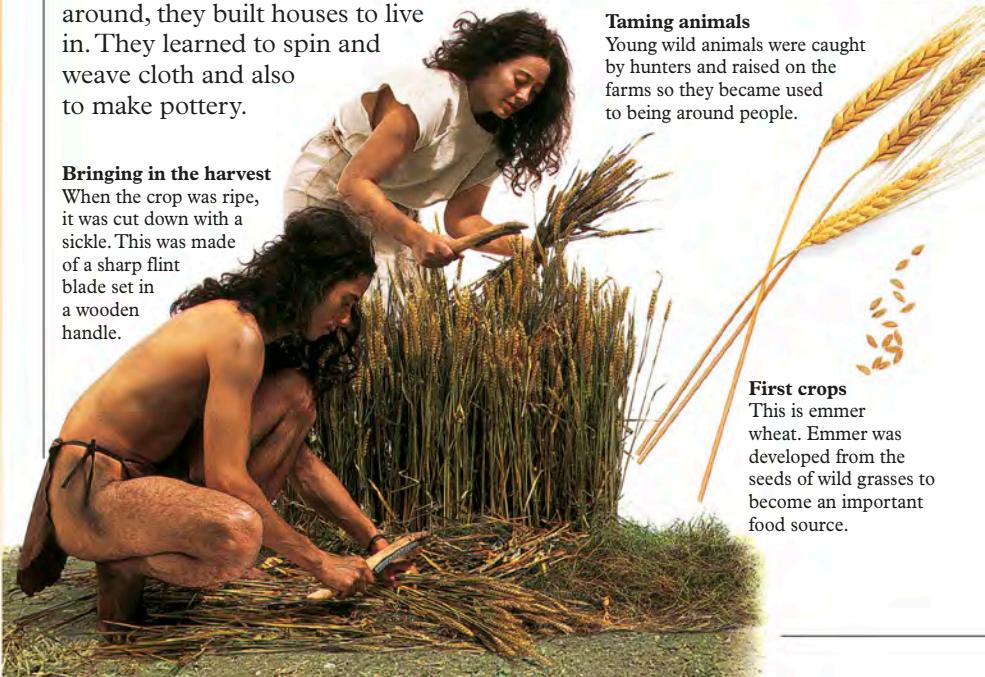
As the people no longer moved around, they built houses to live in. They learned to spin and weave cloth and also to make pottery.

Bringing in the harvest
When the crop was ripe, it was cut down with a sickle. This was made of a sharp flint blade set in a wooden handle.



Taming animals

Young wild animals were caught by hunters and raised on the farms so they became used to being around people.



First crops

This is emmer wheat. Emmer was developed from the seeds of wild grasses to become an important food source.



The grain was ground between two heavy stones and made into flour.

Coiling clay

This girl is making a pot by coiling long, thin rolls of clay on top of a flat clay base. She is making a pot in the same way the first potters did, 9,000 years ago.



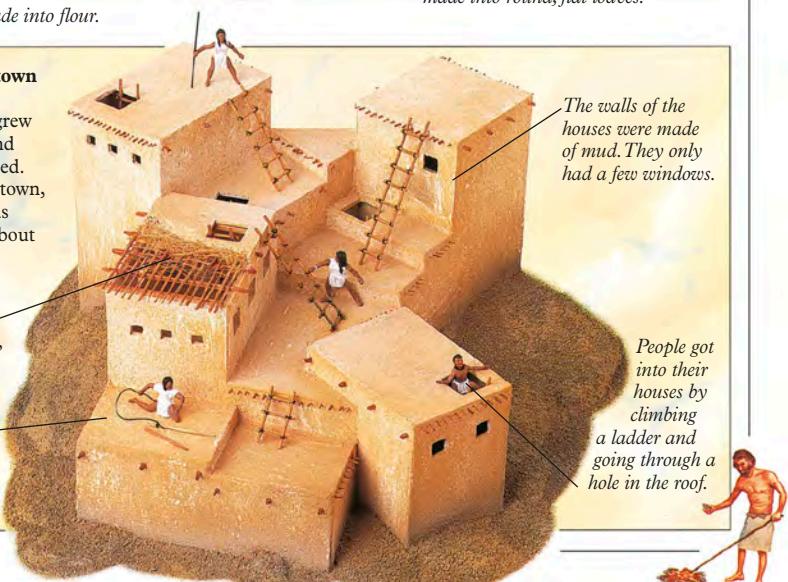
The flour would be mixed with water and made into round, flat loaves.

From farm to town

Farms attracted people. As they grew larger, villages and towns were formed. The first known town, Çatal Hüyük, was built in Turkey about 9,000 years ago.

The roofs were made of branches, reeds, and straw covered in mud.

The houses touched each other and there were no streets.



The walls of the houses were made of mud. They only had a few windows.

People got into their houses by climbing a ladder and going through a hole in the roof.





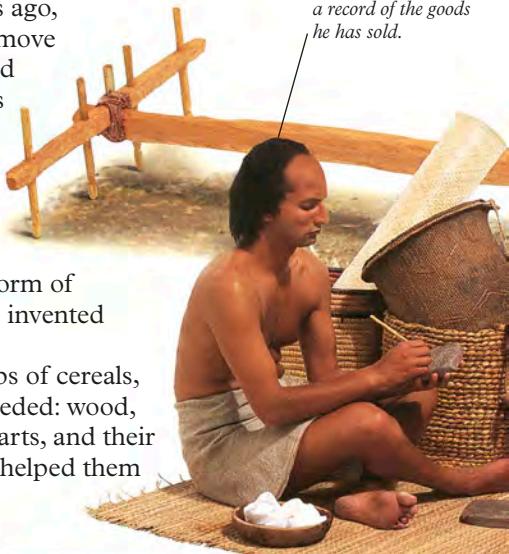
THE SUMERIANS



About 9,000 years ago, farmers began to move into an area of land between the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. This fertile land was called Mesopotamia, in what is now Iraq. In the south of Mesopotamia was the land of Sumer. The Sumerians were very inventive. They developed the first form of writing and recording numbers, and invented the wheel and the plow.

The Sumerians grew bumper crops of cereals, which they traded for things they needed: wood, building stone, or metals. Wheeled carts, and their skills in writing and using numbers, helped them develop long-distance trade.

A merchant makes a record of the goods he has sold.



How writing began
The Sumerians drew pictures on soft clay with a pointed reed. The pictures were drawn downward in lines, from the right-hand side.



Later, they started to write across the tablet, from left to right.
The reed tip made wedge-shaped marks.



Fish
Bird
Barley



Ox

The signs were then joined together to create words and sentences.

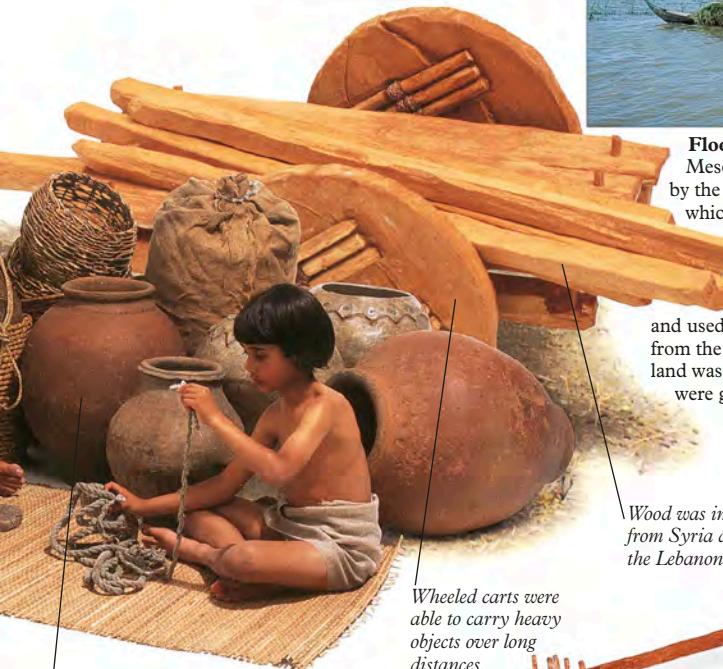


In time, the picture signs changed so much that the original objects were hard to recognize. This writing is called cuneiform, which means "wedge-shaped."



It's a deal

Instead of writing their names, the Sumerian traders used a seal to sign their contracts.



Pots were used to store grain and oil.

Wheeled carts were able to carry heavy objects over long distances.



Flooded fields

Mesopotamia was watered by the Tigris and Euphrates, which flooded in the spring.

The farmers dug out basins and canals so the river water could be stored and used to water fields away from the river. Because of this, land was very fertile and harvests were good.

Wood was imported from Syria and the Lebanon.



Tilling the soil

The first plows were made of wood. Later, the blade was made of bronze. Despite the flooding from the rivers, the ground in Sumer was baked hard in hot weather. The plow made it possible to break up the hard-to-work soil.

Revolutionary invention

The first wheels were made of planks of solid wood held together with crosspieces.



They were clumsy and heavy. In time, lighter wheels were made. These had many spokes.





THE EGYPTIANS

The Egyptians believed that when they died they went on to another, everlasting, life. To live happily in the afterlife, they needed their earthly bodies and great care was taken to ensure that they arrived in style. The dead bodies were preserved in a special way called mummification.

To mummify a body took a long time, as much as 70 days. First, inner organs were taken out and put in tightly sealed jars. Next, the body was dried out by covering it with natron, a white powder like salt. It was left for 40 days, rubbed with sweet-smelling oils, and then covered in molten resin. Finally, the body was wrapped in linen to make a neat package.



Royal tombs

Egyptian kings, called pharaohs, were buried in tombs known as pyramids.



Well kept
This is how the mummy of King Seti I looks underneath all his bandages. He was buried at Thebes over 3,000 years ago. Despite his age, you can still see his face very clearly.



A picture of the dead person is painted on the mummy case, or coffin.

On this coffin, the arms are shown crossed over the chest.



The coffin is made to follow the shape of the body inside.

These little drawings are called hieroglyphs. Each picture means a word or sound in the ancient Egyptian language.





Creatures great and small

The Egyptians believed in many different gods and goddesses, some of which took the form of animals. They mummified animals as offerings to these gods. When mummified, the creatures made some odd shapes.



Mummified crocodile



Mummified cow



Mummified cat



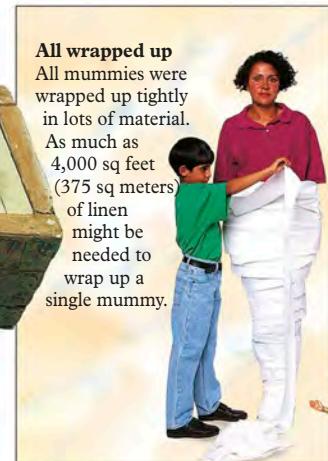
The lid of the coffin is decorated with symbols of the gods. These are the wings of the sky goddess, Nut.



The hieroglyphs were spells to help the priestess on her journey to the next life.

Brightly colored figures and symbols are painted on the inside of the coffin.

This mummy case may have been one of a nest of coffins, each fitting inside the next like a set of Russian dolls.



All wrapped up

All mummies were wrapped up tightly in lots of material. As much as 4,000 sq feet (375 sq meters) of linen might be needed to wrap up a single mummy.





GREEK GAMES



All over Ancient Greece festivals were held in honor of the Greek gods.

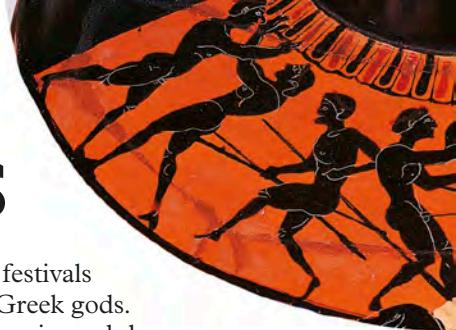
They included competitions in sports, music, and drama. The most famous of the festivals was the Olympic Games, an event first held in 776 BCE. There were no team races and the male athletes competed as individuals. Their prize was a simple wreath of olive leaves, but if you won you became a hero.



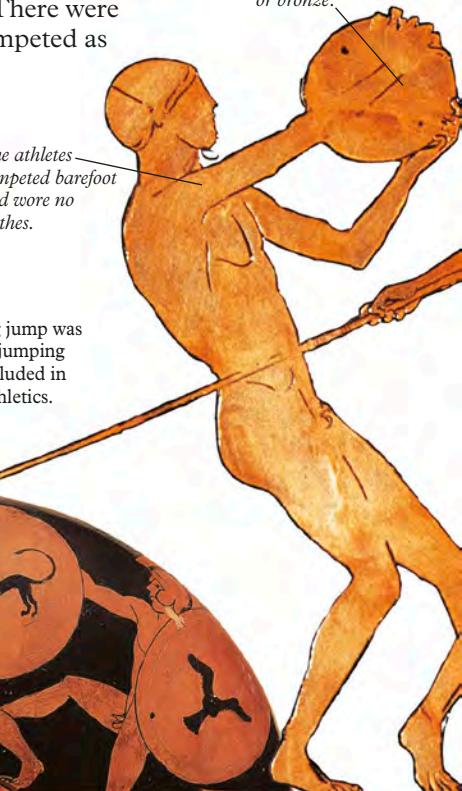
The athletes competed barefoot and wore no clothes.

Liftoff!

The long jump was the only jumping event included in Greek athletics.



The discus was made of stone or bronze.



Fighting fit

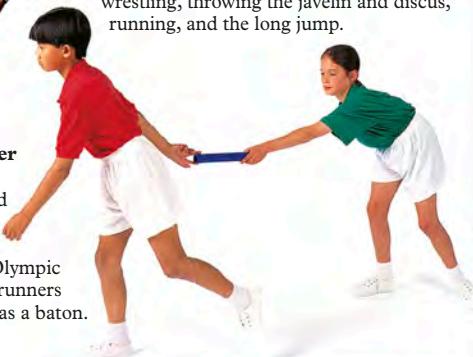
Athletics training kept men fit for war. The connection between sports and war is shown in the race-in-armor event.





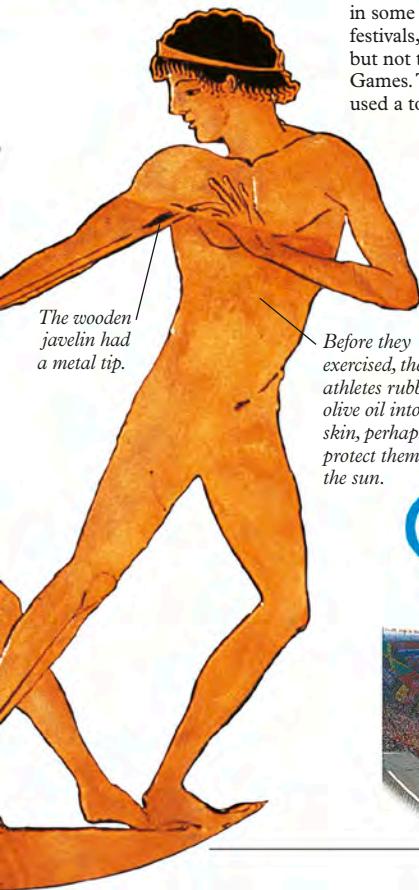
The pentathlon

The decoration on this vase shows athletes training for the pentathlon. The contest included wrestling, throwing the javelin and discus, running, and the long jump.



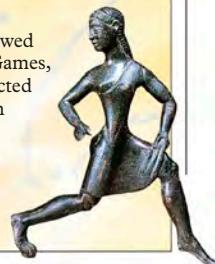
Handing over

Relay races were included in some festivals, but not the Olympic Games. The runners used a torch as a baton.



Equal opportunities

Only men and boys were allowed to compete in the Olympic Games, but in Sparta girls were expected to go through the same tough athletic training as the boys. This little bronze statue of a girl runner from Sparta shows her barefoot and wearing a short tunic.



Inspiration from the past

The idea for today's Olympics came from the Ancient Greek games of more than 2,000 years ago. The interlocking Olympic rings represent the five competing continents.

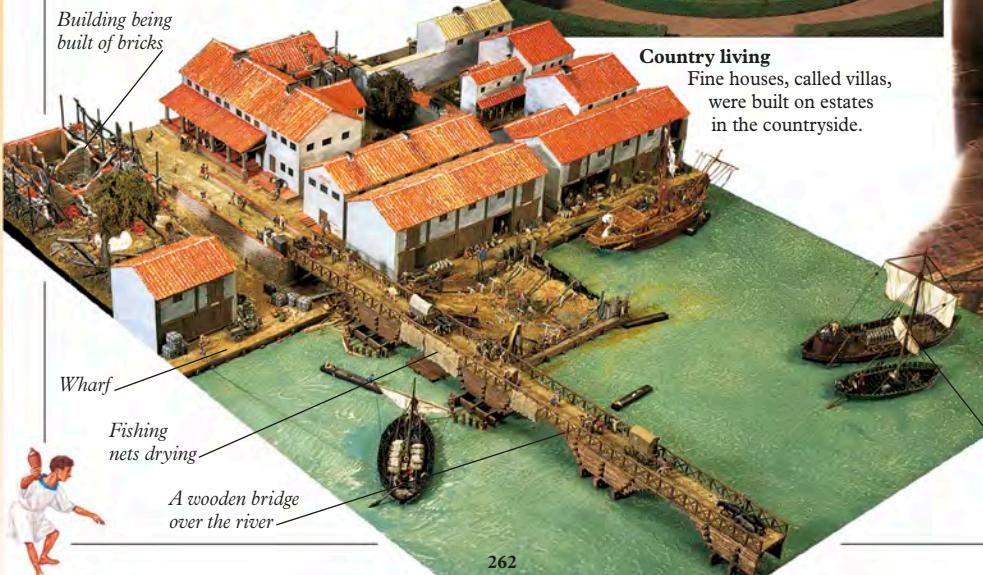




ROMAN LIFE

The Romans planned their towns to include magnificent public buildings such as temples, the town hall, baths, and places of entertainment. There were also grand houses for wealthy families. But side by side with these were the tumbledown dwellings where most people lived—overcrowded apartments built over shops and workshops. The poor had no kitchens, so they lived on bread or bought hot food from stalls. Since the Romans lived, traded, and ate in the streets, their towns were noisy places. Traffic was bad, too, with carts and wagons bringing country goods through the busy streets.

In the kitchen
This scene shows what a typical Roman kitchen was like. You would have found it in the town house or villa of a rich family.



Country living

Fine houses, called villas, were built on estates in the countryside.



Herbs drying over the stove. The Romans liked their food highly flavored. Herbs and spices also helped make food stay fresh longer.

Bread was an important part of Roman diet, and the basic food of the poor.

Slaves did the housework for wealthy Romans.

A saucepan made of bronze

Jugs for serving wine

Storage jars, called amphorae, were used to hold wine.



A sailing boat carries cargo from the port.

Cats were kept as pets for children and to chase away mice and rats!

This floor is decorated with a mosaic, a picture made from tiny tiles.

All mod cons

Unlike the poor in their cramped dwellings, wealthy Romans lived in well-planned houses with lots of home comforts. There was running water, a toilet and bathroom, a kitchen, and even central heating. This worked by sending warmed air through pipes laid under the floor.





RAIDERS FROM THE SEA

Late in the eighth century a seafaring people from the countries now known as Denmark, Norway, and Sweden began to sail abroad in search of wealth. They were called Vikings.

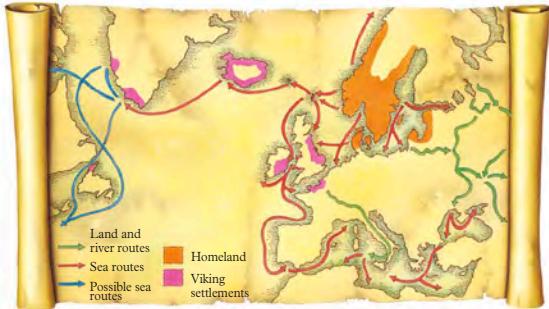
In their amazingly fast and adaptable longships, Vikings were the best sailors in Europe. They began by raiding foreign lands, and went on to conquer and settle there. They were also great sea traders. Many of the Vikings became Christians. It was the Vikings who founded the cities of Dublin in Ireland and Kiev in Ukraine. The Normans were descended from Viking settlers in northern France.

The mast supported a big square sail. This was used when the longship was out at sea and there was plenty of wind to fill the sail.

Longships were called "Serpents of the Sea." They were decorated with scary animal carvings called figureheads.

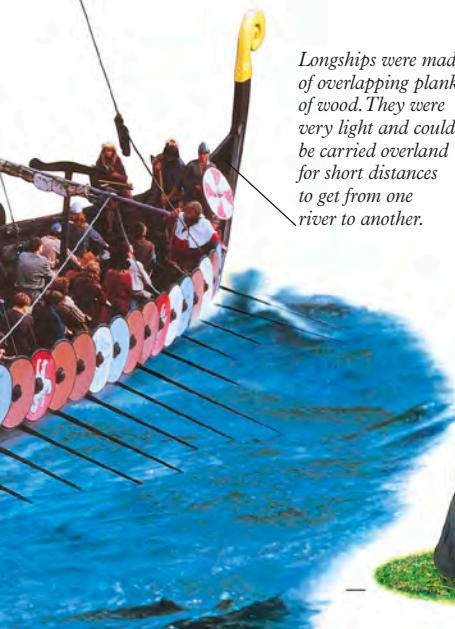
As Vikings prepare to land on a foreign shore, warriors stand at the front of the longship, with settlers in the middle.





Where the Vikings went

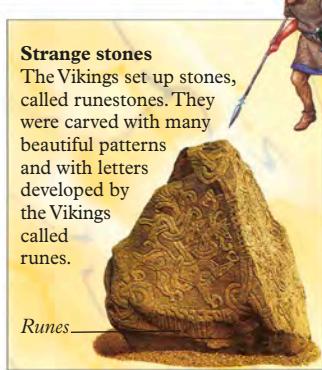
The Vikings roamed great distances. Merchants sailed across the rivers of Russia and around the Mediterranean Sea. They traded such northern objects as furs and walrus tusks for southern objects such as silk and silver. Explorers sailed to Iceland, Greenland, and to Newfoundland in North America. They called this Vinland.



Strange stones

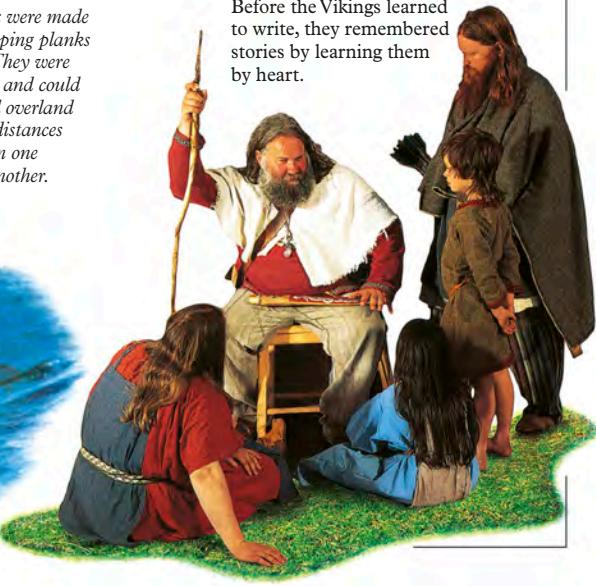
The Vikings set up stones, called runestones. They were carved with many beautiful patterns and with letters developed by the Vikings called runes.

Runes



Fascinating tales

Storytelling was very popular. These stories, or sagas, were long poems describing brave deeds, journeys to strange lands, and victories in battle. Before the Vikings learned to write, they remembered stories by learning them by heart.





THE CRUSADES

The city of Jerusalem and the Holy Land of Palestine (now including Israel and Jordan) are special to people of three faiths—Jews, Muslims, and Christians. Nine hundred years ago, the first of a series of wars broke out over control of Jerusalem.

In 1095, European Christians set out to take the city, then ruled by Muslims. The Europeans were called crusaders from the French word *croisade*, meaning “carrying a cross.”

In 1099, after four years of struggle, the crusaders captured Jerusalem and held it for nearly one hundred years. Then it was recaptured by a great Muslim leader called Saladin. More crusades followed, but none was successful. However, the returning crusaders brought many new objects and ideas back to Europe.



Stronghold

The crusaders built strong castles in the Arab style to defend the land they had captured. This is Krak des Chevaliers in Syria.



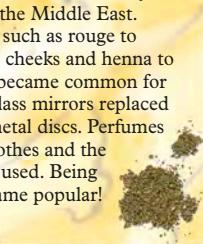
Over his armor,
the knight is wearing
a cross—the sign of
a crusader.



Body beautiful

The crusaders took back to Europe new customs that they learned in the Middle East.

Cosmetics such as rouge to redder the cheeks and henna to color hair became common for women. Glass mirrors replaced polished metal discs. Perfumes to scent clothes and the body were used. Being clean became popular!



A Muslim foot soldier usually carried a round shield for protection. It may have been made of wood or of layers of hardened leather sewn together.

Boots made of leather or felt were the most common footwear for a Muslim soldier.



Roman numerals

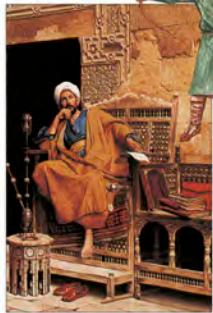
I II III IV V VI VII VIII IX

Arabic numerals

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

One, two, three . . .

The Muslims used a series of numbers, called Arabic numerals, which were much easier to use than those of the old Roman system. They are used today throughout the world.



Bookworms

Arab learning was more advanced than that of the crusaders. They had lots of books and libraries at a time when there were very few in Europe. The crusaders took many books back with them.



Healing arts

Muslim doctors were very good surgeons and were skilled in using plants and herbs to make medicines. They used opium and myrrh to ease pain when people were having operations.



Musical instruments

The Muslims invented a musical instrument called the oud, which was called the lute in Europe. The modern guitar was developed from this instrument.



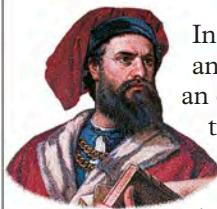
Great inventors

The Muslims made fine scientific instruments like this astrolabe. It used the positions of the stars and planets to show travelers which way to go in the empty deserts.





MARCO POLO



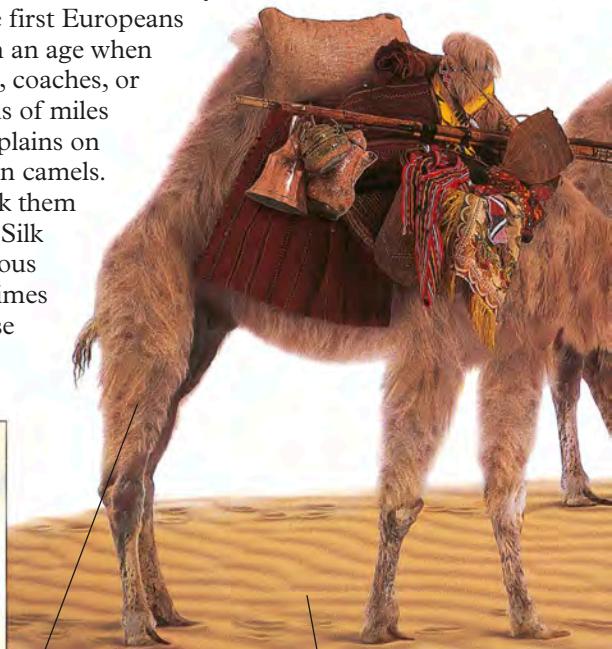
In 1271 a merchant named Marco Polo and his family set off from Venice on an extraordinary journey to China. They traveled along the Silk Road, an important trading route between Europe and the Far East. Merchants had been using the route for more than 1,700 years before

the Polos, but they were the first Europeans to travel its whole length. In an age when there were no planes, trains, coaches, or cars, they crossed thousands of miles of mountains, deserts, and plains on foot, horseback, and even on camels. Their journey to China took them more than three years. The Silk Road could be very dangerous and the traders were sometimes attacked by bandits. Because of this threat, they traveled together in groups.



Wealthy traders

Venice was the most important port in Europe. Its merchants traveled by sea and land to bring back goods from the East to sell to other towns in Europe.



Camels were used by merchants when crossing the desert regions of central Asia. Unlike horses, they were able to travel long distances without needing water.

Besides the barren deserts, merchants traveling on the Silk Road had to climb over extreme mountain ranges and cross flooded rivers.

Making a trade

The Venetian merchants exchanged jewels, silver, and gold for goods from the East that were highly valued in Europe. These included spices, silks, porcelain or "china," and fine carpets.



Pepper

Cloves

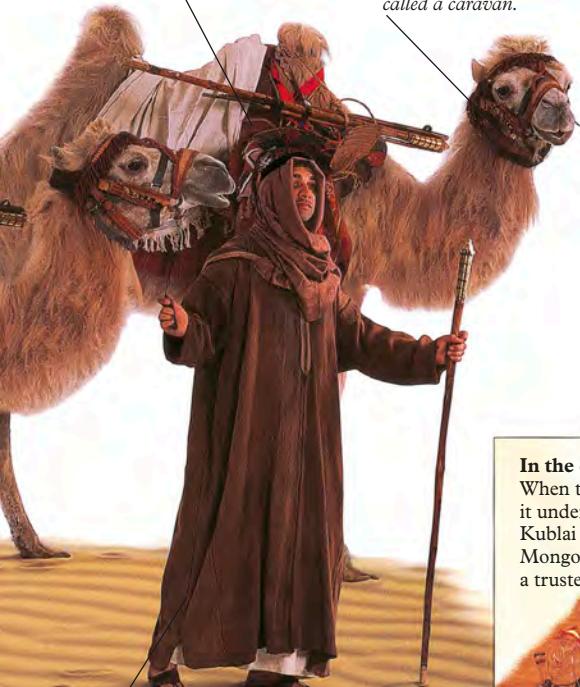
Cinnamon

Mace

Nutmeg

In the desert, travelers had to take all their own food and water with them.

A large group of people traveling with camels was called a caravan.



The camel driver is covered from head to toe in heavy clothing to protect him from the harsh winds of the desert.



Silk tunic



Persian carpet



Porcelain jar

In the court of Kublai Khan

When the Polos arrived in China they found it under the control of the Mongol emperor Kublai Khan. Marco Polo stayed at the Mongol court for 17 years and became a trusted advisor to Kublai Khan.





THE RENAISSANCE

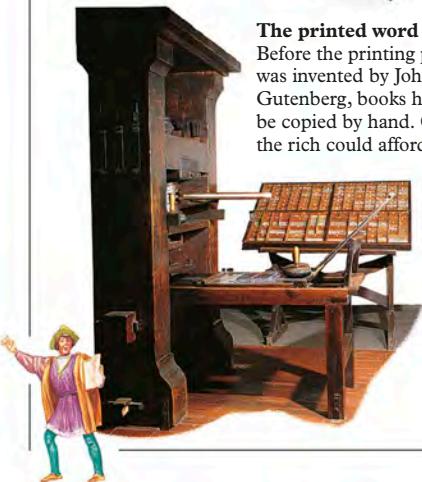
In the 15th century, Europe was bursting with new ideas about art, learning, and religion. Many of the people who could read and write began to ask questions, and to do experiments for themselves rather than follow what their rulers and priests told them to think. They rediscovered many of the ideas that the Greeks and Romans had about life and the world. As a result this period became known as the "Renaissance," a French word meaning rebirth. The Renaissance started in the cities of northern and central Italy but gradually spread all over Europe.

A letter of type used in the printing press



The printed word

Before the printing press was invented by Johannes Gutenberg, books had to be copied by hand. Only the rich could afford them.



The Gutenberg Bible

These pages come from one of the three books that made up the Gutenberg Bible. It was printed in the 1450s and was admired for its quality.



Artists began to make realistic paintings of everyday objects.

The apprentice is grinding colors to make paints for his master. He will mix the powder with oil to produce oil paints.



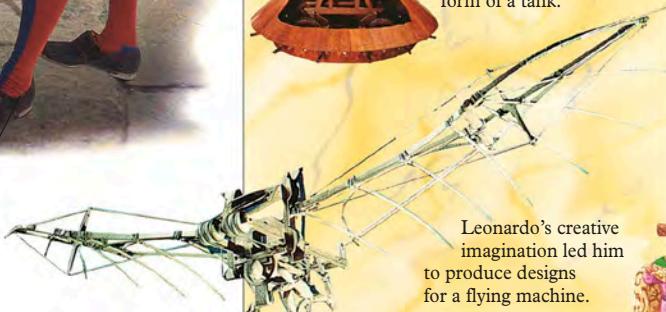
Before the Renaissance, most paintings showed mythical scenes or Bible characters, and everything in them looked perfect.

For the first time, Renaissance artists used live models and made them look like ordinary human beings.

In the 15th century, artists began to paint on canvas using oil paints. Before then they had mainly used water- and egg-based paints.



Artists were no longer unknown craftsmen, and their names became famous throughout Europe during the Renaissance.



The quest for knowledge

During the Renaissance, scholars and scientists began doing experiments and inventing things to find out more about the world they lived in.

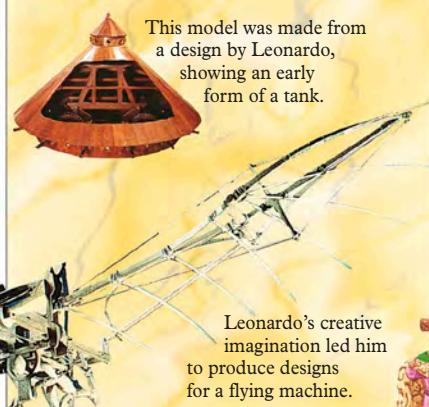


With the invention of the telescope, faraway planets could be seen in detail for the first time.



The artist Leonardo da Vinci was interested in the workings of the human body. This is one of his drawings.

This model was made from a design by Leonardo, showing an early form of a tank.



Leonardo's creative imagination led him to produce designs for a flying machine.





FOOD FROM THE NEW WORLD

From 1492 onward, European explorers sailed across the Atlantic to what they called the New World of North, Central, and South America. There they discovered a treasure trove of gold and silver. But they found other treasures, too. These were foods that grew only in the New World, such as sweet corn and potatoes, and plants that could be made into medicines. In fact, you may be surprised to find out how many of the foods you eat come from the New World. Every time you eat a tomato, or mashed potatoes, or have chocolate for a treat, just think, you owe them to the people of the Americas.



A world of golden treasure

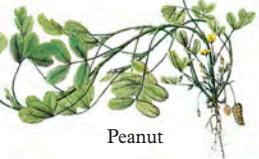
The Native Americans had vast quantities of gold which they used to make into jewelry. The Europeans plundered most of this treasure.



Corn was eaten boiled or roasted, or ground into flour.

The explorer Christopher Columbus took it back to Europe when he returned from his voyages.

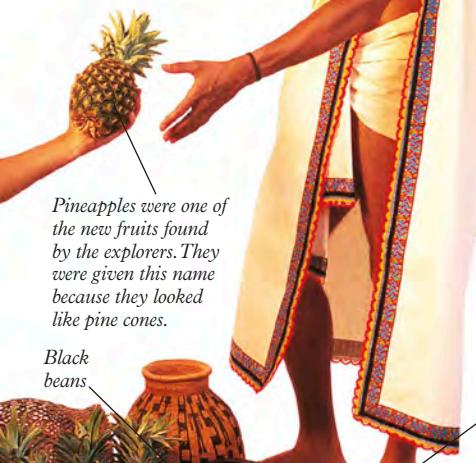
This is cornmeal, made out of ground corn. It was used to make breadlike foods.



Peanut

Native American plants

These include cocoa (for chocolate), sunflowers (to give us oil to cook with), and peanuts.



Pineapples were one of the new fruits found by the explorers. They were given this name because they looked like pine cones.

Black beans



Avocados look like pears with rough, tough skins. They were first grown in Central America.

Healing plants

When the explorers reached the Americas, they found skilled healers among the people living there. These healers used thousands of plants to make medicines. Their remedies were used to cure many illnesses, including stomach pains, headaches, coughs, and fevers. Many of these plants are still used today to make medicines.

Cinchona leaf



Quinine is used to prevent an illness called malaria. It is made from the bark of the cinchona tree.

Quinine tablets

These small, hot peppers are chillies. They were used to flavor the bowls of corn porridge that the Mexicans ate for breakfast.

Sweet potatoes

Tomatoes, first grown in South America, spread to Mexico, where the Spanish came across them. The first ones they brought to Europe were small and yellow.

Potatoes were first grown in the Andes Mountains. They were loaded aboard the treasure ships as food for the sailors.





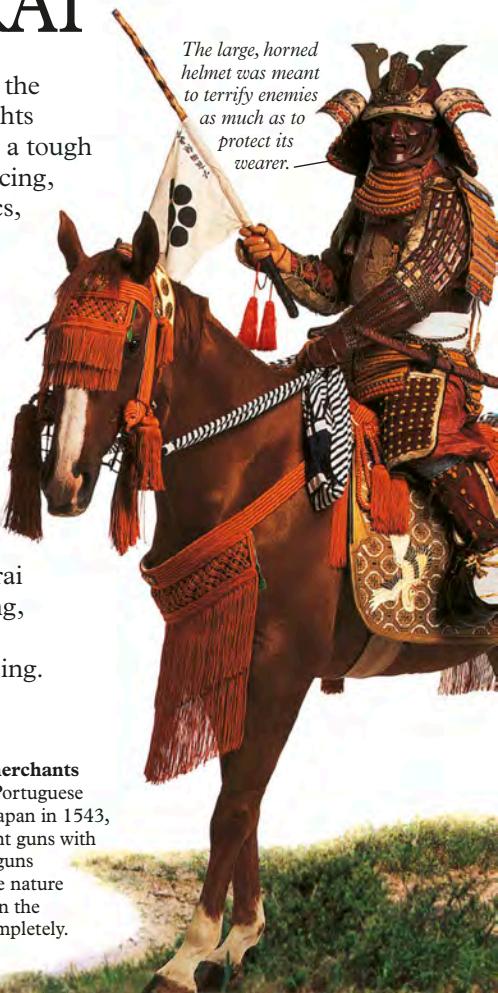
THE LIFE OF THE SAMURAI



For about seven hundred years the Samurai were the honored knights of Japan. Fierce fighters, they had a tough training, becoming experts in fencing, wrestling, archery, and acrobatics, and they had a special code of behavior. The word samurai means “one who serves,” and any Samurai worthy of the name was absolutely loyal to his lord, ready to obey any command without question.

However, although the Samurai were professional fighters, away from battle they were not violent men. The Samurai believed in Zen Buddhism, a religion that taught respect for all living things. The Samurai were also taught to love art and learning, taking pride in their skill at painting, writing poetry, and even flower-arranging.

The large, horned helmet was meant to terrify enemies as much as to protect its wearer.



Western merchants

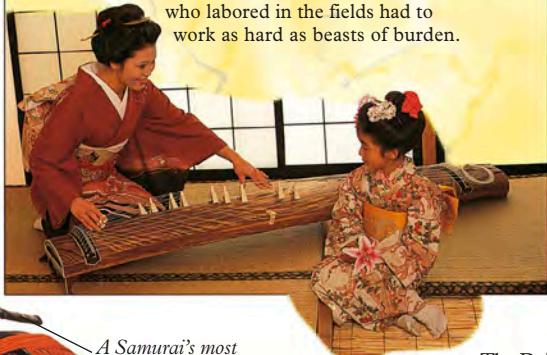
When the Portuguese arrived in Japan in 1543, they brought guns with them. The guns changed the nature of warfare in the country completely.

Women and ladies

Just as the Samurai obeyed his lord, the women of his own family had to obey him. Graceful, musical, and artistic, these Samurai ladies were expected to make homes for their lords and masters.

By contrast, the peasant women

who labored in the fields had to work as hard as beasts of burden.



A Samurai's most important weapons were his two razor-sharp swords, a long one, called a katana, and a short one called a wakizashi.



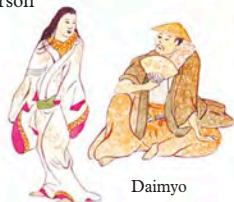
A Samurai's armor consisted of six main pieces: the helmet, the face mask, the breastplate, the sleeves, the shin guards, and the loin guard.

Knowing their place

Life in Samurai Japan was strictly organized. From birth, everybody had a fixed place in society. Samurai families belonged to the upper classes.



The godlike Emperor was the official ruler, but the Shogun, his chief general, was really the most powerful person in Japan.



Daimyo



Samurai

The Daimyo were the nobles of Japan, and they were supported by Samurai warriors. They preferred to have nothing to do with money or the buying and selling of goods.



Merchants

Merchants and traders were not given much respect, in spite of their wealth.



Peasant

Lowest of the low were the peasants. They worked on the farms of the Daimyo and were treated like slaves.



NEWCOMERS TO THE AMERICAS

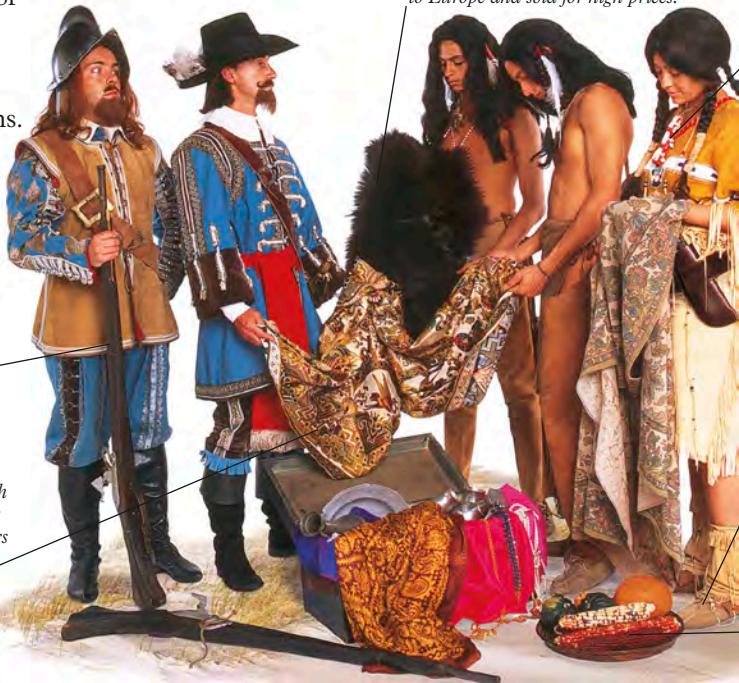
The Europeans who began arriving in North America at the beginning of the 17th century were traders and settlers as well as soldier-conquerors. At first, the contact between them and the people already living there, whom they called Indians, was friendly. The Native Americans showed the newcomers how to hunt, fish, and farm in a land of plenty. In return for their help and animal furs, the Native Americans were given objects such as knives, needles, fish hooks, and cloth.

But before long, the settlers were taking more and more land for themselves, and trying to change the ways of the Native Americans.

Warm furs from the forest animals of North America were taken back to Europe and sold for high prices.

European weapons, tools, and machines completely changed hunting and warfare for Native Americans.

European cloth was prized for its bright colors and silkiness.





Creek
(Southeast)



Iroquois
(Northeast)



Tlingit
(Pacific Northwest)



Hidatsa
(Plains)



Hopi
(Southwest)



Native Americans used feathers and animal teeth to decorate themselves.



Sauk
(Great Lakes)



Paiute
(Great Basin)

Warriors and hunters
The work that men and women did varied from tribe to tribe, but usually the men were the hunters and warriors, while the women were the farmers and homemakers. Most Native Americans wore their hair long and they enjoyed decorating their bodies and clothes.

For comfort and protection against ants, snakes, and other dangers, Native Americans wore slipperlike leather shoes called moccasins.

Sweet corn, squash, and pumpkins were among the exotic American foods that the European settlers tasted for the first time.

Tlingit cedar-plank house

Hidatsa animal-skin tepee

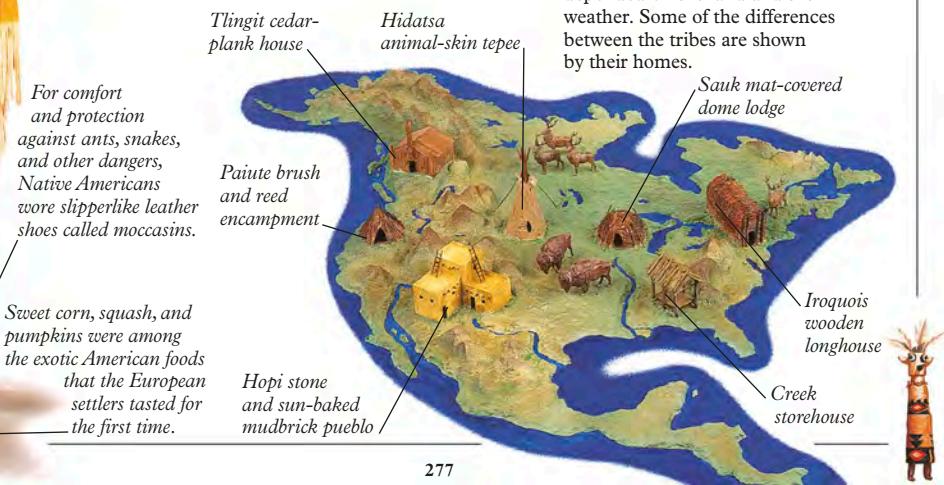
Paiute brush and reed encampment

Sauk mat-covered dome lodge

Hopi stone and sun-baked mudbrick pueblo

Iroquois wooden longhouse

Creek storehouse





THE ASHANTI KINGDOM



The Ashanti kingdom

The Ashanti kingdom flourished for 200 years after its emergence in the 17th century, in what is now Ghana in West Africa. The

Ashanti were a highly organized people: the king had his own civil service, which carried out his commands throughout the country. The Ashanti were also fine warriors, and much of their wealth was based on selling slaves from the prisoners they captured in battle. They had vast quantities of gold which was used to make jewelry and as decoration for musical instruments and weapons.

Ashanti goldsmiths were highly skilled in their craft. They used a special method to cast the metal, called the lost-wax technique.

Beautifully made
These royal sandals have flowers of gold sewn onto them.



Ashanti goldsmiths worked gold into all kinds of objects. The handle of this sword was covered in a fine sheet of gold.



The item to be cast in gold was modeled in melted beeswax.

The wax was made into thin sheets. These were cut into strips, which were used to make the model.

Clay was molded around the model and a hole made in the clay. As the mold was baked, the wax melted and poured out through the hole. Molten gold was then poured into the space.

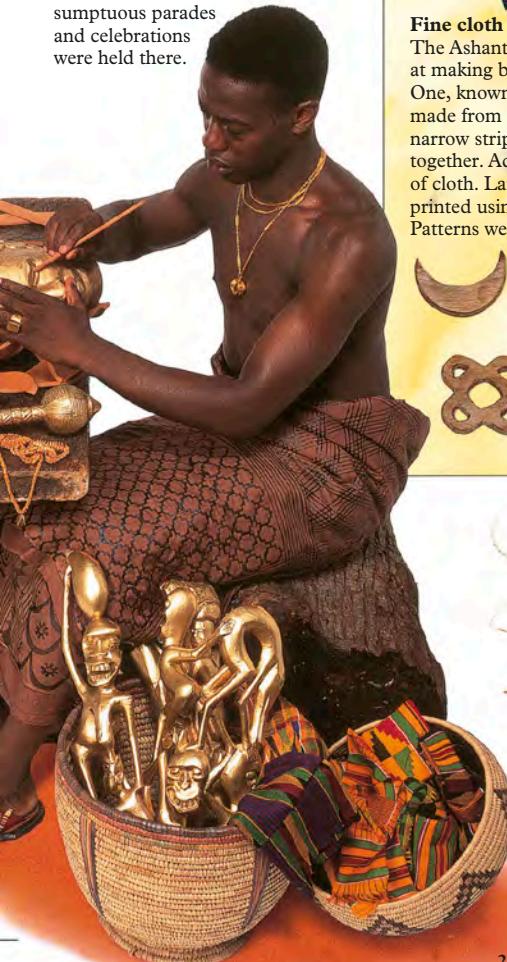
When the metal had cooled and hardened, the mold was smashed open. The gold object was taken out and cleaned up.





Hub of the kingdom

Kumasi, the capital, was a teeming, bustling city. Many sumptuous parades and celebrations were held there.



Kente cloth

Fine cloth

The Ashanti were experts at making beautiful cloth. One, known as kente, was made from cotton woven into narrow strips that were then sewn together. Adinkra was another sort of cloth. Large pieces of material were printed using stamps dipped in dyes. Patterns were built up in blocks or panels.



Printing blocks

The stamps used to print cloth were made out of the shell-like fruits of calabash trees.



Elephant symbols were used in Ashanti jewelry to show the power of the wearer.

Dripping with gold

The Ashanti wore rings on their fingers as well as gold bracelets on their wrists and at their knees.





CATHERINE THE GREAT



Catherine II, Empress of Russia during the 18th century, was called "Great" because she made Russia a great European power. She asked the advice of many of the major thinkers in Europe and, because she was interested in education, she started the Russian school system.

Catherine also loved clothes and spectacular entertainments, and so did her nobles. Under her rule they became even more powerful than they had been before. They were the owners of land and of people. These people were known as serfs and, like slaves, they had to do whatever their masters wanted. Serfs could be bought and sold by their masters.



Miserable existence

Nine out of ten Russians were serfs and life for them was grim. Often, they lived in poor log huts with only one room for an entire family.



Catherine's palaces and the homes of the nobles were filled with furniture, ornaments, carpets, and other luxuries in the latest fashions.



The Hermitage

Catherine built the Winter Palace in St. Petersburg. She called it the Hermitage, because it allowed her to shut herself and her court away like hermits. Today it is a famous museum.



The nobles dressed in clothes that came from fashionable France. They were the finest clothes money could buy.

The playing of music was encouraged at court. Catherine invited foreign musicians to Russia to perform their work.

During court entertainments the wearing of masks became popular.



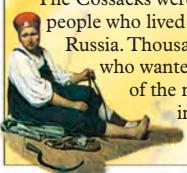
The court entertainments were dazzling to look at, with gorgeous costumes.



Revolt of the serfs

In 1771, a Cossack soldier named Emilian Pugachev set himself up as a rival emperor to Catherine.

The Cossacks were a warlike people who lived in southern Russia. Thousands of serfs who wanted to get rid of the nobles joined in their revolt.



The number of rebels under Pugachev grew and, in 1773, they swarmed across Russia, destroying the city of Kazan. Catherine ordered her army to attack the rebels and, in July 1774, the serfs were defeated. Pugachev was captured, brought to Moscow, and executed. The revolt was over.





THE JOURNEYS OF JAMES COOK



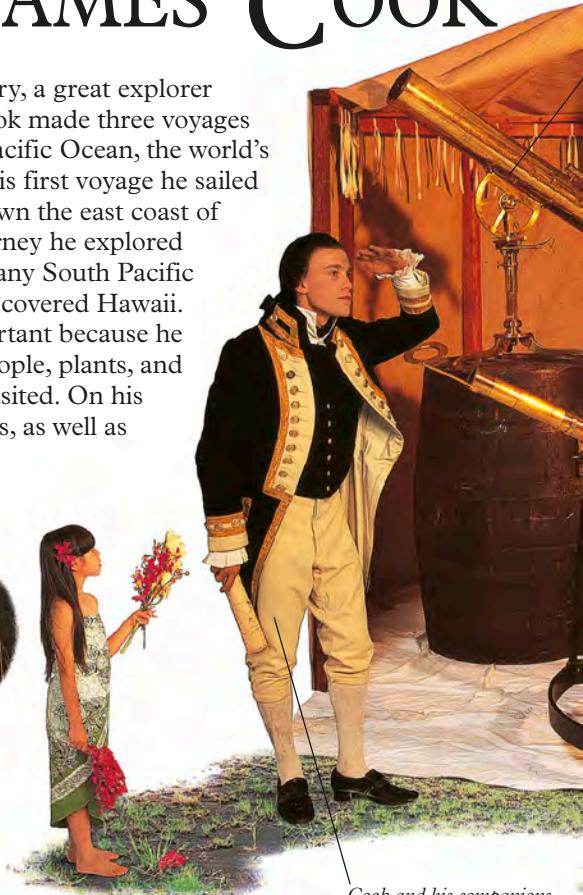
In the 18th century, a great explorer named James Cook made three voyages that mapped the Pacific Ocean, the world's largest and deepest sea. On his first voyage he sailed around New Zealand and down the east coast of Australia. On the second journey he explored the Antarctic and mapped many South Pacific islands. On his last trip he discovered Hawaii.

Cook's voyages were important because he tried to find out about the people, plants, and animals of the countries he visited. On his ship were scientists and artists, as well as officers, crew, and servants.



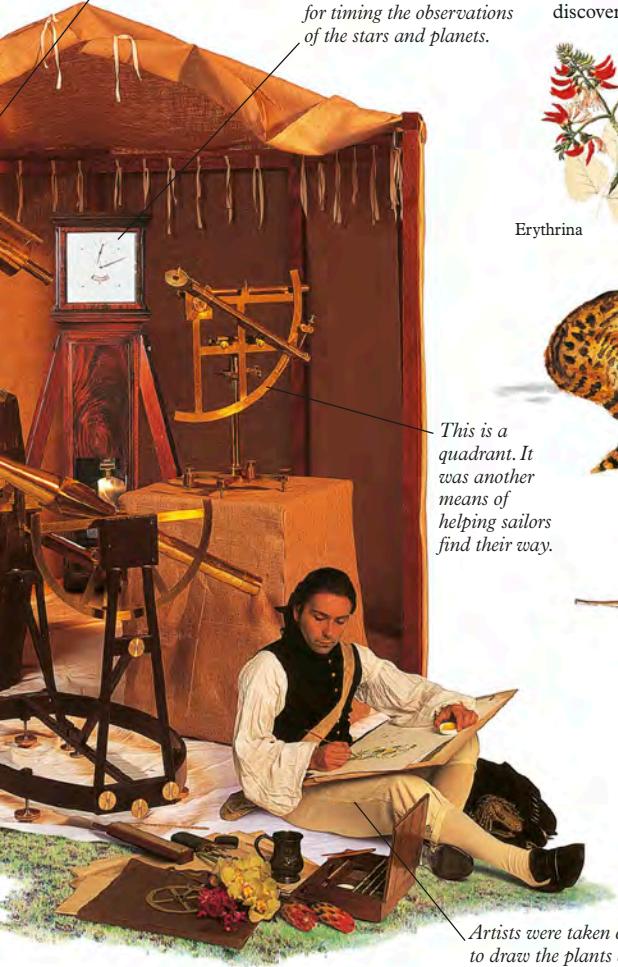
South Sea paradise

Throughout the 18th century, artists and writers presented life in the South Pacific as being easy and perfect.



Cook and his companions were members of the Royal Navy, so they wore naval uniforms.

The first voyage to the South Seas was made to watch the movement of the planet Venus. The scientists looked through a telescope like this.



This very accurate astronomical clock was used for timing the observations of the stars and planets.

Art for all

Drawings and paintings made by the artists on Cook's voyages were published. People in Europe could see illustrations of new plants and animals discovered on the explorations.



Erythrina



Hibiscus



Wild cat



Butterfly fish



Blue-crowned lory

Artists were taken on the voyages to draw the plants and animals they saw, just as a photographer might take pictures today.





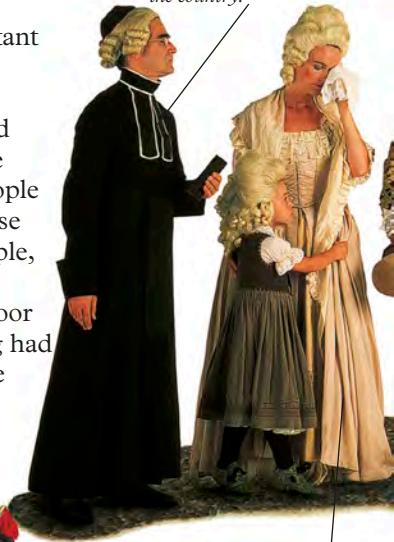
REVOLUTION



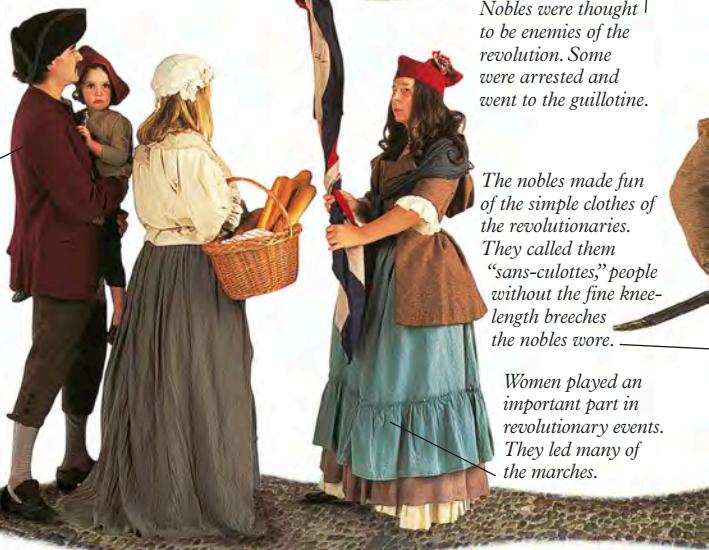
Detail from a French revolution poster

In the 18th century, an important revolution started in France. It happened because the king, Louis XVI, and his nobles held all the power and wealth in the country. He could rule the people as he pleased. The way he chose to do so was unfair. For example, the nobles, who were already rich, paid no taxes while the poor peasants did. In 1789, the king had

nearly run out of money. He wanted to increase taxes. At the same time, food was very scarce because of bad harvests. The ordinary people had had enough and decided that they didn't want to be ruled by the king. Louis was executed and a new government was set up.



Nobles were thought to be enemies of the revolution. Some were arrested and went to the guillotine.



The revolution was supported by people who thought they had been badly treated by their rulers. They included lawyers, traders, small farmers, workers, and ordinary soldiers.



Women played an important part in revolutionary events. They led many of the marches.

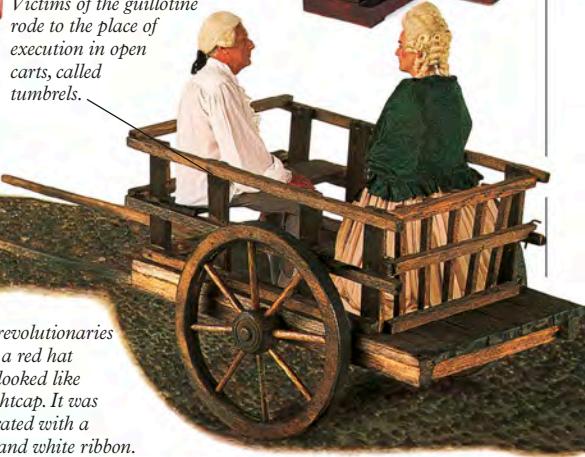


The guillotine

Anyone who was not loyal to the revolution faced arrest and possible death by guillotine. The guillotine cut off the heads of the victims. It was made of a heavy, sharp blade that fell between two posts. Death by guillotine was very quick. It caused less suffering than other methods of execution.



Victims of the guillotine rode to the place of execution in open carts, called tumrels.



The revolutionaries wore a red hat that looked like a nightcap. It was decorated with a blue and white ribbon.

American revolution

In the 1770s, British colonists (settlers) in America grew sick of being ruled by the British king. They fought for their independence and won, setting up a Republic—a state without a king. The French revolutionaries were encouraged by the American success.



This painting shows colonists fighting the British in Massachusetts in 1775.





RICHES OF INDUSTRY

One of the biggest changes in the history of the world, the Industrial Revolution, started in Britain in the late 18th century. As the “Workshop of the World,” Britain was the first home of new machines, new types of materials, and new ways of making power. This was the age of coal and iron, of gas and electricity, of railroads and factories.

Within 50 years this series of mighty inventions had dramatically changed the way in which people lived. Railroads and steamships made it possible to travel quickly from place to place. Instead of living in the country, many more people lived in towns and cities. There they worked in factories where machines made things in vast numbers, quickly and cheaply.



Grim conditions

The big industrial cities were very smoky, and many people were crammed together in badly built houses.



Modern photography was invented by the British scientist William Fox Talbot during the 1830s. It soon became popular for people to have their photograph taken.



The railroads and cheaper paper provided many more readers with news of events from all over the world.

With the arrival of trains, which had to run according to timetables, people began to live their lives by the clock.



Iron foundry

Abraham Darby replaced charcoal (made from wood) with coke (made from coal) for making a new kind of tough iron.



The invention of electroplating made it possible to coat iron objects with silver. They looked like solid silver but were far cheaper to make.

Vast numbers of machine-made cups and plates were turned out for everyday use.

The invention of artificial dyes in the 1850s meant that cloth did not fade when it was washed.



Ironbridge

Made of metal

In 1779, Abraham Darby III built the first iron bridge across the river Severn. The place is now called Ironbridge. The Eiffel Tower was built in Paris in 1889 and is more than 980 feet (300 meters) high.

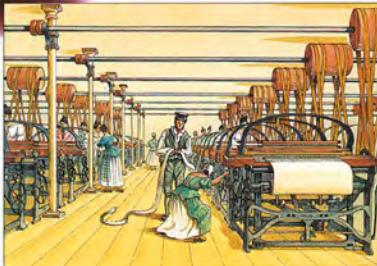


Eiffel Tower



The Great Exhibition

In 1851, the Great Exhibition was opened in London, inside a huge glass building called the Crystal Palace. The Exhibition displayed all the latest industrial developments.



Factory life

The first factories were built to contain the heavy machinery needed to produce cotton cloth.

Whole families—even young children—kept the machines going night and day.





PIONEERS



During the 19th century, European settlers traveled across America in search of land to farm. They were called pioneers. Some of them traveled in wagon trains so long that they stretched as far as the eye could see. The wagons were packed tight with provisions—food, tools, plows, household goods, and even chamber pots. There was often only enough room for small children, the sick, and some women to ride in the wagons. Everyone else walked alongside.

Tormented by the heat and dust, or by winds, rain, and snow, the pioneers trudged across prairies and climbed over mountains. They lived and slept outdoors, and often went without food and water. The pioneers also faced attacks from Native Americans who resented the Europeans taking their land from them.



The wagons were pulled by teams of horses, mules, or oxen.

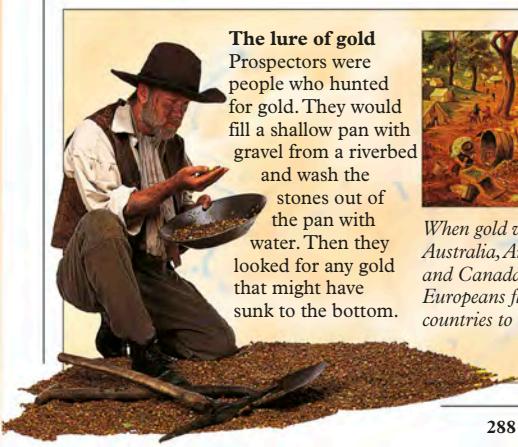


The lure of gold

Prospectors were people who hunted for gold. They would fill a shallow pan with gravel from a riverbed and wash the stones out of the pan with water. Then they looked for any gold that might have sunk to the bottom.



When gold was discovered in Australia, America, South Africa, and Canada in the 19th century, Europeans flocked to these countries to make their fortune.



The wheels in the front were made smaller than those in the back, so that the wagon could be steered more easily.



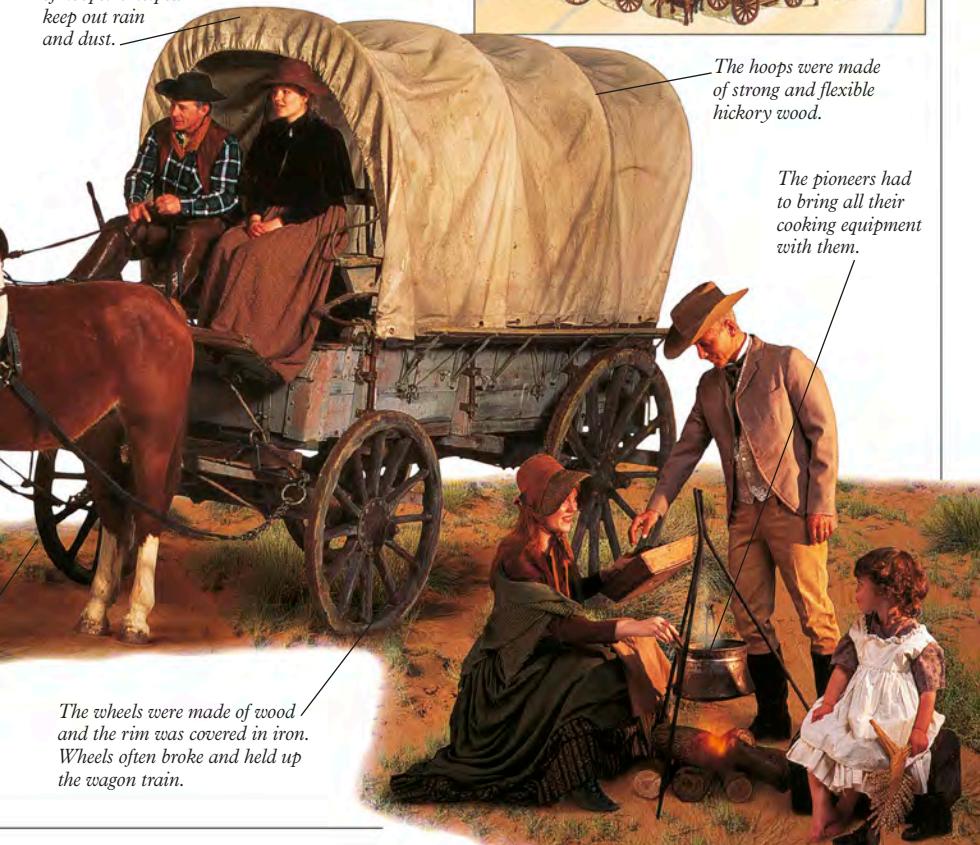
Self assembly

When the pioneers came to set up home, they had to build their own houses. Some made them out of logs, but others used chunks of dry earth cut from the ground.

The top was made of canvas held up by a frame of hoops. It helped keep out rain and dust.

The Great Trek

In 1835, Dutch settlers in South Africa moved in wagons to new land to escape being ruled by the British. This journey was called the "Great Trek." For safety against the Africans whose land they had entered, the settlers would carefully form their wagons into a circle at night.



The hoops were made of strong and flexible hickory wood.

The pioneers had to bring all their cooking equipment with them.

The wheels were made of wood and the rim was covered in iron. Wheels often broke and held up the wagon train.



THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR



In 1861, a civil war started in America between states in the South who owned slaves and states in the North who thought this was wrong.

The South tried to break away from the Union to form a separate nation, but the North went to war to prevent this. After four years of bitter fighting, the North won and the South was forced to return to the Union. But the price paid by both sides was terrible. More than 600,000 soldiers died, more than half of them victims of disease, not of battle. When they got sick or were wounded, their treatment was as likely to kill them as cure them. The field hospitals were filthy and the surgeons often poorly trained.



If they were lucky, soldiers were given drugs to make them unconscious during surgery. But often they had nothing to ease the pain.

- Northern states
- Confederate states
- Border states that fought on the Northern side
- Areas with the most slaves
- Other territories



The Confederates

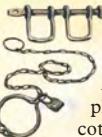
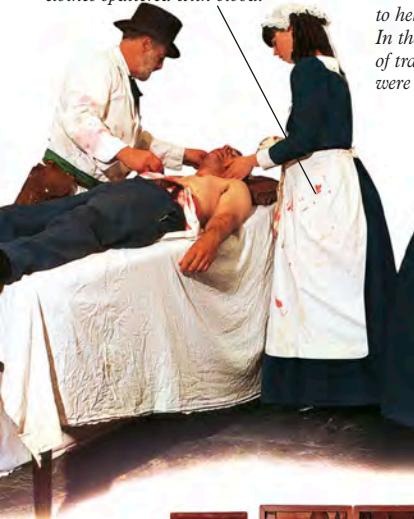
The soldiers of the South, or Confederacy, were given uniforms of gray coats and caps, and blue trousers. When uniforms were in short supply the men wore whatever they could find.



The Unionists

The soldiers of the North, or Union, wore dark blue coats or jackets and light blue trousers. They had more and better weapons than the troops from the South because most of the factories making weapons were in the North.

The surgeons who treated soldiers often worked with dirty hands and clothes spattered with blood.



The slave states

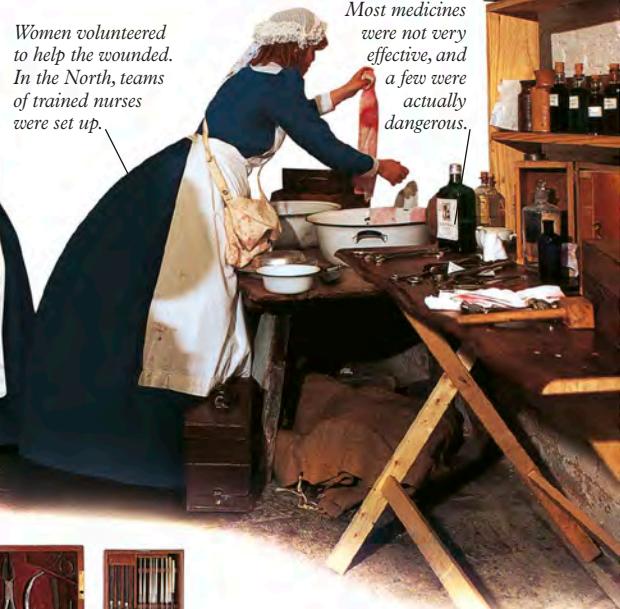
The wealth of the Southern states of America came from plantations producing cotton, sugar, and tobacco.

The work on the plantations was carried out by slaves—the descendants of those who had been captured and shipped over from Africa. Their masters could do what they liked with them and they were often treated badly. Slavery was finally abolished in America in 1865.



Slaves could be bought and sold at market like animals. Often families were split up.

Women volunteered to help the wounded. In the North, teams of trained nurses were set up.



Special kit

With its pliers and saw, this box looks like a tool kit. In fact, it was a surgeon's case used during the American Civil War.





IN THE SCHOOLROOM



The blackboard was double-sided. It was on wheels so it could be moved easily.

Until 1870, children in England did not have to go to school. Children from rich families went to school, but poor families could not afford to pay for education. Poor children had to go to work to help their parents. After 1870, the government made school places available to young children for a very small fee. By 1902, education was free and every child between five and thirteen years old had to attend school.

At school, children were taught reading, writing, arithmetic, and religion. The children sat at their desks, chanting spellings and tables over and over again, and copying words onto slates. At other times they did some geography and history, drawing, singing, and physical exercise. Discipline was very strict and children were beaten if they made mistakes in their work.

The globe of the world was used to teach geography to the children.



A wooden hoop used for playing.

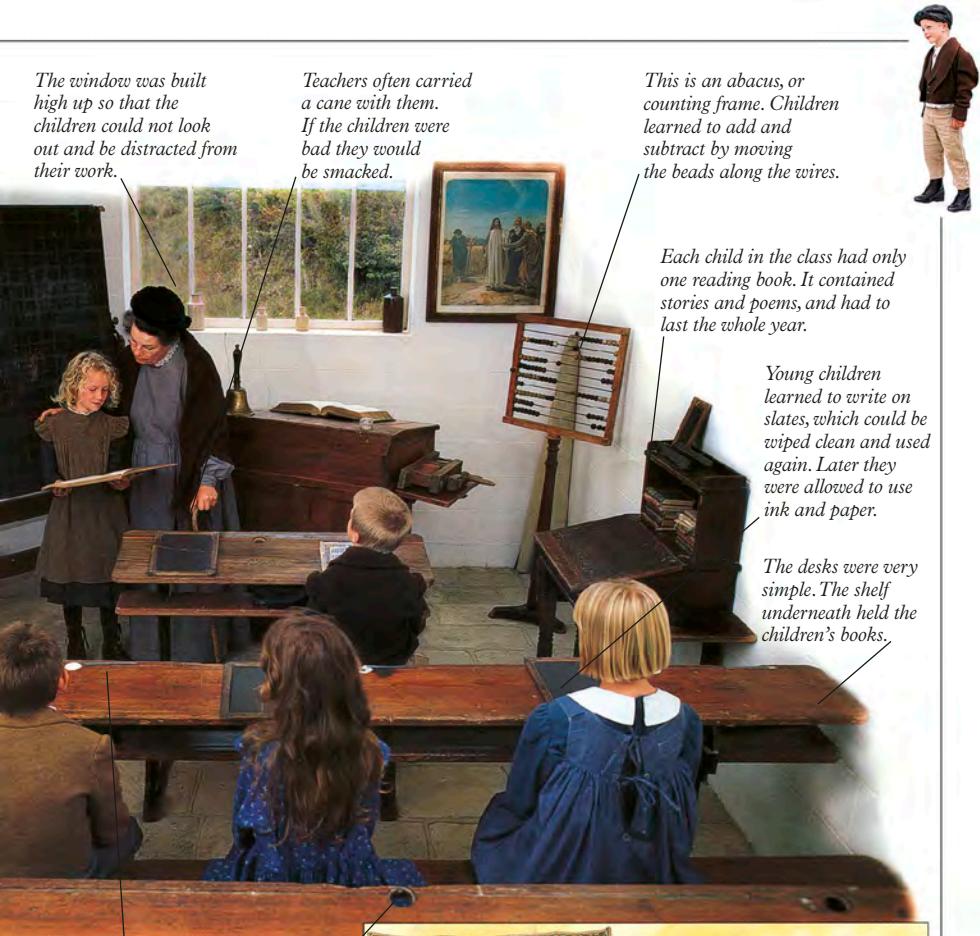
China inkwells in a tray were filled and given out to the older children by a monitor. The children wrote with pen and ink in a special copybook.

The ink to fill the inkwells was kept in a special container that looked like a small watering can.

Playtime

When they were not in school, children amused themselves with outdoor games like the ones played today—marbles, skipping, hopscotch, and football. Hoops were popular, too—they were rolled along the ground, thrown in the air, or whirled around the body.





The window was built high up so that the children could not look out and be distracted from their work.

Teachers often carried a cane with them. If the children were bad they would be smacked.

This is an abacus, or counting frame. Children learned to add and subtract by moving the beads along the wires.



Slate pencils were made of a piece of soft slate, or soapstone, wrapped in paper.

The desks had special holes made in them to hold the inkwells.



Stitch by stitch

Samplers were very popular in schools. They consisted of a piece of embroidery designed to show a girl's skill in using different stitches. Girls began to make them at an early age. They were a way of teaching them the alphabet and their sewing at the same time.



ARTS AND ENTERTAINMENT



Since earliest times, people have entertained themselves with dance, songs, and storytelling. When people lived in small groups, everybody would join together in a dance. Later, the rise of civilization saw the first professional performers, who danced, played music, or acted to please audiences.

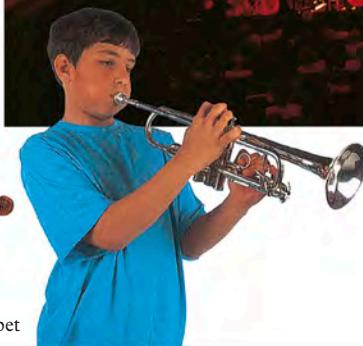
Over time, more types of entertainment were invented. Today we can create and enjoy exciting plays, films, music, and ballets, and amazing photographs, paintings, and sculptures.



Recorder

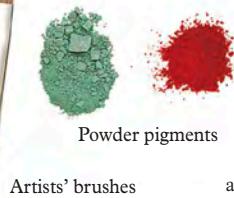


Violin



Trumpet





Artists' brushes

The Swan Queen in the
ballet *Swan Lake*



THEATERS



People have enjoyed going to the theater to watch plays for thousands of years—the first theaters were built by the Greeks about 2,500 years ago.

Stone seats were carved into the hillside.

The actors did not need microphones, because sound carried right up to the back row. Until the 17th century, most plays were staged out in the open. But by the 1650s, bare stages had been replaced by elaborate sets that had to be kept inside, so indoor theaters became common. Lights transformed theaters, too. Realistic acting began with the invention of the spotlight—for the first time, players' expressions could be seen.



It's a miracle

In the Middle Ages, actors from each town performed Bible stories. These were called miracle plays and were about the battle between Good and Evil.



Ancient art

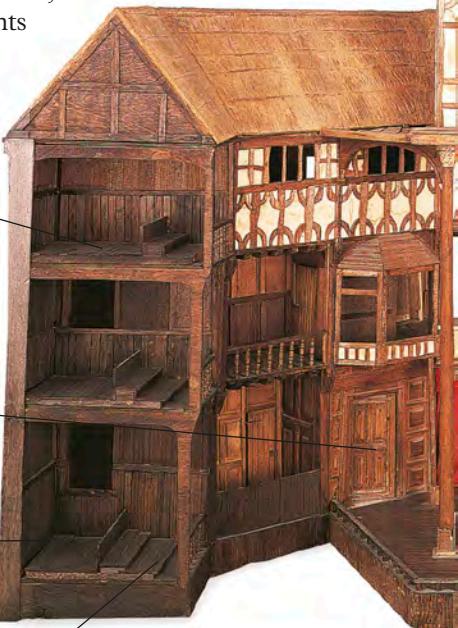
Noh is an old, traditional type of Japanese theater. Religious stories and ancient myths are performed on a stage that has very little scenery. The plays, some of which are more than 500 years old, can go on for as long as six hours!



The upper gallery was about 25 feet (8 meters) above the ground.

Stage door

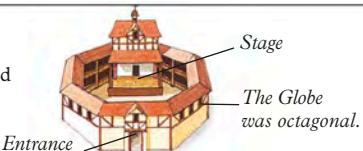
The Globe Theatre was first built in 1599.



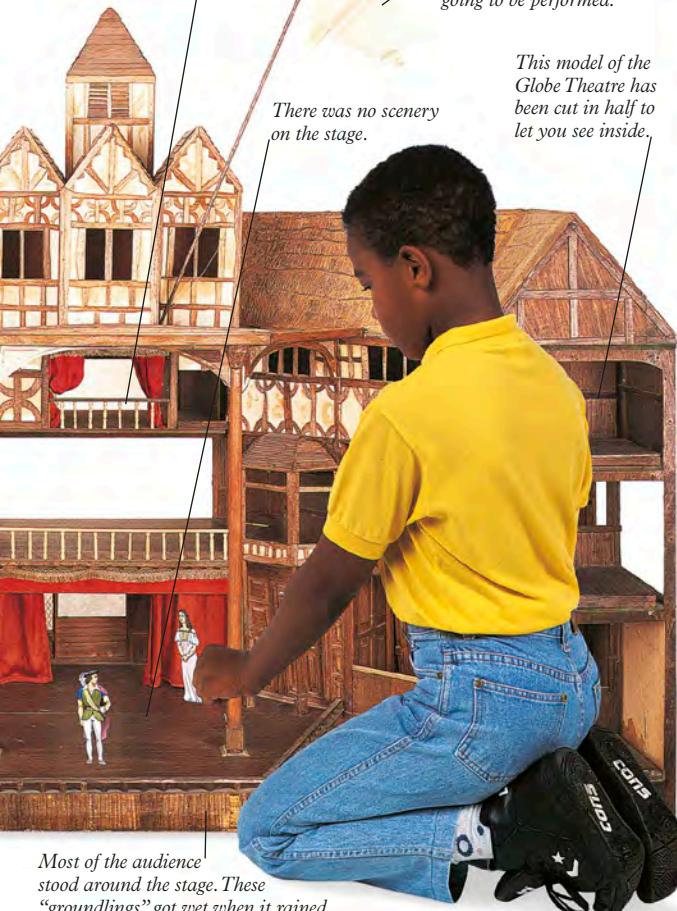
More than 2,000 people could crowd in to watch a play. Only a few could afford to sit in these galleries.

The Globe Theatre

William Shakespeare, the most famous of all playwrights, acted on the Globe's wooden stage. The theater was rebuilt and opened again in June 1997.



Musicians played on this balcony.

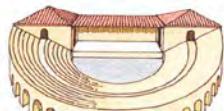


Setting the scene

Theatres come in all sorts of shapes and sizes. Early ones were out in the open. Most modern stages have roofs so that plays can be staged when it is raining.



Greek theater
200 BCE



Roman theater
100 CE



Elizabethan theater
16th century



"Modern" theater
19th century

PLAYS AND PLAYERS



Playwrights write stories, or plays, that are performed on stage by players, called actors and actresses. Molière and Shakespeare both lived more than 300 years ago but their plays, such as *L'Avare* and *Macbeth*, are still popular. Laurence Olivier, one of the last century's most famous actors, starred in *Henry V* by Shakespeare and also in more modern plays, such as *The Entertainer* by John Osborne. Like all good players, he could make an audience believe that what they are seeing is real, not just an act.

The players wear costumes like those worn by rich Italians in the past.



Happy ending
Plays that make people laugh are called comedies. Molière wrote many wonderful plays in the 17th century that are still funny today.

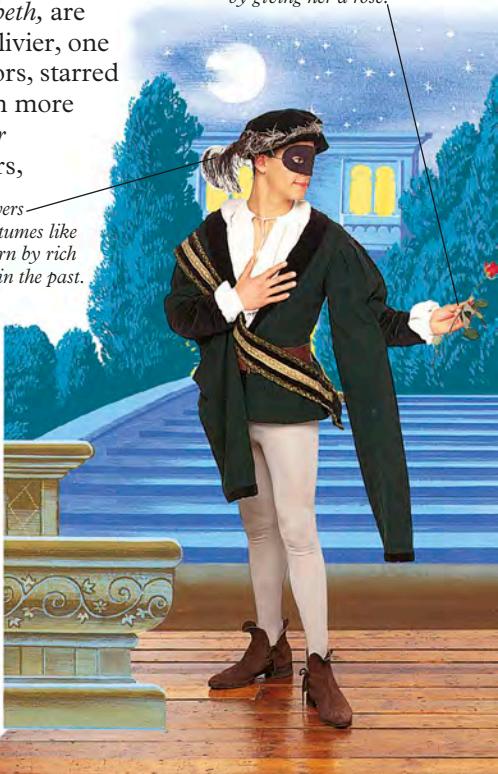


Sad ending
Tragedies are plays with sad endings. *Cat on a Hot Tin Roof* was written by Tennessee Williams and is a famous modern tragedy.



Not a word
Marcel Marceau was a famous French mime artist—he acts out stories without speaking.

The actor playing Romeo shows that he likes Juliet by giving her a rose.



Setting the scene

Romeo and Juliet is one of Shakespeare's tragedies. The couple can never be together because their families hate each other.

These are the first words Romeo ever says to Juliet.

ROMEO (to Juliet, touching her hand)
If I profane with my unworthiest hand
This holy shrine, the gentle sin is this:
My lips, two blushing pilgrims,
ready stand
To smooth that rough touch with a
tender kiss.

95

Juliet replies—she is not upset at him holding her hand.

JULIET
Good pilgrim, you do wrong your hand
too much,
Which mannerly devotion shows in this;
For saints have hands that pilgrims'
hands do touch,

This line is not spoken—it tells the actors what to do.

Makeup magic

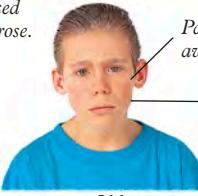
To make an audience believe what they are seeing, players often change the way they look by using makeup.



Young



Going grey



Old

Talcum powder and special white mascara makes brown hair and eyebrows look gray.

Pale powder takes away the rosy cheeks.

Lines are drawn on the face with a special dark pencil.



The actress pretends to be shy, yet pleased to receive the rose.



Staged in the East

Spectacular traditional Chinese plays are known as Peking opera in the West. Every action and color has a special meaning—the costume and makeup color show the sort of person the actor is playing.



MUSIC



Musical sounds can be made with your voice or by playing an instrument. The first instruments were played more than 42,000 years ago—people blew into shells and hollow mammoth bones! Today's instruments are more complicated. The sounds they make can be high or low: this is known as the pitch of the note. The way these sounds are arranged is called the tune. Rhythm is the pattern of long and short notes. A skillful musician can make the same tune sound slow and sleepy, or loud and jazzy.

Music groups



Jazz band



Pop group



String quartet



Beat the clock?

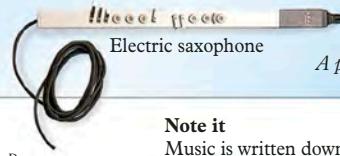
A metronome can tick at different speeds. Musicians listen to it to make sure they are playing at the right speed. This is called keeping the beat.



Electric drum

Wired for sound

Electronic instruments are actually almost silent! When you twang the steel strings on an electric guitar, they vibrate. This movement is changed into tiny electrical signals by pickups beneath the strings. These signals are then increased by an amplifier and finally turned into sounds by an amplifier.



Electric saxophone

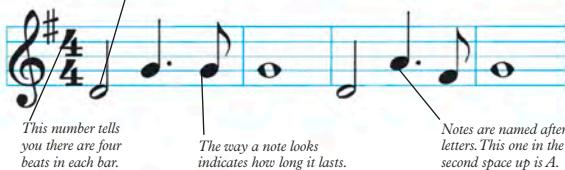
A pickup



Electric guitar

Note it

Music is written down in a special language. Instead of words, there are notes. These are the notes for "Here Comes the Bride."



Deeper notes are written on lower lines or in lower spaces.

This number tells you there are four beats in each bar.

The way a note looks indicates how long it lasts.

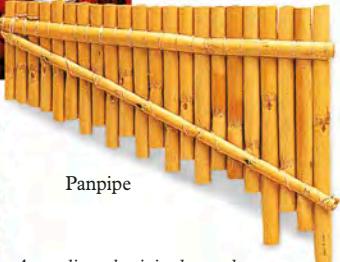
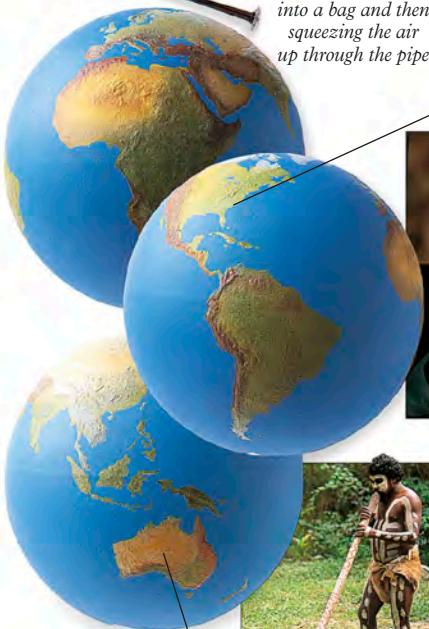
Notes are named after letters. This one in the second space up is A.





A world of music

Different countries and regions have very different instruments and styles of music. This traditional music is played by local people, or folk, so it is often called folk music.

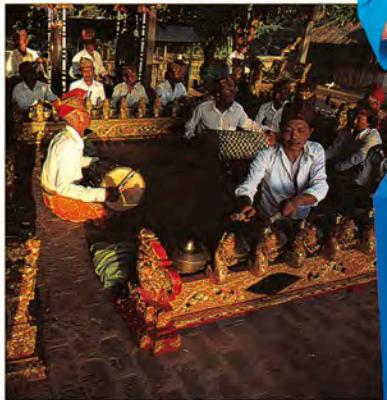




ORCHESTRAS

Many musicians play music in groups called orchestras. Most orchestras have four sections: string, percussion, woodwind, and brass. The different sounds and notes, from as many as 120 instruments in a symphony orchestra, combine to form wonderful music. Orchestras usually play classical music, often written by great composers of the past, such as Mozart and Beethoven.

Percussion players play many different instruments, such as drums, triangles, and gongs.



Set the beat

Most of the instruments in a gamelan orchestra from Indonesia are percussion instruments. They also have bamboo flutes and plucked string instruments.



The leader of an orchestra is always a violin player who sits near the conductor.

Woodwind instruments, including recorders, are played by blowing down a tube that has holes in it.





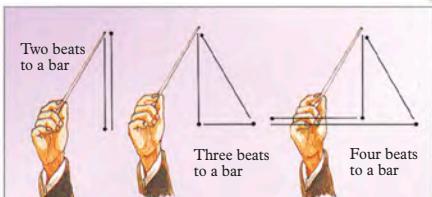
The conductor stands in front of the musicians so that they can see the baton.

The French horn, like a trumpet or a trombone, is a long, curved tube that is made of brass.



Which Section?

The clarinet player is sitting on a yellow seat. By using the key shown below, you can see that a clarinet is a woodwind instrument.



Keeping the beat

If all the instruments in an orchestra played at different speeds it would sound terrible. The musicians keep in time by watching a conductor who waves a baton to the beat of the music.



Short stick, called a baton

This cello, like the violin, is part of the string section. It is played by drawing a bow across the strings.



Child genius

Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart wrote, or composed, more than 600 pieces of music. He completed his first symphony when he was eight years old!

String

Percussion

Woodwind

Brass





DANCE

Dancing is a way of moving your body in time to music. Early peoples danced as a way of uniting and uplifting a group of people. It was not until the 12th century that dancing in pairs became popular. The arrival of the waltz in the 1800s was shocking—it was the first time that couples had held one another closely as they danced. In the

1960s dance changed again, when many people began to dance solo, often making up their own moves instead of following set steps.



Proud to dance

The spectacular flamenco dance comes from the gypsy peoples of Spain. The dancers hold their heads up high as they stamp their feet and turn around. The women wear long, colorful dresses, but the men wear black.



This is an imaginary "bow."

The dancer pulls back an "arrow."

There are about 55 specific finger positions—each one has a different meaning.



Head over heels

Jive dancing is a fast and lively couple dance. The dancers twist, spin, jump, leap around—whatever the music makes them feel like doing!

Taps are attached to the heel and toe of each shoe.



Tap, tap, tap

Fred Astaire was one of the most famous dancers of the 20th century. He tap-danced his way through many movies. Small pieces of metal, called taps, were attached to the soles of his shoes. When his feet touched the ground, you could hear the quick clatter of clicking metal.



Classical Indian dancers use their entire body. Their neck, wrists, and even their eyes move to the rhythm of the music.



As she pretends to put a clip in her hair, the dancer looks into the "mirror."

Her hand is held out flat to form a "mirror."

Moves matter

Classical Indian dance has been performed for more than one thousand years. Sometimes the dancers just create shapes and patterns with their body. In other dances they use hand movements and mime to tell stories of Hindu gods.

She stamps her bare foot in time to the drumbeat of an instrument called a tabla.

The pleats in the special dance dress let the dancer move freely.

One, two, three

The waltz is danced in triple time—each bar of music has three beats. As the dancers swirl around and around they bring their feet together once every three steps.





BALLET

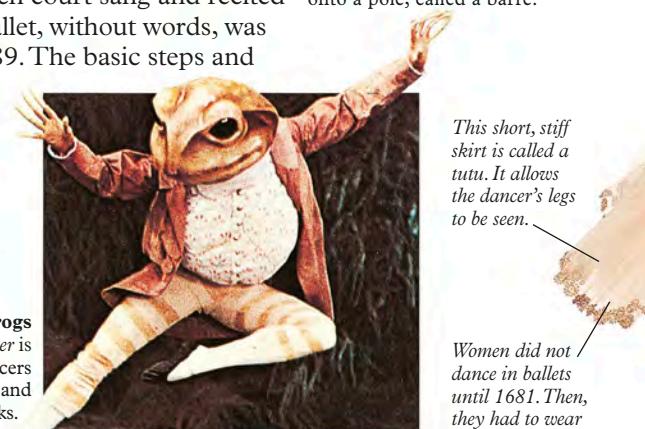


Louis XIV

Ballet is a graceful type of dance that uses particular positions and steps. It began in Italy but was developed by the French into the style you see today. Louis XIV of France started the first ballet school in 1661. But the dancers in his "ballets" at the French court sang and recited poems! The first true ballet, without words, was not performed until 1789. The basic steps and jumps taught by Louis' school are still used today—which is why many of them have French names. *Glisser* means to glide, and *pas de chat* means cat step!

Hopping frogs

The Tales of Beatrix Potter is an amazing ballet. The dancers wear wonderful costumes and animal masks.

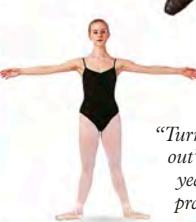


This short, stiff skirt is called a tutu. It allows the dancer's legs to be seen.

Women did not dance in ballets until 1681. Then, they had to wear long, flowing dresses.



First position
(en première)



Second position
(en seconde)

"Turning feet out" takes years of practice.



Third position
(en troisième)



Fourth position
(en quatrième)



Fifth position
(en cinquième)

The five positions

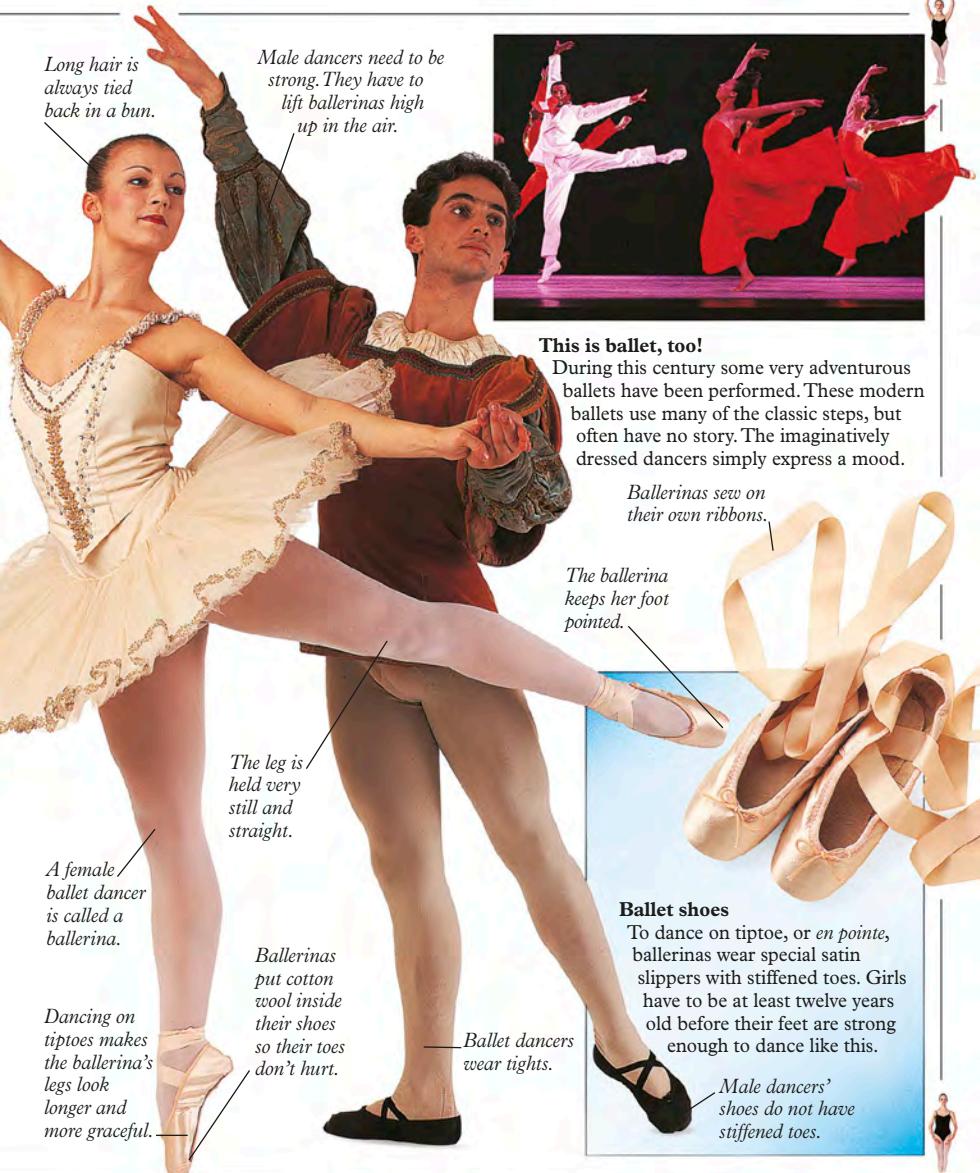
In the 17th century, a ballet teacher named Beauchamps developed five feet positions that enabled dancers to keep their balance and still look elegant. Later, arm positions were added too. Most ballet steps begin or end with one of these positions.



At the barre

Ballet dancers must warm up their muscles before they dance. They do this by stretching while holding onto a pole, called a barre.





This is ballet, too!

During this century some very adventurous ballets have been performed. These modern ballets use many of the classic steps, but often have no story. The imaginatively dressed dancers simply express a mood.





OPERA



Inside Paris opera house



Smashing note

When you rub your finger around the rim of a glass it makes a high sound. If a person with a strong voice sings this note loudly, and for a long time, the sound waves can shatter the glass!



Stylish surroundings

Operas are usually staged in special buildings that are designed to help the whole audience hear the sound clearly. The Sydney opera house in Australia is one of the most famous in the world. It was finished in 1973.

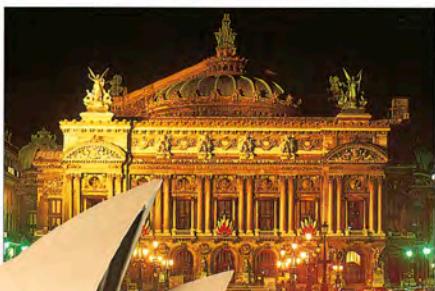
The jagged roof looks like waves or the sails on a yacht.

Sydney opera house model

The main concert hall holds more than 2,000 people.

Operas mix music with theater in a most spectacular way. The performers on stage act out a story, but instead of speaking the words they sing them. A performance usually begins with an overture. This is a piece of catchy music that features snatches of the tunes that will be heard during the rest

of the opera. As well as singing the story, the stars on the stage also perform solo songs, called arias. These are often the most beautiful songs.



Paris opera house





Crowded stage
Operas sometimes have spectacular stage sets and, as well as the soloists, a large group of singers, called the chorus.



Dressed to impress

Opera singers wear incredible costumes to play their parts. In *The Cunning Little Vixen* their makeup is amazing, too.



Foxy tale

Operas tell stories. *The Cunning Little Vixen*, by Leoš Janáček, is about a crafty female fox who escapes from a forester and has many exciting adventures.

A choice of voices



The soprano is the highest female voice. It is a brilliant and exciting sound.



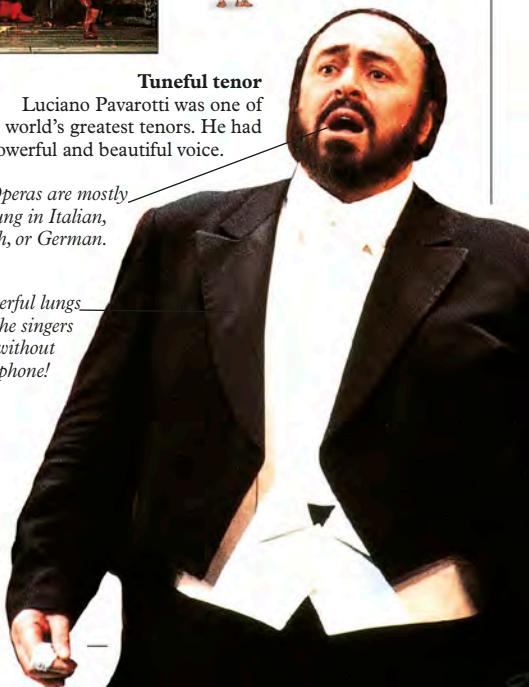
The contralto, or alto, has a slightly lower voice than the soprano. It has a warmer tone.



The tenors sing many of the important male songs in an opera.



The bass sings the lowest notes. His voice is deep and strong.



Tuneful tenor

Luciano Pavarotti was one of the world's greatest tenors. He had a powerful and beautiful voice.

Operas are mostly sung in Italian, French, or German.

Powerful lungs enable the singers to sing without a microphone!

PAINTING



This cave painting is believed to be 30,000 years old.

Painting began about 40,000 years ago when people painted pictures of bulls, horses, and antelopes on the walls of their caves. We will never be sure why they did this—perhaps it was to make magic and bring people luck in their hunting. Since then,

artists have painted pictures to record events, to honor heroes and heroines, to make people wonder about the world, to tell stories, or simply for pleasure. All artists have their own painting style, and you may not like them all—it's simply up to you.



King Ramses II



by an unknown Egyptian artist

Lucrezia Panciatichi



by Il Bronzino

Self-portrait



by Vincent Van Gogh

This says "Jan van Eyck was here, 1434." It may be to prove the artist was a witness to the marriage.



If you look closely in the mirror you can see the reflections of two other people. Perhaps one is the artist himself.





Things that are farther away look smaller, so the artist has made the shoes in the front bigger than those in the back. This gives the picture depth.



by Pablo Picasso

The Arnolfini Marriage, painted by Jan van Eyck in 1434



Looking for clues

This painting records a couple's marriage. But if you look closely you will see it is much more than just a wedding picture.

One candle is left to burn, even though it is daylight, to show that the couple will always love each other.

Like the merchant, his wife is wearing expensive clothes. It was the fashion to hold your skirts this way.



Action painting

In this painting, modern American artist Jackson Pollock was not trying to show objects or people, but feelings. He worked by dripping and splattering paint on the canvas.

Son of Man

Marilyn Monroe



by René Magritte



by Andy Warhol



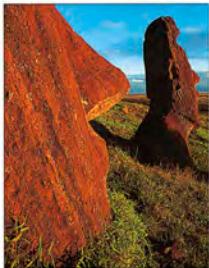
The light shines on the couple's hands, and the artist has shown every tiny line.

Painting portraits

For thousands of years artists have enjoyed painting pictures of people. Not all of them painted the person true to life—there are many different styles of painting.



SCULPTURE



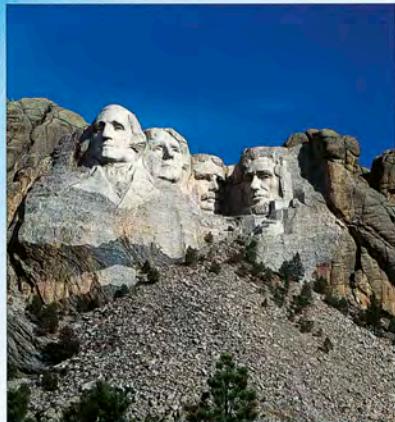
Mystery from the past

Strange statues were carved on Easter Island more than 500 years ago. Nobody knows for sure how the heavy heads were moved into place.

Sculptures are three-dimensional, not flat like paintings. Bricks, plastic, even rubber tires, have all been used by sculptors, but the traditional materials are wood, stone, bronze, and clay. Some sculptors build up their image by adding small pieces of material, such as clay. Others start with a big block of wood or stone and cut away material. When Michelangelo carved, it was as if he was setting free somebody who was trapped in the stone!



Many of Moore's sculptures are based on natural shapes, such as smooth pebbles.



Mountain men

Mount Rushmore has the heads of four American Presidents cut into it. It took 14 years to blast and drill Presidents Washington, Jefferson, Roosevelt, and Lincoln out of the rock.

In touch with nature

Some of the sculptures created by Henry Moore (1898–1986) look like people, but many are just interesting shapes.

This rounded sculpture is meant to be touched.

If you walk around this sculpture you see different, exciting shapes.



Marble masterpiece

This statue, called *David*, was created by the great Italian artist Michelangelo (1475–1564).

David is
about three
times as tall
as you are!

This statue is based on the Bible story about David and Goliath. David is carrying the sling that he used to kill the giant.

Sculptors often work in marble because it does not splinter like other sorts of stone.

Michelangelo studied how the human body works so that he could make his statue look lifelike.



Adding art

Small lumps of clay are added to build up the face.

This statue was made from one big block of white marble.

Freeing David

Michelangelo chipped out the statue with a hammer and chisel.



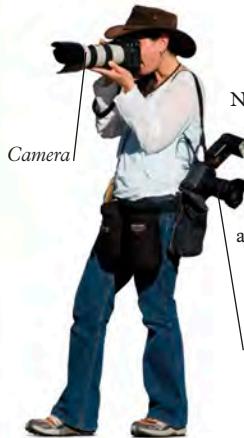
It's a wrap

Modern sculptors use all sorts of materials to create works of art. In 1983, Christo surrounded eleven islands with more than six million square feet of pink, woven, floating fabric.



PHOTOGRAPHY

Every day, all around the world, billions of photographs are taken. These are not just photos of birthdays and holidays, but pictures of goals being scored, models in studios, and important news events. All photographs are made in much the same way as when the process was invented more than 150 years ago. A camera is basically a box with a hole in it. Light that enters through this hole is captured as a digital image you can see on a screen, but cameras originally used film. Lots of photos are now taken on mobile phones.



Right time, right place
News photographers have to be ready for action all the time. They may not get a second chance to capture an amazing event or famous person.



Click—A sinking bus is snapped

Camera Collection



35mm professional camera



High-quality studio camera



Instant camera



Underwater camera



Say cheese!

In early photographs, it took a long time for the picture to form. People had to stay still for up to 20 minutes to keep the picture from blurring.

Lights, camera, keep still!

Wind, rain, and bad light can ruin your shots when you take pictures outside. This is why photographers work in studios. Many of the pictures in this book were taken in a studio.

The person having their photo taken is called the model.

White paper reflects light back onto the model.

The makeup artist gets the model ready to be photographed.

The photographer takes pictures when the model is in the right position.

The flash is much bigger than the flash on your camera!



Reflecting umbrellas produce a diffused and soft light due to the larger size of the reflecting surface.

This camera is connected to a laptop by a cable. This allows the photographer to look at the images in more detail.

Three-legged frames or tripods prevent the camera and equipment from moving around.

Different camera lenses

FILMS

From the first flickery film, people have loved the world of movie make-believe. The early films were made in black and white and did not have any sound. They were called silent movies. In the theater, a pianist played along with the film and the audience had to read words on the screen. It was not until 1927 that the first "talkie," called *The Jazz Singer*, came out. Color films, such as *The Wizard of Oz* were made in 1939, but only became common in the 1950s.



Moving pictures

Most films are now shot digitally, but like the first films, they are made of many still pictures called frames. The frames pass before your eyes so quickly that the pictures look as if they are moving.

Silent star

Charlie Chaplin (1889–1977) was one of the first movie stars. He starred in more than 80 films. His most famous character, "the Tramp" had a funny walk.



Creative hub

Almost 2,000 films a year are made in India—more than double the number made in Hollywood. Streets in Mumbai and Delhi are lined with bright posters that advertise these dramatic films.



A star is born

The dry weather in California is ideal for filming. Hollywood, once a sleepy suburb of Los Angeles, was the center of the American film industry by 1920.



Cue clapboard

When a clapboard is clicked shut it is seen on the film and heard on the soundtrack. The pictures and words can then be matched.



The lighting crew sets up the lights so that the actor looks as if he is outside and not inside a bright studio.



Films for everyone



Romance



Western



Horror



Science fiction

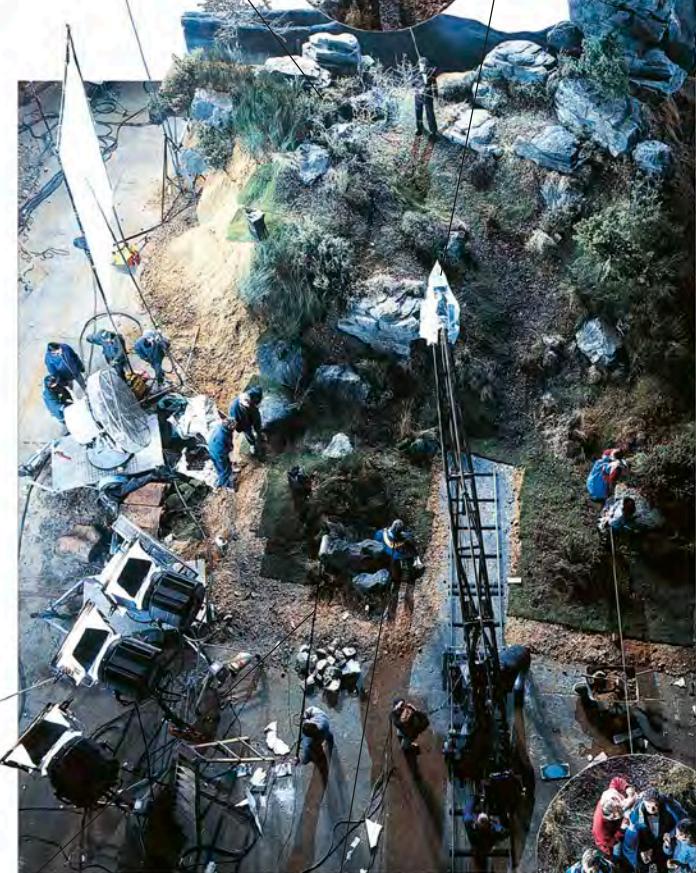
*Between shots,
the makeup
artists make sure
that the actor
looks right.*



Rain machine

This "mountain"
was built inside
a studio.

The camera rolls
forward on a wheeled
truck called a dolly.



*This pole, which has a microphone
on the end of it, is called a boom.
It is held up high so that it does
not appear in the film.*

*The director is in charge
of shooting the film.*



SPECIAL EFFECTS

Have you ever wondered how alien worlds are filmed, or how actors and actresses survive death-defying leaps? These amazing events are not real, they are created by special effects. With CGI (computer-generated imagery), clever camera work, and special equipment, such as wind machines, film directors can make us believe that what we are seeing is real.

These tricks of the trade are used when shooting the action in the normal way would be too expensive, too dangerous, or just impossible!



A wind machine can make a gentle breeze or a howling gale.

Cuew

Filmmakers can't wait for the right weather.

In this scene from *The Mosquito Coast*, giant fans whipped up the waves that battered the boat.



Size isn't everything
This tiny, detailed model of a Y-wing spaceship appeared in *Return of the Jedi*. On screen it looked big enough to carry people!

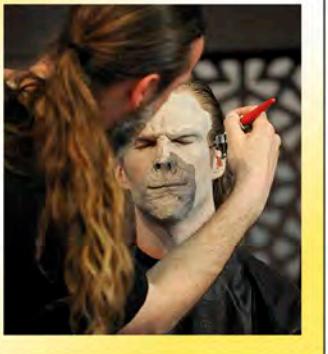


Virtual reality

Green screens are an important part of making special effects for television or film. The process is called chroma-key and it uses technology to superimpose actors and props onto a virtual background.



Total transformation
Prosthetic makeup is used in television and film to turn actors into all kinds of characters. A sculpture of the character is created, which is then covered with plaster to make a mold. Liquid latex is poured into this to make the prosthetic; this is glued to the actor's face, then makeup is used to cover all the edges.



Finished movie

Fire!

Filmmakers don't just throw bombs to make flames and smoke. Explosions are carefully set up and controlled.

Smoke cylinders

This can makes orange smoke.

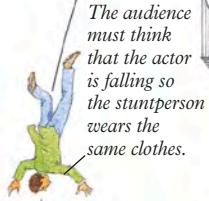


Falling for you

Jumping from a high building is dangerous and difficult! In films, it is either digitally simulated or done by experts, called stuntpeople. They take the place of the actor who is supposed to be falling to the ground in the story.

Actor

The highly trained stuntperson leaps from the building.



The stuntperson waves their legs and arms around, to look as though they are terrified.



The camera stops running when the stuntperson prepares to land.

The stuntperson twists in the air so that their shoulders will hit the bag first.



The stuntperson hits the soft airbag at more than 50 miles per hour (80 km per hour)!

FOOD AND FARMING

Lots of people buy food in stores or from markets, but it has probably been produced somewhere far away. This could be a large farm in the country, or a small plantation halfway around the world.

We eat some things—fruit, raw vegetables, and nuts, for example—just as they are picked. Other types of food have lots of things done to them before we put them on the

table. Cocoa beans, for example, which grow in huge pods on cacao trees, are made into delicious chocolate. Grains of

Chocolate cake wheat are threshed to separate them from their husks, then milled into flour. Flour is used to make the bread, biscuits, and pastry that lots of people eat every day.



Baby pigs
are called
piglets.



Baby sheep
are called lambs.





Broccoli
farming



Wheat and
bread



Fruit and vegetables



Many different kinds of cheese are
made from milk.



Tractor

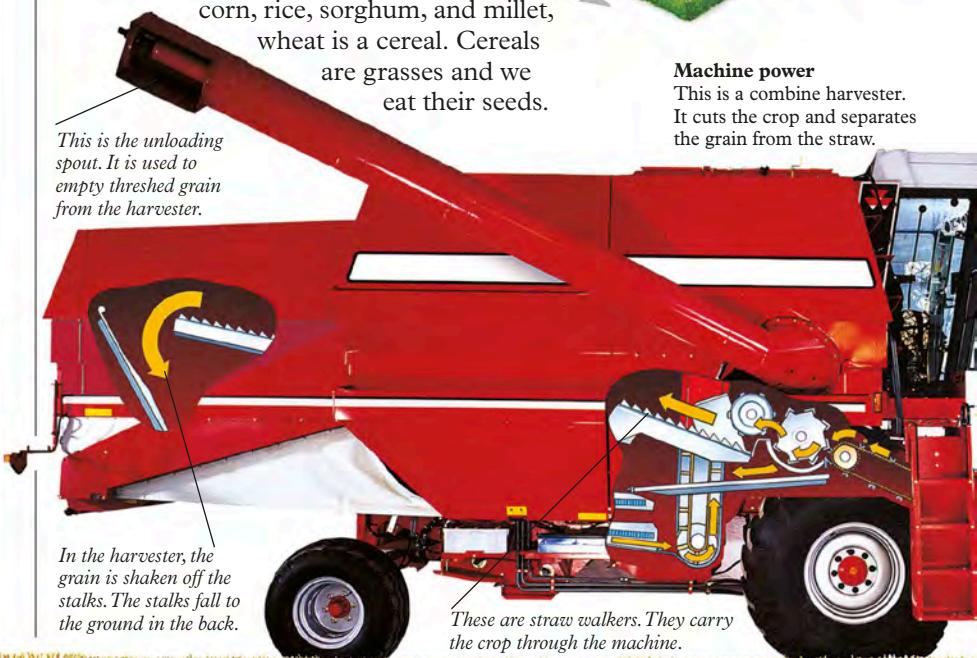


WHEAT

What have breakfast cereals, breads, cakes, pastries, pasta, and couscous all got in common? The answer is that they are made out of wheat, the most important crop in the world. Wheat is so important that it is known as a staple food. It is a main everyday source of food for more than 35 percent of the world's people. Like barley, oats, rye,

corn, rice, sorghum, and millet, wheat is a cereal. Cereals are grasses and we eat their seeds.

This is the unloading spout. It is used to empty threshed grain from the harvester.



Crop rotation

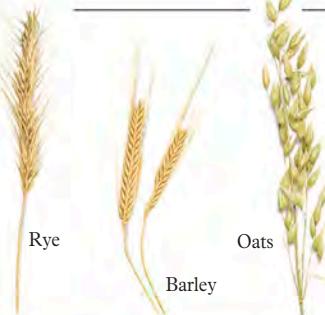
If the same crop is grown on the same land year after year, the soil may lose its fertility and pests and diseases build up. The farmer can prevent this by changing the crops grown each year. In the first year, rapeseed may be grown, then wheat, field beans, wheat, and barley.

Machine power

This is a combine harvester. It cuts the crop and separates the grain from the straw.

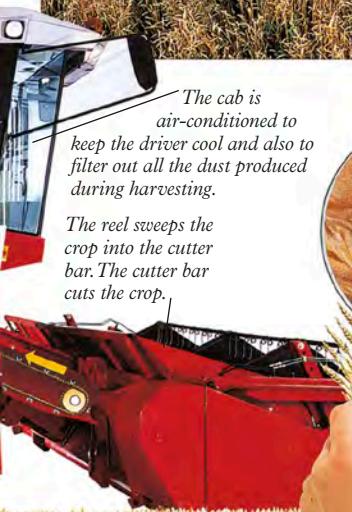
Edible ears

Other cereal crops include oats, barley, and rye. Like wheat, these plants have an "ear" of grain on each stem. Each grain is protected by a husk and inside the husk is the seed. The grain can be eaten whole or ground into flour.



The cab is air-conditioned to keep the driver cool and also to filter out all the dust produced during harvesting.

The reel sweeps the crop into the cutter bar. The cutter bar cuts the crop.



An ear of wheat is made up of 40 to 60 grains. When wheat is ripe and ready for harvesting, it turns golden yellow.

Home sweet home
The wheatfield is a world of its own. It is home to mammals, insects, birds, and wild flowers.



Wheat products

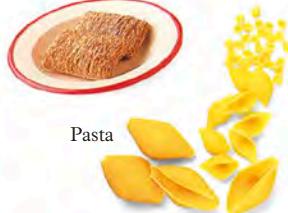
Wheat can be used for many different foods. You would never guess these items are all made from the same ingredient.

Wheat germ



Cracked wheat

Breakfast cereal



Pasta

Monsters on the move

These wheat fields in the prairies of Manitoba, Canada, are so vast that several combine harvesters can work the fields at the same time.

An ear of wheat is made up of 40 to 60 grains. When wheat is ripe and ready for harvesting, it turns golden yellow.

Home sweet home
The wheatfield is a world of its own. It is home to mammals, insects, birds, and wild flowers.





CORN



In many tropical and subtropical countries sweet corn is the main food that people eat. It is eaten as a vegetable or ground into flour or cornmeal. Corn is also made into oil for cooking and for salad dressings. Corn needs lots of sunshine to grow—it will grow in hot climates but also in cooler, mild ones, as long as there is plenty of sun. However, the varieties of corn grown in these different climates are not the same.

These long, soft threads are called the silk.



Pest problems
In warm and tropical areas, one of the pests most feared by farmers is the locust. They travel in huge swarms of more than 40 billion insects, stripping plants of their leaves and stems as they feed. Locusts can destroy crops and cause famine and starvation.

The flower at the top of the plant is called the tassel.

This is the stalk.

Some kinds of corn have stalks as high as 20 feet (six meters).

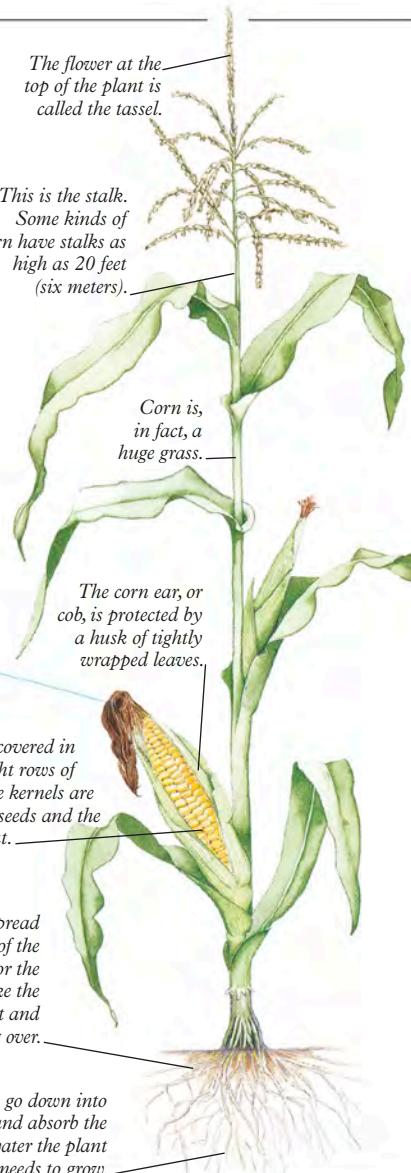
Corn is, in fact, a huge grass.

The corn ear, or cob, is protected by a husk of tightly wrapped leaves.

The cob is covered in neat, straight rows of kernels. The kernels are the plant's seeds and the part you eat.

Short side roots spread over the surface of the soil. They anchor the tall plant like the ropes of a tent and stop it from falling over.

Deep roots go down into the soil and absorb the food and water the plant needs to grow.





Sun ripened
Corn is the staple food of the warmer parts of North, Central, and South America, and also of Africa. It can be grown in huge fields with the help of machinery, or tended by hand.

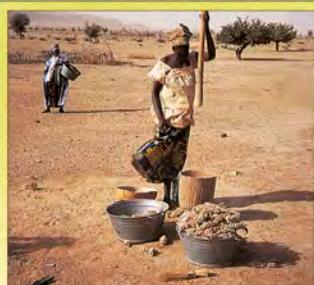
Mountain of corn

After the corn has been harvested, it is sorted. Some will be kept as seed for the next crop, some kept for food, and some used as animal feed.



Amazing corn

Corn comes in all sorts of colors and it may even be striped, streaked, speckled, or spotted.



Tough grains

In dry parts of Africa and Asia, people mainly eat sorghum and millet. These cereals are tough and will grow with little water. This woman is pounding sorghum grain. It is mixed with water or milk until it becomes soft and sticky, like semolina. Sorghum is eaten with spicy stews, which give it flavor. It is also ground into flour. Millet is cooked like oatmeal, baked into a flat bread, or used in soups and stews.

Corn foods



Sweetcorn



Breakfast cereal



Tortilla chips



Taco



Corn oil



RICE

Like corn and wheat, rice is a staple food. It is the main food of almost half the world's population. As much as 90 percent of the world's rice is grown in Asia. However, the Asian countries eat most of what they grow. The US also produces huge amounts of rice, but sells a lot of what it grows to the rest of the world.

How the rice plant is used

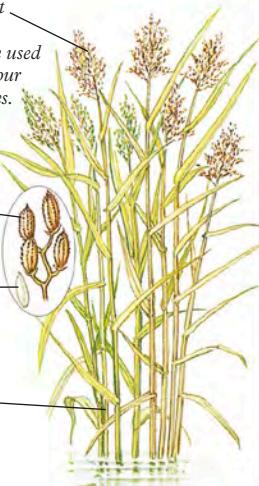
The grain is the part of the plant we eat.

Damaged grains are used to make beer, and flour for cake and noodles.

Husks are used as animal feed or to make fertilizer.

Grain —

The stems are woven into baskets, mats, and hats.



Rice is a swamp plant. It grows with its roots in water. It has hollow stems which take oxygen to the roots.



In Asia, the work of sowing, planting out the seedlings, and harvesting the rice is usually done by hand.



Preparing the fields

The paddy fields are flooded, plowed, raked, and flattened. In Asia, buffaloes are sometimes still used to do the heavy work.



Planting out

The presprouted seedlings are moved to the paddy fields. They are planted far apart so they have plenty of space to grow.



While water helps the rice to grow, it kills off weeds that can't grow in such watery conditions.



Machine power

In the US, growing rice is highly mechanized. Tractors prepare the fields, the seed may be sown from airplanes, and combine harvesters gather the ripe plants.



Safekeeping

Special buildings are used to store the rice until it is needed. They are called granaries. A granary keeps the grain dry and safe from hungry animals.



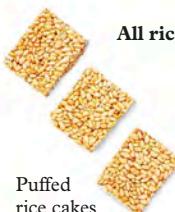
Harvesting

The rice is ready for harvesting in three to six months. The fields are drained and the plants cut down, tied in bundles, and left to dry.



Winnowing

The rice is beaten to remove the grains. The grains are crushed and then sieved and tossed to remove any fine pieces of husk.



Puffed rice cakes



Rice noodles



Sticky rice cakes



Rice paper

VEGETABLE OILS



Vegetable oils are made from the seeds and fruits of many plants growing all over the world, from tiny

sesame seeds to big, juicy coconuts. The oils are used for cooking, as salad dressings, and to make cooking fats and margarine. Soybeans are the most important source of oil worldwide, especially in the US. In western Europe, the oil most widely produced is rapeseed oil.



Harvesting

Olives are picked in the fall when they are ripe. They are shaken from the trees and gathered up, usually by hand. Next, the olives are sorted out to remove the leaves and twigs, and taken to be pressed.



How olive oil is made

The olives are ground to a thick paste which is spread onto special mats. The mats are then layered up on the pressing machine which will gently squeeze them to produce olive oil.

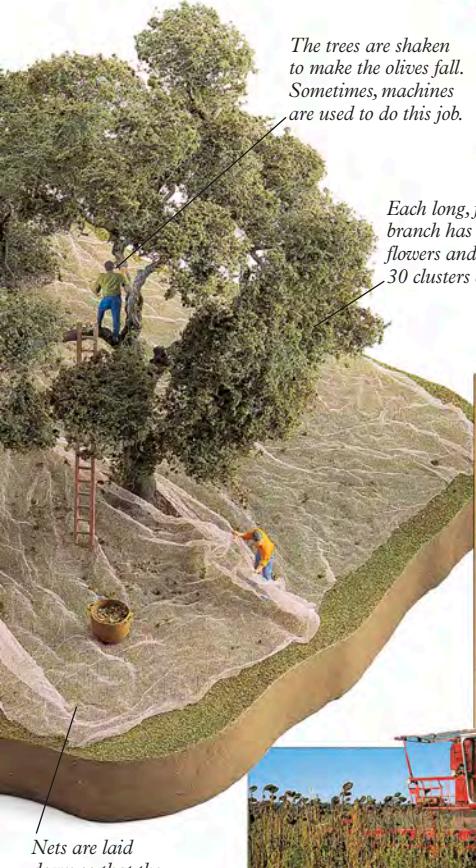


Olive trees are often quite small but can live for hundreds of years. They develop very wrinkled, knotty trunks.

Olive trees are planted in rows. Fields of olive trees are called groves.

Edible olives

There are many varieties of olives—black and green, large and small. Most are used for making oil, but some are eaten whole, too. Raw olives are very bitter, but once they have been treated, fermented, and pickled, they taste delicious!



The trees are shaken to make the olives fall. Sometimes, machines are used to do this job.

Each long, flexible branch has lots of flowers and about 30 clusters of fruit.

Nets are laid down so that the fallen fruit can be gathered easily.

Surprising sources

Oil can be produced from lots of very different fruits and seeds.



Groundnuts
(Peanuts)



Cottonseeds



Sesame seeds



Rapeseed



Soybeans

Sunflower oil

Every sunflower is made up of hundreds of tiny flowers, surrounded by a fringe of petals. It is the seeds of the flowers that are rich in oil. Sunflowers are ready for harvesting when the flowers are dead and the heads have dried out. Sunflower oil is good for cooking oil, salad oil, and for making margarine.





CATTLE AND DAIRY FARMING

Cattle are very popular domesticated animals because they provide us with a lot of food. They are kept for their meat, which is called beef, and also for their milk. Milk is full of calcium and protein, which makes it a very complete and nourishing food.

Because of this, milk-giving animals are kept all over the world—but they are not always cows. Goats, sheep, camels, reindeer, and llamas give us milk, too!

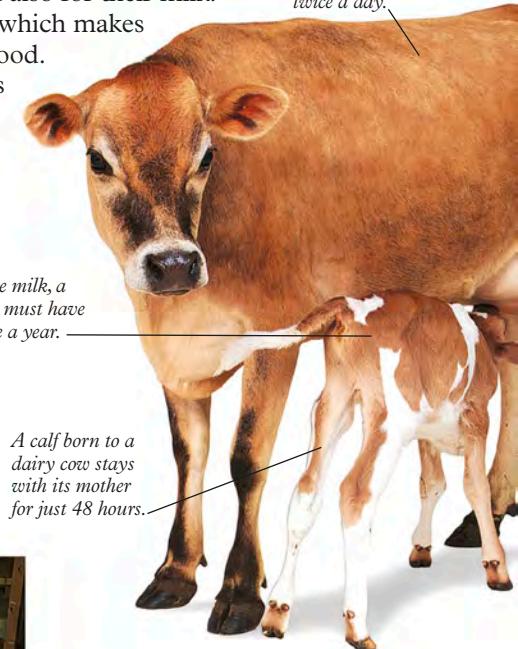
A cow gives milk for ten months of the year, then she rests for two months. Most cows are milked twice a day.



To produce milk, a dairy cow must have a calf once a year.

Milky ways

To make just two pounds (one kilogram) of butter, you need around six gallons (22 liters) of milk! The liquid that is left over is buttermilk.



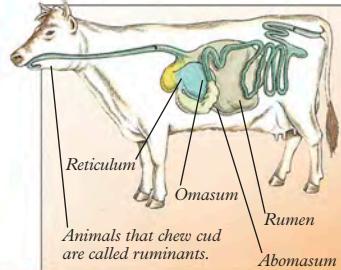
A calf born to a dairy cow stays with its mother for just 48 hours.



Hard cheese!

Goods made from milk, such as butter, cheese, yogurt, and cream, are known as dairy products.

Making cheese is the best way to turn milk into a food that can be stored for some time. Thousands of different cheeses are made all over the world. Soft, creamy cheeses must be eaten promptly, but hard, crumbly cheeses will last for months and even years!



Second helping

Cows eat grass without chewing it properly. It goes to the rumen and reticulum to be broken down into cud. The cow coughs this up and chews it again. When it is swallowed, the cud goes through the stomachs in turn, being finally digested in the abomasum.



In the milking parlor

When cows are milked, special suckers are attached to the teats. They squeeze the milk gently from the cow just like a calf does. A cow can give between 7 and 9 gallons of milk every day.

Bred for beef
Big, heavy breeds of cattle are kept for beef because they have more meat on them. The world's largest herds of beef cattle are found in North and South America. Here there are lots of wide-open spaces where the cattle can graze until they are fat and ready for eating.



Dairy cattle



Holstein Friesian



Jersey

Beef cattle

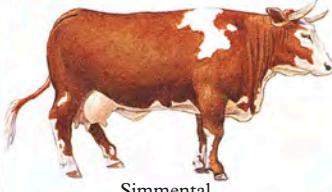


Hereford



Charolais

Dairy and beef



Simmental



SHEEP



Sheep are raised for their meat, for the foods that can be made from their milk, and for their wool. There are more than 200 breeds of sheep and different sorts are able to live in very different places—in lands that are hot with little water, in areas that are cold and wet, in the lowlands, and on the hills. The kind of place where it lives affects the quality of the sheep's meat and wool.

Sheep produce

Sheep provide yogurt and cheese, and wool for clothing. The wool contains a fat called lanolin. It is used in ointments and hand creams.

Lanolin



Yogurt



Cheese



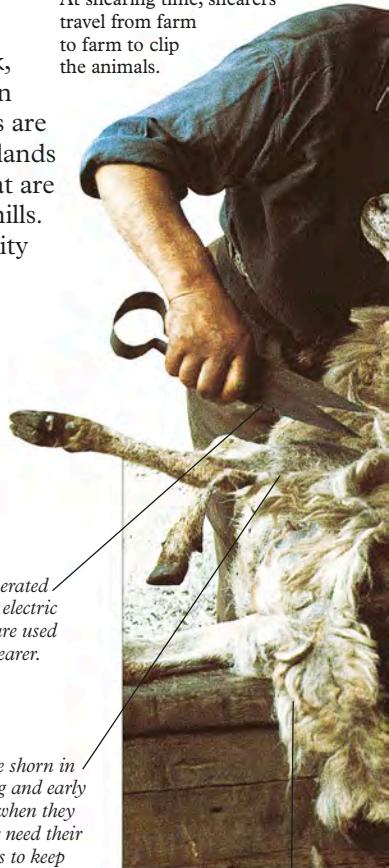
Milk



It takes the wool from one average-sized fleece to make this sweater.

All in a day's work

An experienced shearer can shear a lot of sheep in one day. At shearing time, shearers travel from farm to farm to clip the animals.



Hand-operated shears or electric clippers are used by the shearer.

Sheep are shorn in the spring and early summer when they no longer need their long coats to keep them warm.

The fleece is made into wool for knitting and for making carpets and fabrics. Sometimes, it is even used to fill mattresses.



The shearer shears the sheep so that the fleece comes off in one piece.

Bathtime

Once or twice a year, the farmer drives the sheep through a chemical dip. This keeps them free of pests and diseases.



Domestic sheep



Suffolk



Mummy!

Some lambs are orphaned or not wanted by their mother. These may be bottle-fed by the farmer or shepherd, or adopted by another ewe.



Wensleydale



Karakul

Working dogs

Dogs are used to gather the sheep in flocks and move them from place to place. Sheepdogs naturally like to herd animals, but they need to be trained to follow instructions. The shepherd controls the dog using special calls and whistles.



Sheep are timid, so the dog will run low in the grass to avoid frightening them.



Scottish blackface

In a spin

To produce wool for knitting or weaving, many strands are twisted together to make one long thread. Spinning was first done by hand using a spindle. Later, the spindle was attached to a wheel, and wool could be spun more quickly. Now, most spinning is done by machine.

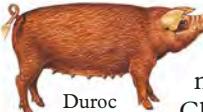


Wild sheep



Bighorn

PIGS



Duroc

Domestic pigs are mainly kept for their meat, especially in China, which has the most pigs in the world. Pigs raised for their meat are usually kept in pens and are fed on cereals, potatoes, fish meal, and skimmed milk. Pigs kept for breeding often live outdoors in fields. The farmer feeds them but they also search for their own food. They like worms, snails, roots, and plants.

A female pig is
called a sow.



Intensive Farming

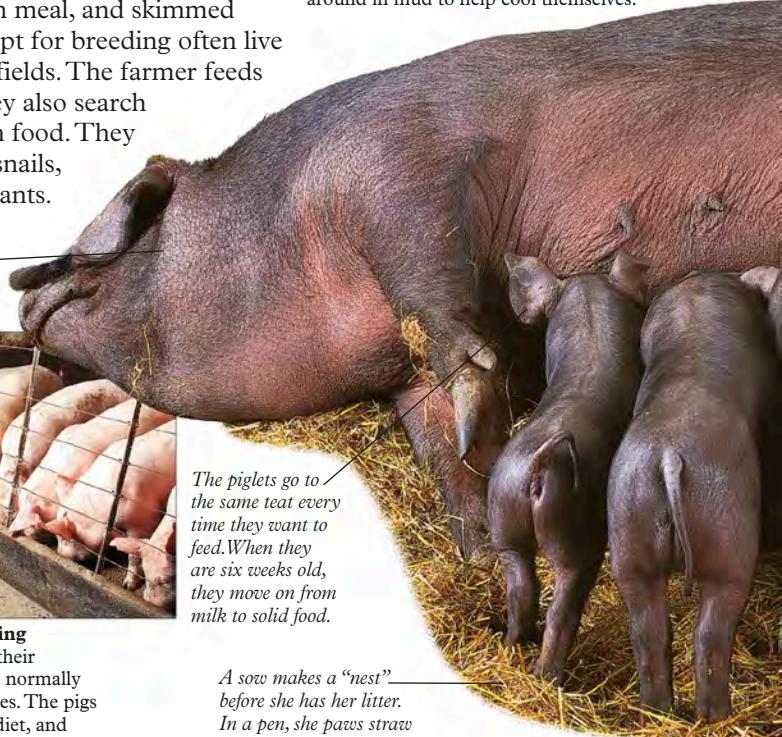
When pigs leave their mothers, they are normally housed in piggeries. The pigs are fed a special diet, and because they have less space to run around, they put on weight quickly.

The piglets go to the same teat every time they want to feed. When they are six weeks old, they move on from milk to solid food.



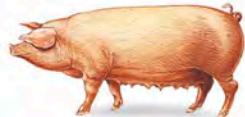
Mud, glorious mud

Despite their reputation, pigs are not dirty animals. They cannot sweat so in hot weather they roll around in mud to help cool themselves.



A sow makes a "nest" before she has her litter. In a pen, she paws straw into a heap. In a field, she lines a hole with leaves and straw.

Pig parade



Landrace



British saddleback



Piétrain



Vietnamese potbellied pig



Domestic pigs don't have a hairy coat to protect them—just a few short bristles. Because of this, pink pigs can get sunburned. Black pigs are protected by their dark skin.



A sow usually has about ten to twelve piglets in a litter. She can have more than two litters every year.



Pig products

The meat from pigs, which is called pork, is used to make a variety of foods, including sausages, spiced meats, and all kinds of hams.

The last piglet born is often smaller and weaker than the rest. It is called the "runt" and it might not survive.

Detective work

Pigs have a good sense of smell and use their snouts to dig up food. In France, pigs are used to search for truffles, which are difficult to find because they can grow as much as 12 inches (30 cm) under the ground.



Truffles are like mushrooms and are a great delicacy.



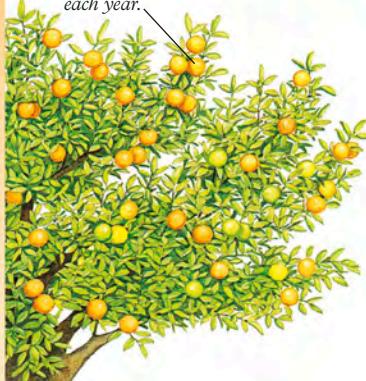
CITRUS FRUITS

The *ugli* fruit is a cross between a tangerine, an orange, and a grapefruit.



Oranges, lemons, limes, and tangerines are just some of the many citrus fruits. Along with apples, watermelons, bananas, and grapes, they are one of the world's largest fruit crops. Citrus fruits are grown mainly in tropical and subtropical parts of America, in countries around the northern and eastern Mediterranean, and in Australia.

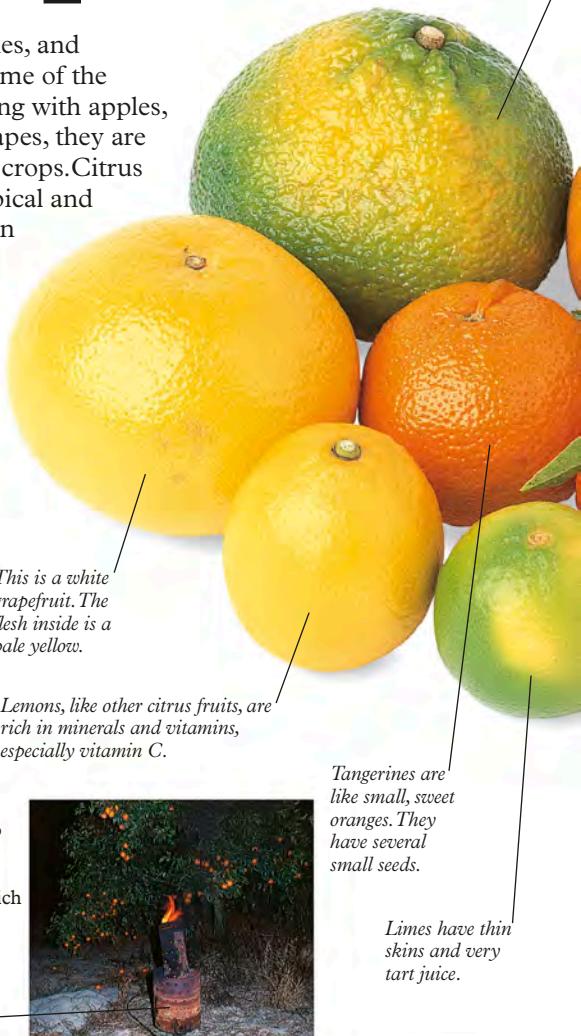
A tree can produce a thousand oranges each year.



Fighting frost

Citrus trees need just the right climate to produce good fruit—sun to make them sweet, and then cold to make them tart. But the trees' greatest enemy is frost, which will kill the fruit. So modern plantations often have wind machines and special orchard heaters in case it is frosty.

Orchard heaters protect the trees from frost.



This is a white grapefruit. The flesh inside is a pale yellow.

Lemons, like other citrus fruits, are rich in minerals and vitamins, especially vitamin C.

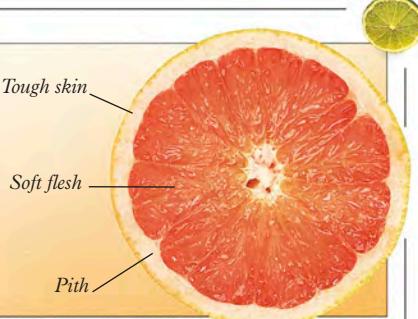
Tangerines are like small, sweet oranges. They have several small seeds.

Limes have thin skins and very tart juice.

This is a pink grapefruit.
Inside it has a sweet,
pink flesh.

The perfect package

Citrus fruits are perfectly packaged foods. In the middle is the juicy flesh, a wonderful source of food and drink that is rich in vitamin C. Next comes a spongy layer, called the pith, which cushions the flesh. On the outside is a protective skin.



Mix and match

By mixing pollen from the blossom of different citrus trees, new varieties can be developed. The limequat, for example, is a cross between a lime and a kumquat.



Juicy fruit

These oranges are being sorted and packed, and will be sold for eating. Many oranges are pulped to be made into juice. This pulp is frozen for transporting around the world.

Fresh orange juice contains lots of vitamins and nutrients.





GRAPES



There are two different types of grapes—black and white. But black grapes are really dark red, and white grapes are light green. Grapes are delicious to eat fresh, and keep their sweetness when dried, too. But most of the grapes grown in the world are used for making wine. Grape plants are called vines, and they are planted in rows in vineyards. Vines need a lot of care, and it takes lots of hard work and skill to produce a bottle of fine wine.

Pruning

As vines grow, they are often cut back so they have a few strong branches rather than lots of weaker ones. This work is called pruning and must be done by hand.



Grapes need rain to swell them and sun to ripen them.



Broad vine leaves shade the grapes from the direct glare of the sun and the battering rain.

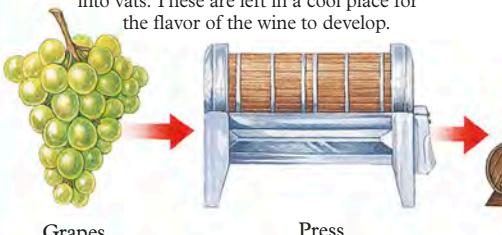
Bitter wine

Red and white wine can also be made into vinegar. It is produced when special vinegar yeasts ferment the wine and turn it sour. Vinegars can be made from other liquids, like cider or malt, and are used as a flavoring. They can also be mixed with foods to pickle and preserve them.



From grapes to wine

First the grapes are crushed and pressed to mix the yeast with the sugar in the grapes. This is called fermentation. Then the juice is filtered and poured into vats. These are left in a cool place for the flavor of the wine to develop.



Grapes

Press

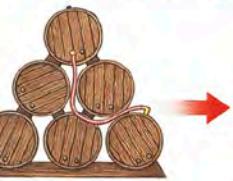




There is a natural yeast on the grape skin that is needed to turn the grape juice into wine.

Black grapes can be made into red or white wine. To make red wine, the skins of black grapes are left in the wine mixture.

Grapes grow in tight bunches.



Dried goods

Grapes for drying must be very sweet because it is their natural sugar that preserves them. They can be dried on racks, in the sun, or in ovens. Only seedless grapes are used for drying. Sultanas are dried white grapes. Raisins and currants are dried black grapes and are usually smaller.



Raisins

Currants

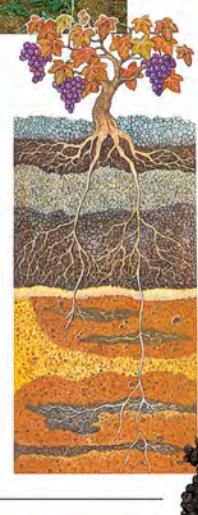


Sultanas



Grape harvesters

Most wine grapes today are picked by machine, except in small or sloping vineyards. Special grapes for making rare wines are carefully picked by hand.



Digging deep

The type of soil in a vineyard is very important and affects the flavor of the wine. Yet some of the best wines are produced from poor soils. This is because the vine can find regular supplies of food and water by pushing its roots deep into the earth.



UNDERGROUND VEGETABLES



Some plants are not grown for their leafy tops, but for the parts of them that grow beneath the soil.

Carrots, turnips, radishes, and parsnips are the fat roots of plants, and are known as root vegetables. Potatoes are the swollen part of the underground stem of the plant. They are called tubers. Onions, too, grow in the dark earth, but it is the bulb of these plants that we eat.

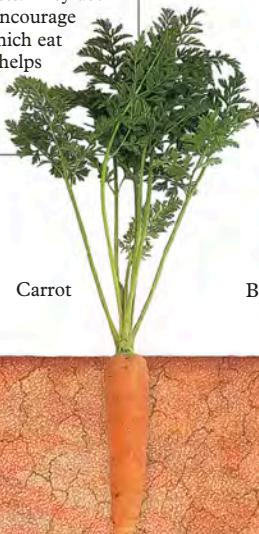


Farming with nature

Many farmers use chemical fertilizers and pesticides to help them grow crops efficiently, but some farmers use only natural products. They use fertilizers such as manure, and encourage pest controllers like ladybugs, which eat all sorts of flies and larvae. This helps to stop a buildup of chemicals in the environment and is called organic farming.



Radish



Carrot



Beet



The flowers produce seeds that can be used to grow new plants, but it is more usual to use seed potatoes.

Potato plants grow well in cool climates, but are killed by frost.



These are the tubers. Each plant has between 15 and 20 tubers.

Types of tubers

Tubers come in all shapes and sizes.



Sweet potato



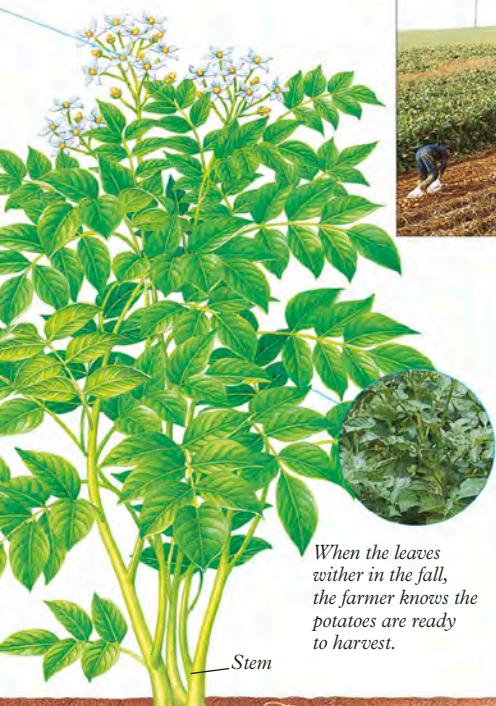
Cassava



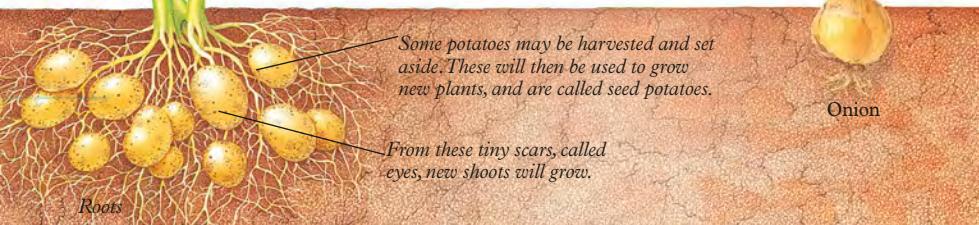
Yam



Taro



When the leaves
wither in the fall,
the farmer knows the
potatoes are ready
to harvest.



Harvest time

In the fall, the potatoes are fully grown and special harvester, pulled by tractors, are used to lift them carefully from the soil.

Tasty bulbs

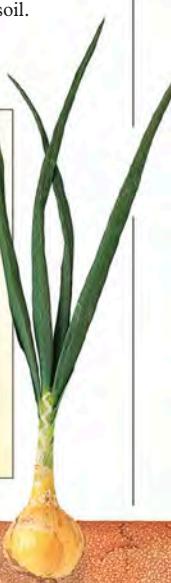
Bulbs, like onions, are not roots. Instead, they are made up of clumps of tightly curled leaves. Leeks, garlic, shallots, and scallions are all members of the same plant family, and they are all valuable for the flavor that they can give to many other foods.



Garlic



Shallot



HOTHOUSE VEGETABLES



In countries with cool climates, usually there is not enough heat to grow the most delicate or exotic vegetables. But in special hothouses, with glass or clear plastic walls, a farmer can grow almost any crop. This is because the temperature inside a hothouse can be controlled. Hothouses are useful in warmer countries, too. They mean the farmer does not have to follow the seasons of the year, and summer vegetables that do not store can be grown fresh all year round.



Computer controlled
Tomatoes are quite fragile plants, so this hothouse, where the temperature and feeding are controlled by a computer, is a good place to grow them. Tomatoes grown in hothouses are usually top quality and are picked by hand.



Nature's "hothouse"

Some of the world's hottest spots are dry deserts. But if a water supply can be set up, the desert heat can be put to good use. Fertile gardens can be created, like this fruit orchard in Jordan.



Short showers

Most of the work in large hothouses today is done by machines. These young sweet pepper (*capsicum*) plants are watered by overhead pipes. Hothouse crops must also be sprayed to protect them from the pests and molds that like the damp, warm conditions.



A carpet of seedlings
Seeds germinate quickly
in the warmth and
protection of the
hothouse. These are
lettuce seedlings.
Hothouses can be
large and some are
half the size of a
football field.



Doors must fit
neatly to keep
out drafts.

The hothouse has
transparent sides to
let in as much light
as possible.



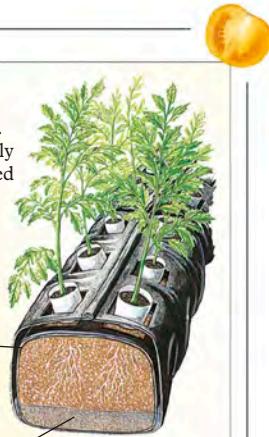
This hothouse only
uses natural heat,
but some have
special heaters.



Okra

Water gardens

Some vegetables can
be grown without soil.
The plants are carefully
supported and supplied
with water which is
automatically mixed
with plant foods. This
way of growing plants
is called hydroponics.



This material
does not feed the
plants, but helps
to support them.

Water full of plant
food flows past the roots.

Mixed vegetables

Here are some other vegetables
that would normally need lots of
sun to grow, but can be farmed
in hothouses in cool climates.



Cucumbers



French beans



Eggplant



Zucchini



Red and green chillies





COFFEE, TEA, AND COCOA



Coffee, tea, and cocoa are drunk in most countries of the world. Cocoa is also used to make chocolate. Coffee and cocoa grow in the tropics. They are

grown on huge plantations, but a lot is produced on small farms as well. Tea is grown on plantations in the tropics and subtropics. Altogether, millions of people are employed to produce these crops. Coffee, tea, and cocoa are important to the countries that grow them because they are cash crops. This means they are grown to be traded with other countries rather than for home use.



Picky pickers

Tea comes from evergreen trees that are pruned into bushes. This makes it easy to pick the leaves. The best-quality teas are produced by plucking only the bud and the first two leaves on each shoot. A skilled plucker can pick enough leaves in one day to make 3,500 cups of tea.



Green tea

Black tea



Special treatment

The leaves are made into black or green tea. For green tea, the leaves are dried, heated, and crushed. For black tea, the leaves are dried, crushed, fermented, and dried again.





A coffee tree produces about 2,000 fruits each year. It takes twice this amount to make two pounds (one kilogram) of roasted coffee.

The fruits are called cherries because of their color and size.

The coffee is harvested twice a year.

There are two green coffee beans inside each cherry. They only turn brown after they are roasted.

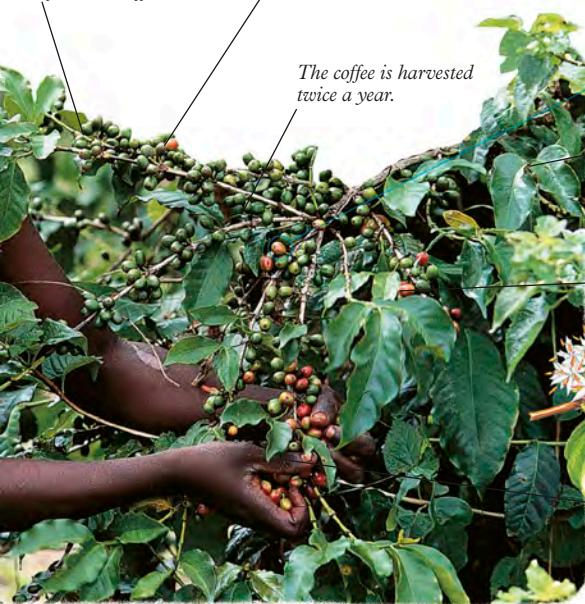


The trees are pruned to stop them from growing more than 10 feet (three meters) high.

When the fruits first appear, they are green. Gradually, they turn bright red. They are then ready to be picked.



The ripe fruit is picked by hand or shaken from the tree onto a cloth spread out underneath it. On some plantations, machines are used to pick the fruit.



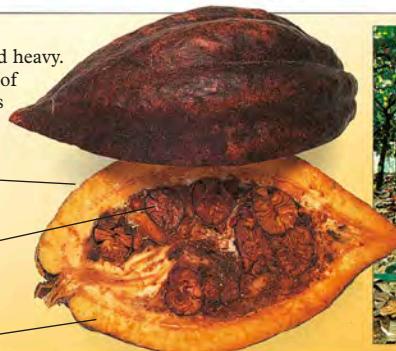
Heavy load

Cocoa pods are large and heavy. They grow on the trunk of the cacao tree or from its thick branches.

The pod has a thick skin.

Each pod may contain 20 to 50 cocoa beans.

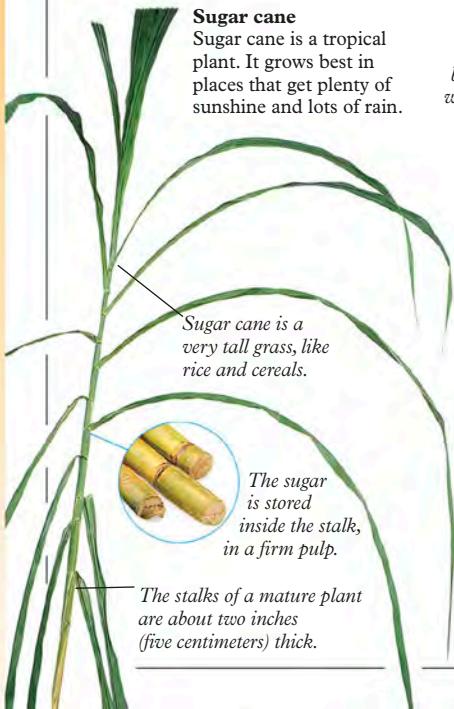
The pod grows up to 12 inches (30 cm) long, about the size of a football.





SUGARS

More than 185 million tons of sugar is produced each year. More than 80 percent of it comes from sugar cane. This is grown on a large scale on plantations in the tropical areas of Brazil, Cuba, India, China, Australia, Mexico, the Philippines, Thailand, and the US. The rest of our sugar comes from sugar beet, which is a vegetable. Sugar beet grows in the cooler climates of Europe, the US, Canada, China, and Japan.



The canes are cut close to the ground because this is where the most sugar collects.



Workers watch out!

The sugar plantations can be home to the deadly bushmaster snake. Enormous bird-eating spiders also nestle in the thick foliage.



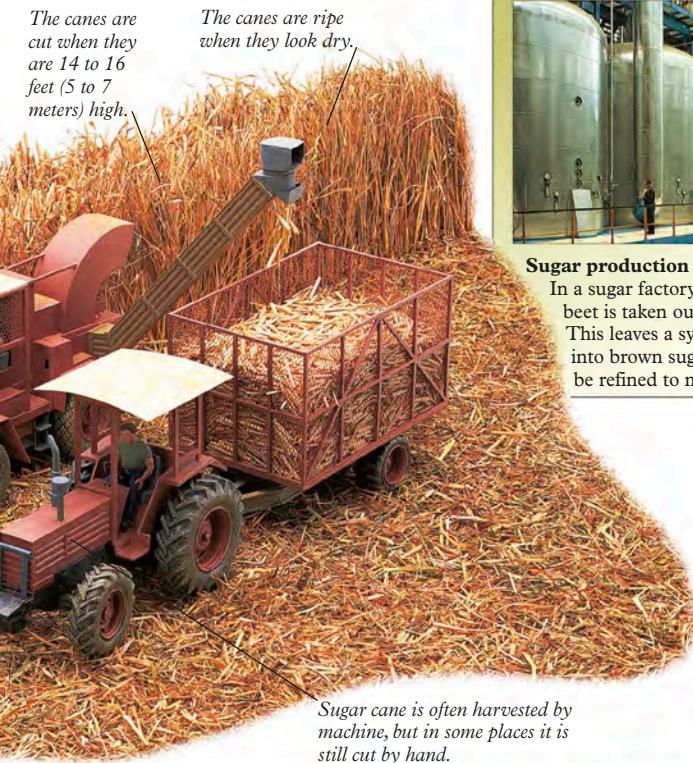
After the cane has been harvested, healthy stumps will regrow into new plants.

Sugar beet

Sugar beet is a root vegetable. It looks like a giant parsnip. It grows best in places that have warm summers and cool or cold winters.

The leafy tops of the plants are cut off before the sugar beet is lifted. The tops can be used for animal feed.





Maple syrup

Maple syrup is made from the sap of sugar maple or black maple trees.

Holes are made in the trunks in winter when the trees are dormant.

When a thaw follows a freeze, the sap is collected from the wounds in buckets. Maple syrup is only produced in North America.



Sugar production

In a sugar factory, sugar from the canes or beet is taken out, cleaned, and boiled. This leaves a syrup which is turned into brown sugar crystals. These can be refined to make white sugar.

Sorts of sugar

Sugars differ in color and in the size of their crystals, or grains.



Granulated



Demerara



Dark soft brown



Muscovado



PEOPLE AND PLACES

In lots of ways, people are the same everywhere: they build homes, they wear clothes, they eat meals, and they have fun. However, people in different countries have developed their own languages and customs, which vary widely from place to place.

Did you know that in Spain there is a festival in which people throw tomatoes at each other? Did you know that the Chinese language has more than 50,000 written characters? Did you know that India produces more films each year than any other country?

Learning about other ways of life is not only interesting, it also helps you to understand and get along with people in other countries who may be very different from you.



Inuit boy from
northern Canada



African jewelry



The Eiffel
Tower in
Paris,
France



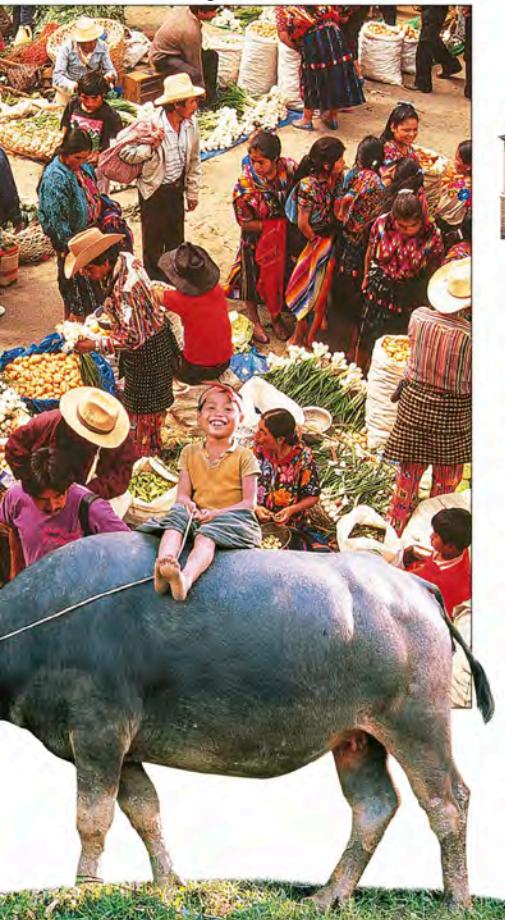
Indonesian boy on
a water buffalo



Talking drum
from Nigeria



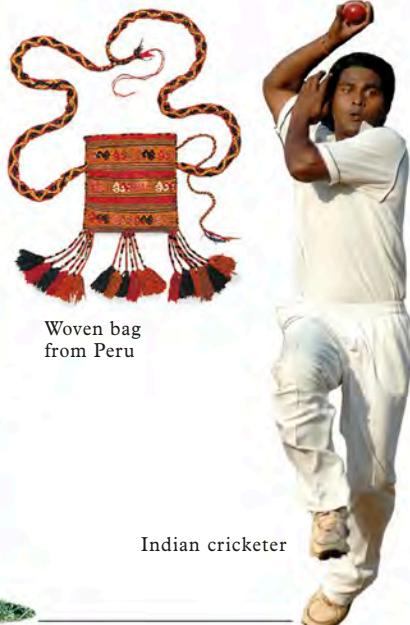
Vegetable market in Guatemala



Antipasto
from Italy



Buckingham Palace in London, England



Woven bag
from Peru

Indian cricketer



THE ARCTIC & ANTARCTICA

The Inuit, Saami, Aleut, and other indigenous people live in the icy lands of the Arctic North. For many generations, they have found ways of coping with their cold surroundings. But no one has settled for very long on the southern extremes of the planet. Antarctica is the coldest and windiest place in the world. This huge continent is lashed by freezing blizzards and gales, with temperatures almost as low as -148°F (-100°C).



Long-lost relatives
For many years, Inuit families on either side of the Bering Strait were not allowed to meet, for political reasons. Nowadays, the North American Inuit and their relatives in northern Asia can visit each other once again.

The Arctic



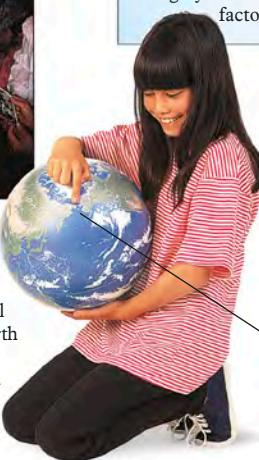
Icy city

Norilsk in the Arctic Circle is the farthest north city in the world. The sun does not rise in this Russian city between November and the middle of January.



Homes in the north

In the past, the Inuit were self-sufficient and lived a life on the move, hunting and fishing to survive. They built temporary homes, called igloos, from solid snow. Today, most Inuit live in wooden houses and earn a living by working for other people, often in fish-canning factories or for mining companies.



Speedy Ski-doos

Today, the Inuit people get around on snowmobiles called Ski-doos. This is much faster than using dogs to pull a sled, which is the traditional method of travel.

Warm clothes are vital in the Arctic.

The Bering Strait is a narrow stretch of sea that separates northern Asia from North America.



Antarctica



Antarctic science

Scientists from all around the world are the only people who live and work in Antarctica. Some study the effect of the enormous sheet of Antarctic ice on the world's weather patterns. Others observe the behavior of living things in the freezing conditions.



This scientist is measuring the density of Antarctic snow.

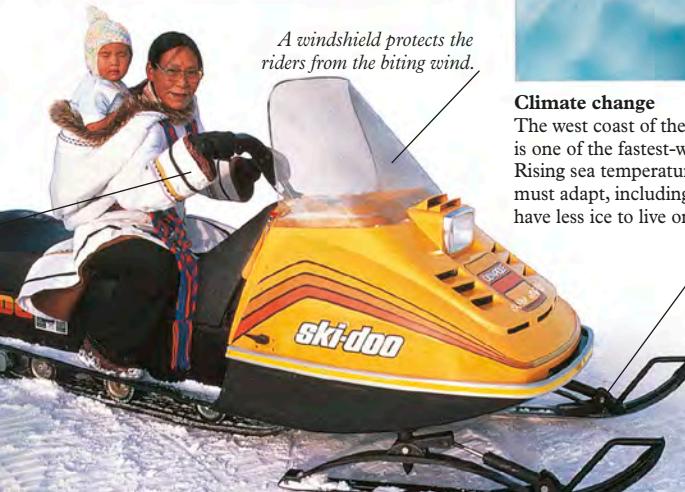


This emperor penguin lives in the Antarctic. No penguins live in the Arctic.



Exploring the unknown

Antarctica was the last continent to be explored. The first successful expedition in search of the South Pole took place in 1911, led by a Norwegian called Roald Amundsen. The British expedition led by Captain Scott ended in disaster, when the team froze to death on the trek home.



A windshield protects the riders from the biting wind.

Climate change

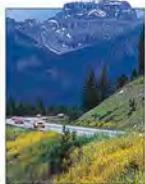
The west coast of the Antarctic Peninsula is one of the fastest-warming places in the world. Rising sea temperatures mean plants and animals must adapt, including penguin colonies that now have less ice to live on.

Runners on the front of the Ski-doo spread the weight of the vehicle evenly, to stop it from sinking into the soft snow.





CANADA



Canada is an enormous country. A journey from the east to the west coast on one of the world's longest highways will take you through almost 5,000 miles (8,000 kilometers) of beautiful landscape. Canada's population of 37 million is small for the country's huge size. Most people live in cities in the warmer southern part of the country, close to the border with the United States.

Quebec City

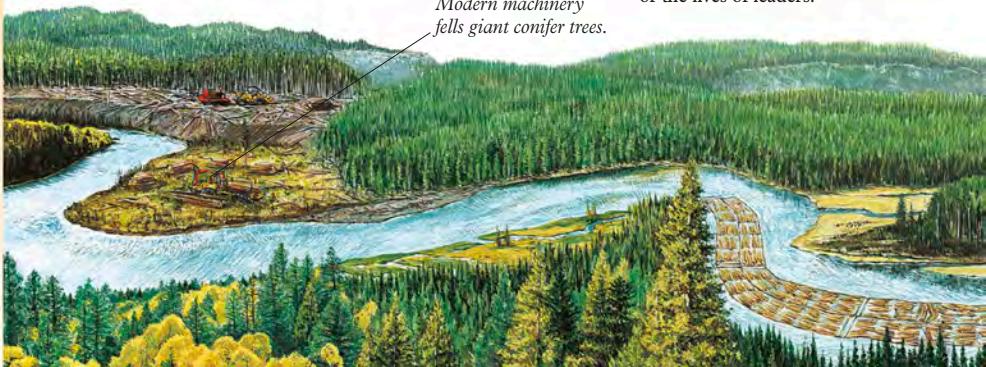
Quebec City is the capital of the province of Quebec. It is Canada's oldest city and the only walled city in North America. Many of its distinctive buildings are in the original French style.



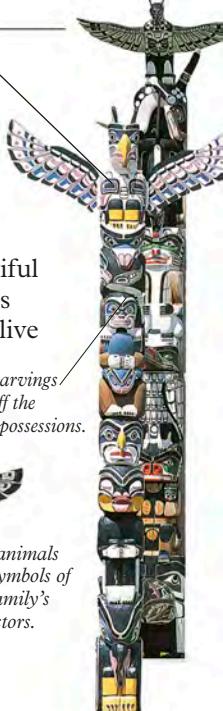
Timber!

Half of Canada's 1.5 million square miles (4 million square kilometers) of forest are used for timber. Logging is a very important Canadian industry. On the west coast, large areas of forest are disappearing. Logging companies are being asked to slow down the destruction and to replant more trees.

Modern machinery fells giant conifer trees.



Totem poles can be enormous or very small, such as those that guard the doorways to village homes.



Some carvings show off the family possessions.

The animals are symbols of the family's ancestors.



Totem pole

The First Nations of British Columbia, on the west coast of Canada, carved giant totem poles out of trees. Some totem poles celebrated special events or the lives of leaders.



Canada



Inuit victory

Indigenous people have lived in Canada's Arctic north for thousands of years. In 1993, the Inuit people regained control of native land when a territory called Nunavut was formed and put under their control. Nunavut covers more than 20 percent of Canada's land mass and is home to almost 40,000 people.



Is there anybody out there?

The first long-distance phone call was made in Canada in 1876. A century later, Canada was the first country to set up a satellite network. Satellites provide a vital link to many remote communities.



Two languages

Canada has two official languages, English and French. The first Europeans to settle in Canada were the French, followed by the British. Today, the majority of Canadians speak English, but French is the official language in Quebec, Canada's largest province.

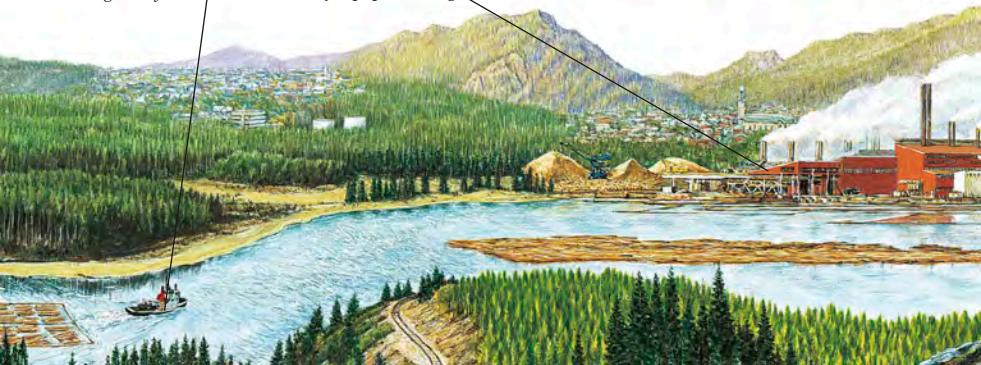


Winter sports

Winters are very harsh all over Canada. Ice hockey and skating are national sports—some families flood their back gardens in winter, so that the water freezes to make a temporary ice rink.

A tug pulls the timber down the river. Water transportation is used when there are no major roads through the forest.

The timber is taken to a riverside sawmill, where it is cut into planks or pulped for papermaking.





THE UNITED STATES

The United States of America is an exciting mixture of different cultures and traditions. Over the last 500 years, tens of millions of people from all over the world have made America their home. The families of the new arrivals now help to make up the American population of about 326 million. The United States is a superpower, and is probably the most powerful nation in the world.



Leading light

The Statue of Liberty has been a welcoming sight to many immigrants arriving in America for more than one hundred years. The statue is a symbol of freedom, and was built to celebrate the 100th anniversary of American independence.

It was given to the Americans by the French in 1884.

Many Americans live in cities. This is San Francisco, in the West Coast state of California.



Lots of languages

Most Americans can trace their family trees back to other parts of the world. Four out of five Americans speak English, but other European and Asian languages are also widely spoken. The country's second language is Spanish.



United States



Jeans are made of tough material called denim.

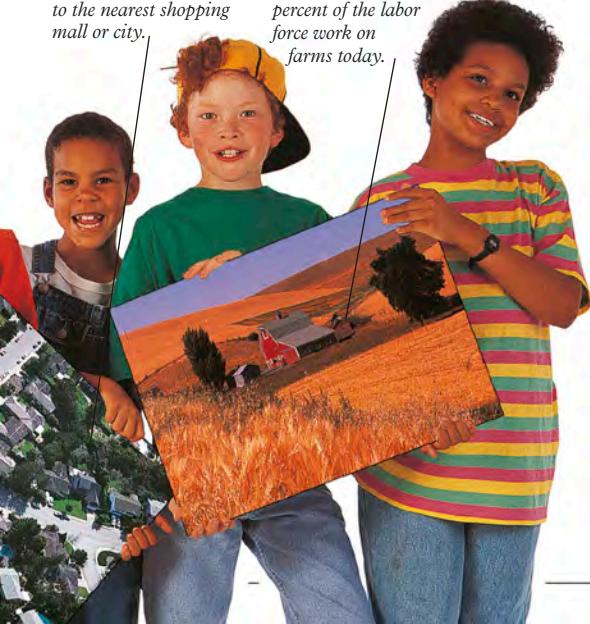


American icon

Jeans are an American invention. The first pair was made in 1874 by Levi Strauss. Jeans are now one of the most popular pieces of clothing ever invented, and Levi jeans are still sold all around the world today.

Many American children grow up in suburbs. It is easy to drive from the suburb to the nearest shopping mall or city.

More corn is grown in America than in any other country. A lot of the farming is done by machines, so less than two percent of the labor force work on farms today.



Drive time

America is a huge country, and many Americans are used to driving long distances to visit friends or family. Driving is a popular American pastime. Large cars are not as fashionable as they used to be. This is because smaller cars use up less gasoline and are better for the environment.



Native American Languages Act
In 1990, Congress made it US policy to "preserve, protect, and promote the rights and freedom of Native Americans to use, practice, and develop Native American languages."



Antigua and
Barbuda

Bahamas



Barbados

MEXICO, CENTRAL AMERICA, & THE CARIBBEAN

Central America is made up of a narrow strip of eight countries that link the continents of North and South America. Just like the long chain of islands that makes up the Caribbean, Central America is surrounded by clear blue oceans. Today, the beautiful Caribbean Sea and the sunny, sandy beaches attract many tourists. In the past, the sea brought visitors who were less welcome, like the Conquistadors and colonizers from Europe 500 years ago.

Weaving for a living

About 40 percent of the people of Guatemala are Amerindian. Their ancestors go back a thousand years to the days of the ancient Maya. Guatemala now sells Mayan crafts to the rest of the world.



Carnival time

The Caribbean is famous for its carnivals. For two days and nights just before the Christian festival of Lent, people dance through the streets wearing fantastic costumes.



Belize



Costa Rica



Cuba



Dominica



Dominican Republic



El Salvador



Grenada



Guatemala



City of chocolate

The densely populated Mexico City is built on a lake called Texcoco. Its indigenous tribes were some of the first in the world to turn cacao beans into tasty chocolate almost 4,000 years ago!



A modern mix

Many Caribbean people are descendants of African slaves who were forced to work on sugar plantations. Slavery was stopped in the 19th century, and many Asians then came to work in the Caribbean. Their descendants still live there today.



Terrific temples

More than 1,000 years ago, the ancient Mayans built impressive temples, especially in Mexico. Mayan society was very sophisticated long before the Spaniards invaded in the 16th century.

Caribbean people

More than fifty different ethnic groups live on the islands of the Caribbean. Here are just a few.



Asian



Arawak



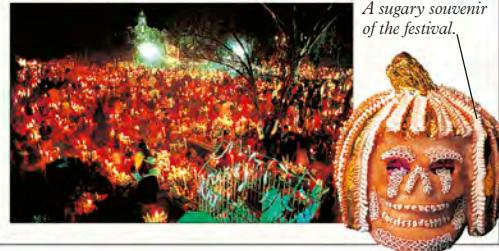
Afro-Caribbean



European

The Day of the Dead

Every year in Mexico, a festival is held to remember people who have died. It is called the Day of the Dead and takes place at the end of October. Families have picnics by the graves of their relatives. When night falls, they keep watch over the graveyard by candlelight.

*A sugary souvenir of the festival.*

Natural disasters

Central America has many natural hazards, such as volcanoes, earthquakes, and hurricanes. Volcanoes have become popular with tourists, and some now have trails and cable cars up them.



Haiti



Honduras



Jamaica



Mexico



Nicaragua



Panama



St. Kitts-Nevis



St. Lucia



St. Vincent and the Grenadines



Trinidad and Tobago



SOUTH AMERICA



Most South Americans are Catholics. A huge statue of Christ towers over the Brazilian port of Rio de Janeiro. This is a reminder of three centuries of European rule, when the first peoples of South America were almost wiped out. Most South Americans still speak Spanish or Portuguese. South America is home to diverse landscapes from the Amazonian rainforests to the Andes and the Galapagos Islands.



Rich and poor

São Paulo, in Brazil, is South America's biggest industrial city. The city center is very modern and wealthy. Many people from the surrounding areas travel to São Paulo in search of work. Their children often end up living in terrible poverty on the streets.



Argentina



Bolivia



Brazil

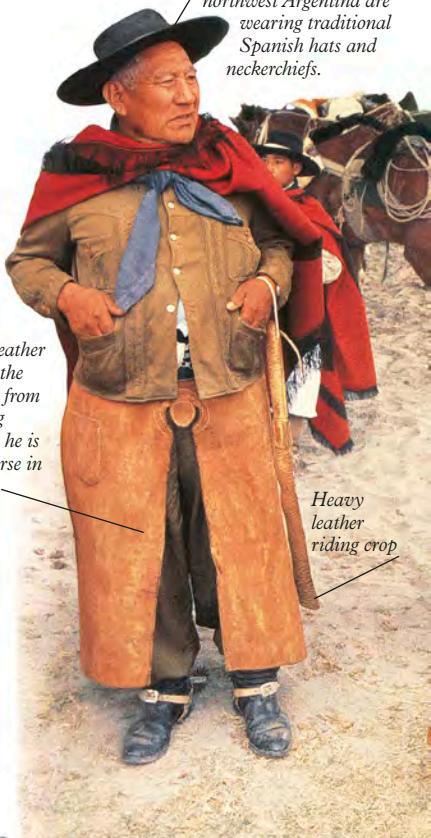


Chile

Galloping gauchos

Large areas of northern and central Argentina are covered with a grassy plain, called the pampas. Huge herds of cattle are kept on the pampas, and are looked after by cowboys known as gauchos. Most gauchos are descendants of European settlers in South America.

These gauchos from northwest Argentina are wearing traditional Spanish hats and neckerchiefs.



Stiff, flared leather flaps protect the gaucho's legs from high-growing thistles when he is riding his horse in the pampas.

Heavy leather riding crop



Colombia



Ecuador



Guyana



Paraguay



Peru



Surinam



Uruguay



Venezuela



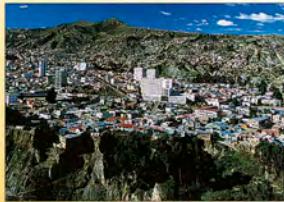
Gauchos are very proud of their horses. They work on ranches called "estancias."

A thick poncho is used as a blanket at night. It can also be used as a shield in a fight.



Machu Picchu and La Paz

South Americans have always been good at building cities in the mountains. Machu Picchu is hidden 7,700 feet (2,350 meters) up in the Andes, in Peru. The city was built more than 500 years ago, without the help of modern machinery.



La Paz is the capital city of Bolivia. It is the world's highest capital city, 12,000 feet (3,636 meters) above sea level. The city's steep streets are surrounded by snow-capped mountains. The thin mountain air often makes visitors breathless.



The Yanomami

In 1991, an area of the Brazilian rainforest about the size of Portugal was set aside for the Yanomami tribe. This did not stop miners from invading the land, bringing diseases that have wiped out large numbers of the Yanomami population.

South Americans

South America is a huge continent, with a wide mix of different people.



Highland Amerindian



Lowland Amerindian



South American of African descent



South American of European and Indian descent





Algeria



Benin



Burkina Faso



Cameroon



Cape Verde



Central African Republic



Chad



Djibouti



NORTHERN AFRICA

The spectacular pyramids and priceless treasures of Ancient Egypt are world famous. Art and culture are still very important to people all over northern Africa. A great range of musical and artistic traditions have been passed down through families for generations.

Making music

African rhythms have influenced modern jazz and blues music, and are now an important ingredient of African pop music. These drummers are from Ghana in West Africa.



Famine

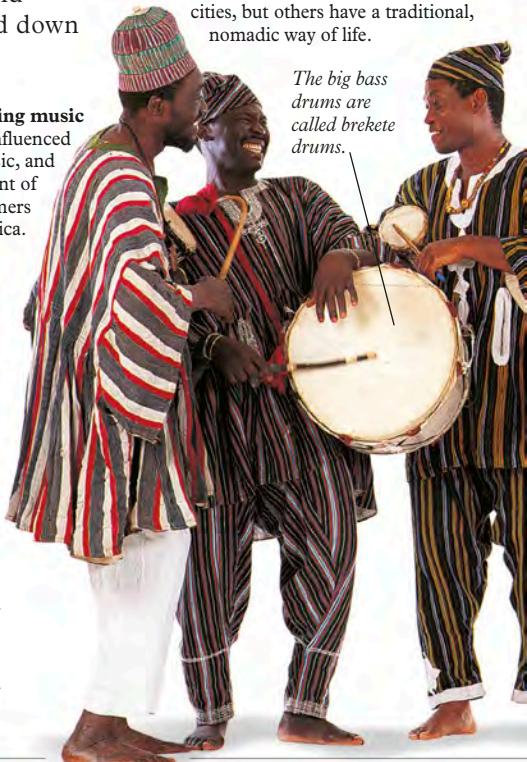
Up to 233 million Africans suffer from a lack of food. When the rains don't come, crops fail and disaster strikes, but this isn't the only cause. Sadly, humans are responsible, too. War and the need to move to avoid conflict, corruption, lack of planning, and misuse of aid can all result in starvation. These children in the Sahel region of northern Africa are in danger of starving.



The Berber people

Berbers are an indigenous people of North Africa. They have their own language and religion, but through conquests have also learned Arabic and become Muslim. Many live in cities, but others have a traditional, nomadic way of life.

The big bass drums are called brekete drums.





Egypt



Eritrea



Ethiopia



Gambia



Ghana



Guinea



Guinea-Bissau



Ivory Coast



City growth

More than 50 percent of northern Africans live in cities. Some of the largest cities in the world, such as Cairo in Egypt, are in northern Africa. Lagos in Nigeria is Africa's fastest-growing modern city.



The drummers' clothes and music come from Dagbon, in northern Ghana.

The smaller drums are called talking drums. The tighter the strings are squeezed, the higher the note.



Chocolate center

Well over half the world's cocoa is grown in western Africa. More cocoa is grown in the Ivory Coast than anywhere else. About a fifth of Ivory Coast farmland is used to grow cocoa crops.



African crafts

Wood carving, weaving, and jewelry making are traditional African crafts.



Nigerian wood carving



Narrow-strip woven pants from Ghana



Bronze bracelet from Mali



Algerian silver jewelry, with enamel decoration



Brass bracelet and earrings from Sudan



Liberia



Libya



Mali



Mauritania



Morocco



Niger



Nigeria



Senegal



Sierra Leone



Somalia



South Sudan



Sudan



Togo



Tunisia



SOUTHERN AFRICA



A rich variety of peoples make up the African countries in this region. Huge grassland savannahs support an amazing variety of wildlife. Game parks were first set up in Kenya to protect animals from hunters. Today, these parks are big tourist attractions. Across the whole region, traditional lifestyles, like those of the Kalahari Bushmen, have slowly been replaced with new ways. There have been many personal and political changes for the peoples of southern Africa.

A new start

The San people live in the Kalahari desert. For about 20,000 years, they hunted animals and gathered plants to survive. Very few of them still hunt, and most now find work on local farms or in nearby towns.

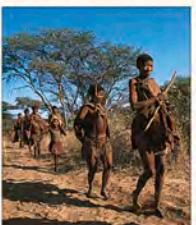
*Today, most San people settle in one place.
They have given up
a life on the move.*



On the move

Only a few groups of San still hunt in the Kalahari desert. Each group has a territory of up to 385 square miles (1,000 square kilometers).

The men hunt while the women find tasty fruit, nuts, and roots.



Much of the San people's land is now used for farms, cattle ranches, and nature reserves.



Botswana



Burundi



Comoros



Congo

Equatorial
Guinea

Gabon



Kenya



Lesotho



Madagascar



Market day

African women often earn money by selling surplus vegetables from the family farm at the market. Village markets are lively and noisy occasions, where friends meet to exchange the latest news.



History of apartheid

In 1948, the white government of South

Africa passed apartheid laws that were unfair to most people. The African National Congress fought the laws and their leader, Nelson

Mandela, was jailed for 27 years. He was let out in 1990 and in 1994

he became the first black president of South Africa.



Rise of the Zulus

Two hundred years ago, the Zulus were a small clan of a few hundred people, but they fought wars with similar clans to become one big Zulu nation. Today, the Zulus are the largest ethnic group in South Africa.

Going to school

Many African children have a long trek to school. A bus takes these Zimbabwean children part of the way, and they have to walk the last few miles.



Chatterboxes

The countries of southern Africa are home to many different groups of people, each with their own language. European languages like English, French, and Portuguese are also spoken as a result of colonialism. The Constitutional Court in Johannesburg is shown here with its name written in all eleven official languages of South Africa.



Malawi



Mauritius



Mozambique



Namibia



Rwanda



São Tomé & Príncipe



South Africa



Swaziland



Tanzania



Uganda



Dem. Rep. Congo



Zambia



Zimbabwe

THE MIDDLE EAST



The Middle East has always been a very productive area. Its age-old civilizations have exported farming techniques, beautiful crafts, and three major religions all around the world. The discovery of oil has made parts of the Middle East very rich and powerful. Huge oil refineries are a common sight in the region. But the oil will not last forever, and other industries are being developed to keep the money coming in when the oil has run out.



Turkish bazaar

In the Middle East, many people shop in markets and bazaars. This shopkeeper is hoping to sell some of his brassware at the Great Covered Bazaar in Istanbul, Turkey.

Dressed for the heat

Parts of the Middle East reach temperatures in excess of 113°F (45°C) in the summer, so people wear loose-fitting clothing and cover their heads to protect themselves from the sun's rays.

White clothes reflect bright sunlight and help people keep cool.



Refugee Crisis

War has forced large numbers of people in the Middle East to flee their homes in order to seek safety. Millions of people are living in refugee camps around the Middle East as temporary shelter from the danger of war.

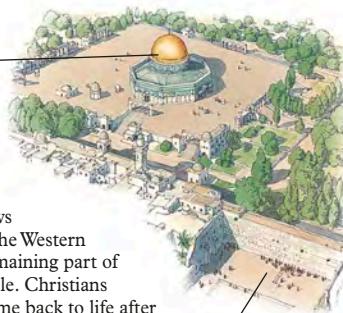




Living on a kibbutz

In Israel, big farms, called kibbutzim, were set up so many Jewish families could live and work on the same farm and share the produce.

The Dome of the Rock



The Western Wall is the holiest site in Judaism.



The traditional male robe has many names, including thobe, kandora, and dishdashah.



Trip of a lifetime

At least once in a lifetime, every Muslim must try to make a special journey, or Hajj, to Mecca in Saudi Arabia. During the Hajj, visitors crowd into the Great Mosque, and walk seven times around the shrine, called the Ka'ba.



Afghanistan



Bahrain



Iran



Iraq



Israel



Jordan



Kuwait



Lebanon



Oman



Qatar



Saudi Arabia



Syria



Yemen



United Arab Emirates



Turkey



SCANDINAVIA

Scandinavia is the name given to the countries of northern Europe. The far north of this region lies inside the Arctic Circle, so the winters are very harsh.



Sweat it out

Saunas are wooden rooms, steaming with heat from a stove. Invented in Finland more than 1,000 years ago, they are found in many homes in Scandinavia. After a sauna, people often enjoy a cold shower or a roll in the snow.

The people of northern Scandinavia enjoy winter sports in the cold climate. Cross-country skiing was invented in Norway, and is still a quick way of getting around during the snowy winter months.



Lighting up the sky

The northern lights, or aurora borealis, can be seen in many parts of the Arctic Circle, especially the far north of Scandinavia. The colorful, dancing lights appear in the sky when a cloud of gas released from the sun collides with the magnetic field around Earth.



City slickers

About a quarter of the Danish population live in Copenhagen, the capital of Denmark. Most Scandinavians choose to live in cities in the warmer south of the region.

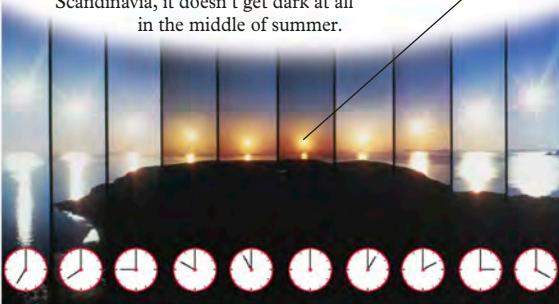
Escape to the country

Many Scandinavians enjoy a high standard of living. Some can afford to buy or rent a second home in the mountains, in the forest, or by the sea. They escape to these "holiday huts" on weekends and during the summer months.

Land of the midnight sun

Imagine waking at midnight, to find the sun shining outside! At the height of summer, Earth's tilt causes northern countries to get more of the sun's light. In northern Scandinavia, it doesn't get dark at all in the middle of summer.

It is still light at midnight, because the sun hasn't set.





Denmark



Finland



Iceland



Norway



Sweden



Out in the cold

The Saami people are traditionally nomadic, traveling throughout northern Scandinavia and Russia herding their reindeer. It is getting harder to make a living this way, so many young Saami have become fishermen and farmers.



Building success

Denmark is the home of Lego®, one of the world's most popular children's building toys. The first Lego® theme park was built near Billund in 1968, but there are now many more all around the world.



At midday, the hot sun is at its highest position in the sky.



Earthly energy

These Icelanders are swimming in waters warmed by energy deep under the Earth. This geothermal energy is also used to generate electricity and heat houses.

It is six o'clock, and the long, light evening is just beginning.



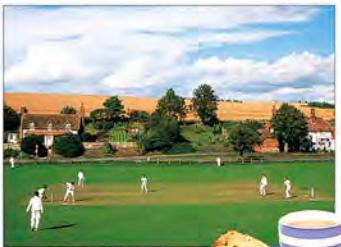


THE UK AND IRELAND

The Republic of Ireland, also called Éire, is an independent country, with its own government and traditions. England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland make up the United Kingdom. Many aspects of British life, such as its historical buildings and customs, have been preserved. But the United Kingdom is also good at adapting to change. A rich variety of ethnic groups now live in the United Kingdom's multicultural society.

Democratic center

The Houses of Parliament in London have been the home of British democracy since 1512. The political party with the most representatives, called MPs, forms the government. MPs are voted in at national general elections.



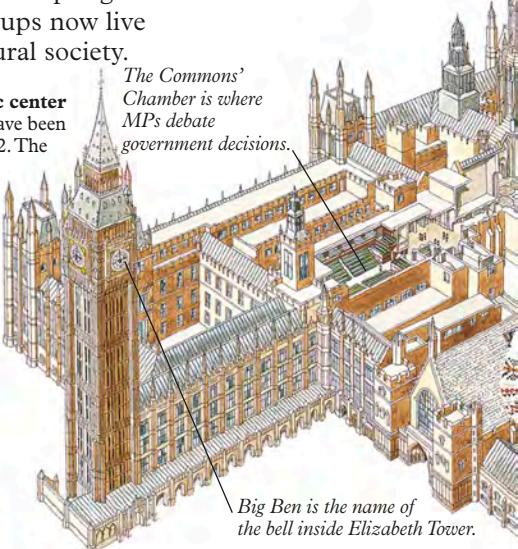
Howzat!

Sunday afternoons in summer would not be the same in many English villages without the familiar sight of a cricket match on the village green. Cricket is an English invention, and is usually followed by another well-known English tradition, afternoon tea!



By the sea

Britain is surrounded by the sea. British seaside vacations first became popular in the 19th century. Today, many British people go on vacation abroad, where it is less likely to rain!



The Commons' Chamber is where MPs debate government decisions.

Big Ben is the name of the bell inside Elizabeth Tower.

Guy Fawkes night

A plot to blow up the Houses of Parliament almost succeeded in 1605, but the ringleader, Guy Fawkes, was caught and executed. Guy Fawkes Night is still celebrated all over Britain on November 5, when homemade straw dummies—called guys—are burned on big bonfires at firework parties.





Republic of Ireland

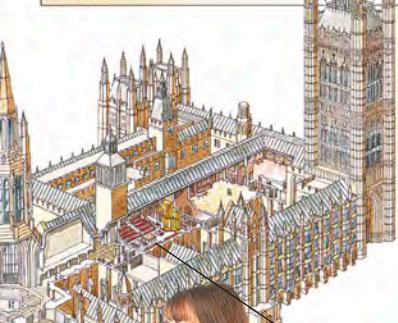


United Kingdom

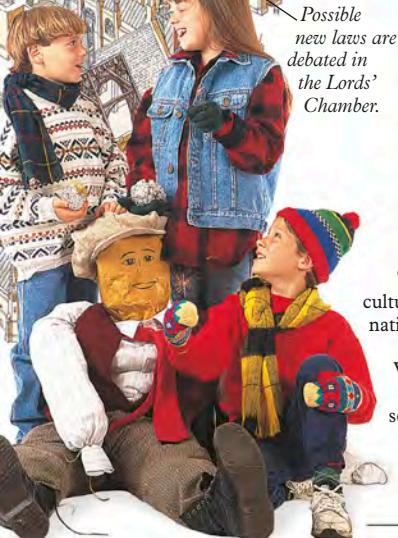


Arty Edinburgh

For three weeks every August, a big arts festival takes place in Edinburgh, the historic capital of Scotland. The fringe festival gives amateur and part-time entertainers the chance to perform, and also attracts some of the world's best musicians, theater companies, and artists.



Possible new laws are debated in the Lords' Chamber.



Music masters

Traditional folk music is extremely popular in Ireland. The fiddle is a typical folk instrument, often played to accompany singers. Irish bands have been very successful on the world pop scene. Many songs were first written in Gaelic, the original language of Ireland.



A divided community

Northern Ireland is part of the United Kingdom but remains politically divided, mostly along religious lines. Unionists (mostly Protestants) consider themselves British and want to stay part of the United Kingdom, whereas Republicans (mostly Catholics) see themselves as Irish, and want to be part of a united Ireland.

National pride

The Welsh are proud of their culture, and enjoy celebrating national festivals. St. David is the patron saint of Wales, so on St. David's Day, children go to school wearing traditional Welsh costumes.



The daffodil is the national flower of Wales.



FRANCE & THE LOW COUNTRIES



The Netherlands, Belgium, and Luxembourg are sometimes called the Low Countries, because much of the land is flat and low-lying. France and the Low Countries are powerful farming and trading nations, thanks to their good soil and large natural harbors. The people of the region are fond of good food. French chefs are world-famous for their fine cooking skills.



Chocolate secrets

Many Belgian chocolate makers keep their recipes secret, so no one can copy them.



Brandy



Coffee



Mint



Nougat



Mixed nuts



City canals

Amsterdam is the capital of the Netherlands. It is built around a network of canals that were once used for trade and transportation. By tradition, many Dutch find their way around the city on bicycles.

European dream

Many European countries are working together by being members of the European Union. The parliament is at Brussels, in Belgium, and also at Strasbourg, in France.

This stylish outfit is by Christian Lacroix, a top French fashion designer.

Style capital

Paris, the capital of France, is at the heart of the world fashion industry. Every season, famous designers display new creations at big shows.



At war with the sea

Nearly half of the Netherlands was once under seawater. Over the centuries, the Dutch have reclaimed this land from the sea, draining it by using a clever system of canals and sea walls, or dykes. Much of the reclaimed land is now used for intensive crop and dairy farming.





Belgium



France



Luxembourg



Monaco



Netherlands



Land of wine

France produces some of the world's best wines. Each region has its own wines, with their own special flavors. In the Rhône valley in southeast France, grapes ripen in the summer sun. They are then harvested and fermented in vats.



Small but rich

Luxembourg is a tiny country nestled between France, Belgium, and Germany. Its small population has a high standard of living, because of the country's success as a financial center.



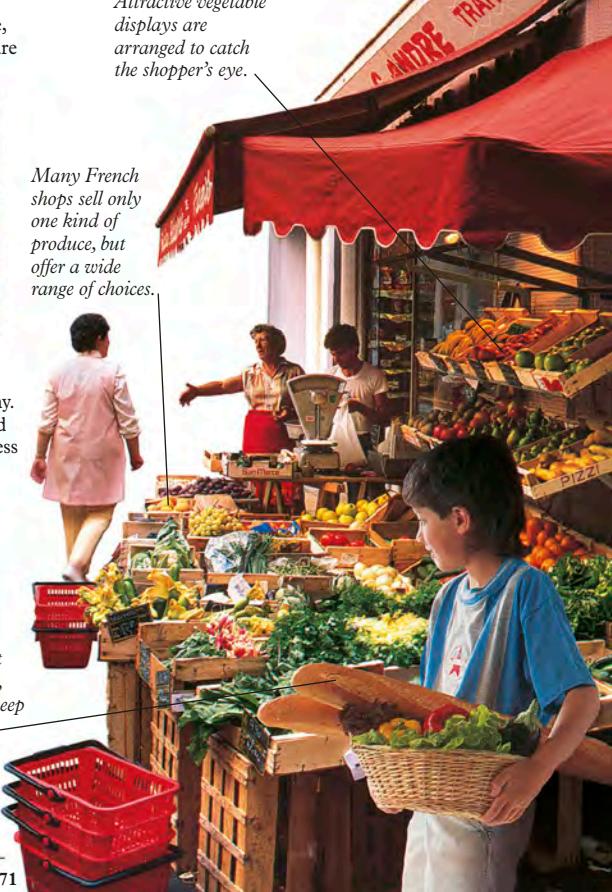
Crusty French bread is bought every morning, as it does not keep fresh for long.

Attractive vegetable displays are arranged to catch the shopper's eye.

Many French shops sell only one kind of produce, but offer a wide range of choices.



The French love their food, and take care to buy it as fresh as possible. Most French people are careful shoppers, closely inspecting food and even sampling it before they buy.





SPAIN & PORTUGAL

Both Spain and Portugal have warm, sunny climates and long coastlines. The blue skies and dazzling white beaches of Spain's

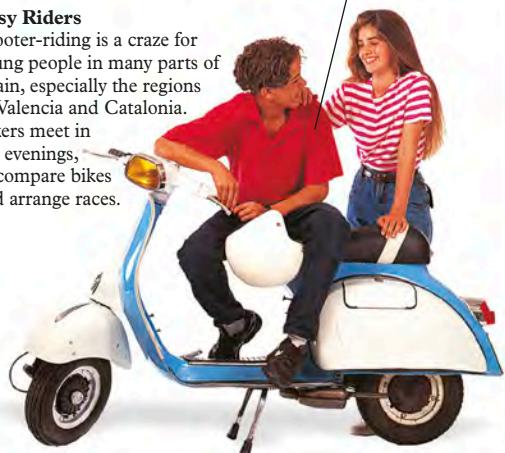
Mediterranean coast attract millions of tourists every summer. The sea is also an important source of food and employment. Fishing is a major industry in Portugal and on Spain's Atlantic coast.



Young Spaniards can ride scooters from the age of 15.

Easy Riders

Scooter-riding is a craze for young people in many parts of Spain, especially the regions of Valencia and Catalonia. Bikers meet in the evenings, to compare bikes and arrange races.



Fiesta!

Spain has more festivals than any other European country. Some are religious, others are just for fun. One of the messiest festivals takes place in Bunyols, in Valencia. The villagers pelt each other with tomatoes, to celebrate the time when a truck spilled its load of overripe tomatoes all over the village square.



Tide of tourists

Mediterranean countries are very popular with tourists. In 2018, about 82 million tourists flocked to the coasts of southern Europe. Every year, the Spanish population doubles when tourists arrive to enjoy the hot summer weather and sandy beaches.



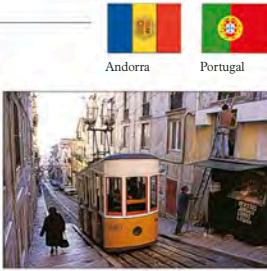


Take your pick

These Portuguese farmers grow oranges, lemons, and olives. Orchards of sweet, juicy oranges are a common sight in the hot countryside of southwest Portugal.

Fire dance

Flamenco dancing was developed many hundreds of years ago by the gypsies of Andalusia. It is still popular all over Spain. Many Spanish children learn the dance from a young age, and enjoy wearing the colorful flamenco costumes.



City of seven hills

Lisbon, the capital of Portugal, is one of the smallest capitals in Europe. It is built on seven steep hills. Old electric trams carry the townspeople up and down the sloping streets.



First communion

Most Spanish people are Roman Catholics. From the age of seven or eight, children are taught the main beliefs of the Catholic church, and are ready to take their first communion at the age of 10. The ceremony is a religious and social occasion—an important event for the entire family.



Eating around Spain

Here are some tasty dishes from different regions of Spain.



Gazpacho—cold tomato soup from Andalusia



Cocido—meat stew from Castile and Estremadura



Zarzuela de Pescado—seafood stew from Catalonia



Paella—chicken, seafood, and rice from Valencia



Doughnuts—a popular treat all over Spain





GREECE & ITALY



Greece and Italy lie in southern Europe, where the warm summers and beautiful Mediterranean coastline draw millions of tourists every year. Many magnificent buildings, dating back to the days of the Ancient Greeks and Romans, are also popular attractions. A lot of these sites are in urgent need of repair. Both Greece and Italy are struggling to keep their ancient monuments in good condition.



Café talk

In some parts of Greece and Italy, far away from the busy towns and cities, life carries on at a very relaxed pace. Many families rest in the strong heat of the day. In the cooler evenings, men often gather in cafés for a drink and a chat.

So many tourists visit the Parthenon that its steps are being worn away.



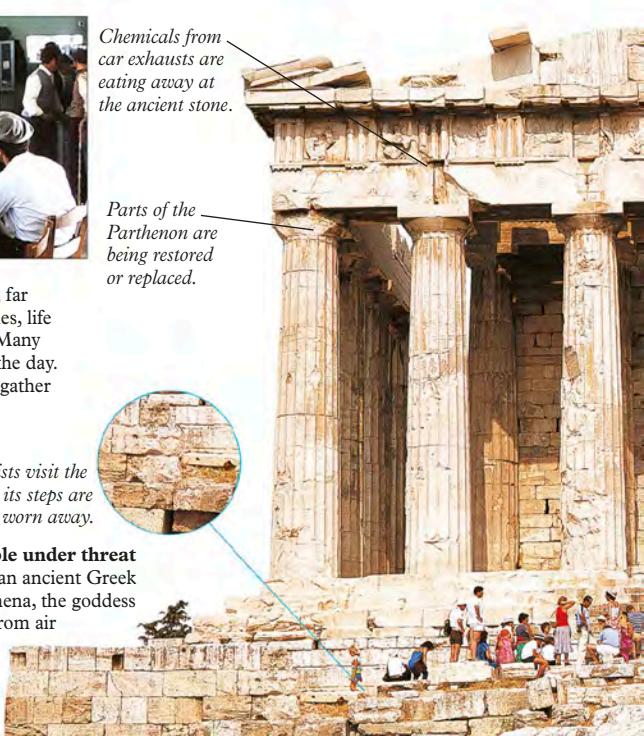
Temple under threat

The Parthenon in Athens is an ancient Greek temple, built to honor Athena, the goddess of wisdom. It is under threat from air pollution and visitors' feet, but work is being done to protect it.



Priests on parade

Greek Orthodox priests are allowed to get married, unlike Roman Catholic priests. Priests play an important part in both Greek and Italian society and are given great respect.





Cyprus



Greece



Italy



Malta



San Marino



Vatican City



The Pope's city

The Pope is head of the Roman Catholic Church. He lives in a tiny country called the Vatican City, which lies within the walls of Rome, the capital of Italy. This state has its own laws, police force, and even its own postal service!



Car Italia

Italy is world-famous for its cars. They've produced luxury sports cars including the Ferrari and Lamborghini. The Fiat car works in northern Italy was once among the largest car factories in the world.



Pasta preparations

More types of pasta are made in Italy than anywhere else in the world. Flour, eggs, vegetable oil, and salt are mixed to make dough, which is then rolled out and cooked. Pasta is often eaten with a tasty sauce.



Spaghetti
Bolognese



Big arches reduce the weight of this typical Venetian building.



Grand passions

Opera and soccer are two of Italy's top obsessions. The soccer World Cup took place in Italy in 1990. Luciano Pavarotti, the world-famous Italian opera singer, sang at a gala concert to celebrate this important tournament.

Brick foundations are laid on wooden posts, which are driven deep into the mud.

Sinking city

Venice was built on the mudbanks of a lagoon on Italy's northeast coast. The floating city is slowly sinking. Many of its buildings have been damaged by pollution and constant contact with water, and need to be carefully restored.



GERMANY, AUSTRIA, & SWITZERLAND



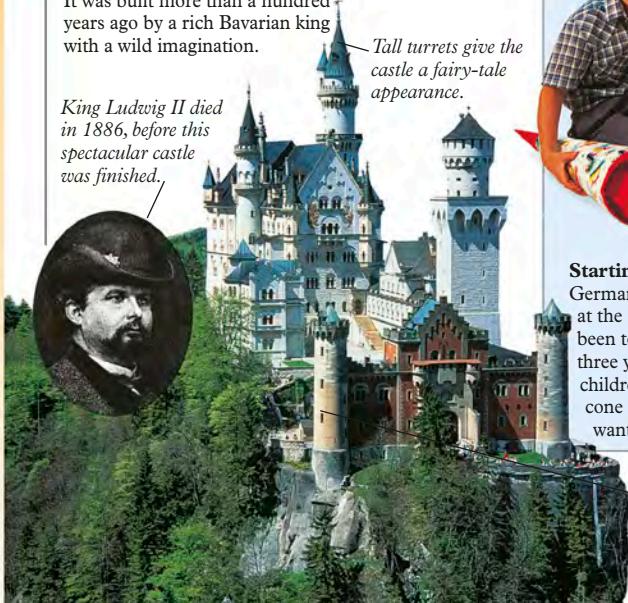
Germany, Austria, and Switzerland lie at the heart of Europe. Central Europeans share a love of traditional food, drink, and festivals. They also share a language, as German is the most widely spoken language of the region. Germany is a powerful country. After years of separation for political reasons,

East Germany rejoined West Germany in 1990 to become one big country. The wall dividing East from West Berlin was torn down amid great celebrations.

Fantasy castle

The castle of Neuschwanstein is nestled among the Bavarian Alps in south Germany. It was built more than a hundred years ago by a rich Bavarian king with a wild imagination.

King Ludwig II died in 1886, before this spectacular castle was finished.



Tall turrets give the castle a fairy-tale appearance.



Starting school

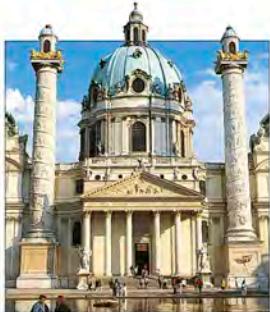
German children start primary school at the age of six, although most have been to a nursery, or kindergarten, for three years before this. On their first day, children are sent to school with a large cone stuffed with everything they will want, including candy, pens, and books.

The castle attracts tourists from all over the world.



Coming down the mountain

The return of cows from the Alps is celebrated in August. It is called the Einabtrieb. The cows are usually decorated in bright colors. But if somebody has died, the decorations are black or dark blue.



Very Viennese

One in five Austrians lives in Vienna, the capital of Austria. The city was once at the center of the great Austro-Hungarian empire. It is still an important city, and is the home of many United Nations organizations.



Four languages

Switzerland is surrounded by Germany, Austria, Liechtenstein, France, and Italy.

The languages spoken in Switzerland are French, German, Italian, and Romansch.

Most Swiss people speak German, but many speak at least two of these languages.



Austria



Germany



Liechtenstein



Switzerland



Snowy holiday

Every year, thousands of skiers visit resorts in Austria and Switzerland. Some people worry that mountain tourism spoils the environment. But it brings lots of money for both countries and is a big employer of local people.

The highest point of the wheel is nearly 213 feet (65 meters) above the ground.

Each carriage takes up to 12 passengers.

The biggest wheel

The Riesenrad in Vienna is one of the largest big wheels in the world. The wheel is 200 feet (61 meters) across, and it goes around at 30 inches (75 centimeters) per second.





CENTRAL AND EASTERN EUROPE

Central and eastern Europe has been invaded many times, but is now a meeting place for different cultures and religions. The downfall of communism in the 1980s and 1990s has liberated the countries of the region, but has also allowed old tensions between many of the ethnic groups to flare up again. Several new countries have been created, including the Czech Republic, Croatia, Slovenia, and Bosnia and Herzegovina.

Lake Bled

The picturesque snow-covered mountains and clear lakes of northwestern Slovenia draw tourists to the area. Lake Bled, with its beautiful village overlooking the waterside, is one of the most spectacular vacation resorts in Slovenia.



Fishermen of the Adriatic

These fishermen are from the island of Korcula, off the coast of Croatia. Local people have made a living from fishing since prehistoric times. Many families have their own boat and a private jetty.

Above the inscription "Prague, Head of the Kingdom" is the city's coat of arms.

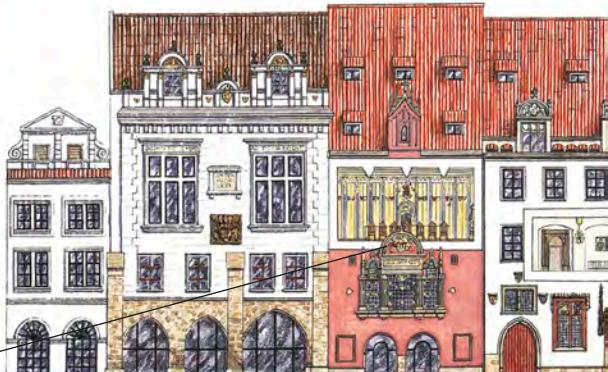


Hungarian dress

This traditional dress is covered in detailed embroidery. Colorful sewing is a typical Hungarian handicraft. Today this costume is only worn on special occasions.

Prague's town hall

Prague is the capital of the Czech Republic and one of the most beautiful cities in Europe. The Old Town Hall looks huge, but is really a row of small adjoining buildings.





Albania



Bosnia and Herzegovina



Bulgaria



Croatia



Czech Republic



Hungary



Kosovo



Macedonia



Montenegro



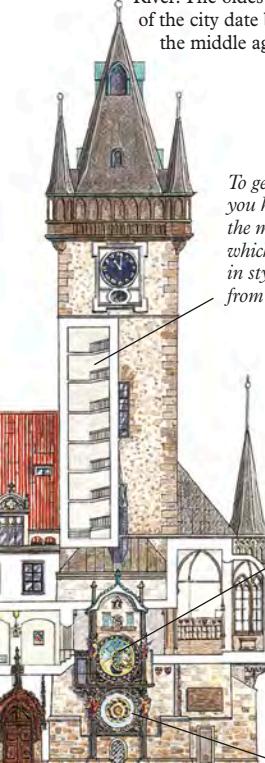
Bratislava castle

Bratislava is the capital of Slovakia and is situated on the Danube River. The oldest parts of the city date back to the middle ages.



City of learning

Many of Poland's buildings were lost in World War II, but Krakow's buildings escaped and the impressive streets are a reminder that Krakow was once the capital of Poland. The oldest university in Poland is situated in Krakow—the university of the Jagellonians.



To get to the steeple you have to enter the main doors, which are Gothic in style and carved from wood.

The face of this famous clock not only tells the time, but shows the movement of the sun and the moon through the twelve signs of the zodiac.

Pictures on the calendar show how the world changes with the four seasons.



Historic square

Warsaw, the capital of Poland, is more than 700 years old. Today its old town is a popular tourist attraction and people can explore the area in traditional horse-drawn carriages.



Poland



Romania



Serbia



Slovakia



Slovenia

Favorite foods

Here are some typical central and eastern European dishes.



Red borscht



Pork with cabbage and dumplings



Goulash



Dalmatian bake



Armenia



Azerbaijan



Belarus



Estonia



Georgia



Kazakhstan



Kyrgyzstan



Latvia

NORTHERN EURASIA

Eurasia is the name given to the combined landmass of Europe and Asia. Northern Eurasia stretches across a vast area, from Ukraine in the west to the frozen lands of Siberia. For centuries, northern Eurasia was controlled by powerful rulers and governments. But in 1991, the communist Soviet Union split into 15 independent states.



Musical entertainment

Named after the famous composer, the Moscow Tchaikovsky Conservatory is one of several conservatories in Russia. It is where the very best music students learn to master their chosen instruments.



Russian art

The Hermitage Museum in St. Petersburg is one of the largest museums in the world. It holds more than three million cultural artifacts and works of art in galleries totalling over 2.5 million sq feet (230,000 sq meters).



Daring dance

This energetic dance celebrates the courage of cossack soldiers from the Ukraine.

Going to church

Orthodox Christianity has been the traditional Russian religion for more than 1,000 years. The cathedral of St. Basil is one of the most spectacular Russian Orthodox churches.

*The cathedral lies
in Red Square,
right in the heart
of Moscow.*

*St. Basil's was
built for Tsar Ivan
the Terrible in the
1550s, to mark his
military successes.*





Lithuania



Moldova



Mongolia



Russian Federation



Tajikistan



Turkmenistan



Ukraine



Uzbekistan



Moscow State Circus

Some of the most famous circuses in the world are based in Russia. The Bolshoi Circus on Vernadskogo opened in 1971 and can seat an audience of up to 3,400 people. It entertains audiences with exciting aerial feats, trapeze artists, and amazing costumes.

A world of difference
The people of Central Asia look very different from the Russians who live farther north. They speak languages similar to Turkish and many are Muslims, like their neighbors in the Middle East. These women are selling bread at a market stall in Uzbekistan.



Northern Eurasians

The largest ethnic group of northern Eurasia is made up of Slavs. Next biggest is the Turkic-speaking population. Smaller groups include Mongols and Inuit.



Ukrainian Slav



Turkic-speaking Uzbek



Mongol



Russian Inuit



Colorful, onion-shaped domes top the nine chapels of St. Basil's.



Yesterday's hero

Ancestors of these Mongol horsemen fought in the army of the fierce Mongol emperor, Ghengis Khan, 1,000 years ago. Today, Ghengis Khan is once again a Mongolian national hero.



Caucasus Mountains

There is a huge diversity of ethnicity and language in the Caucasus Mountains. People generally live long lives, which may be due to their active lifestyle and the high altitude.



CHINA AND TAIWAN



There are more than a billion people in China—more than any other country. In fact, almost a fifth of the world's entire population lives in China.

Fifty-seven different ethnic groups live there, but by far the largest group is the Han, traditionally a peasant farming people.

Food and farming

Two-thirds of the Chinese people are farmers, growing crops on every spare patch of suitable land. Up to three crops of rice may be grown on the same paddy field each rice-growing season.

Rice is the basic food for China's huge population.



女人
Woman

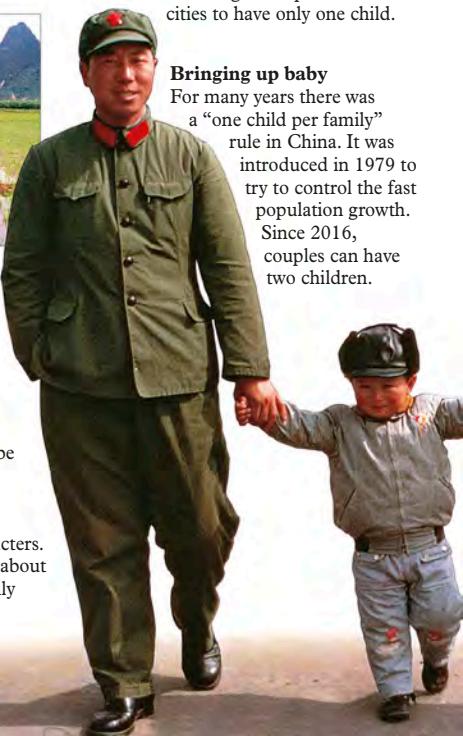
男人
Man



Lettering brush

Words and pictures

The Chinese written language is based on pictures, which describe objects, actions, and ideas. There are about 50,000 pictures, or characters. A simplified list of about 2,000 is commonly used today.



Communism in China

The Communist government in China plays an active role in people's everyday lives. This official government poster encouraged couples who live in cities to have only one child.

Bringing up baby

For many years there was a "one child per family" rule in China. It was introduced in 1979 to try to control the fast population growth. Since 2016, couples can have two children.



China



Taiwan



Folk art in Taiwan

Taiwan has some colorful folk traditions. A sticky mixture of rice and flour is dyed and molded to make these decorative figures. In the past, the flour and rice recipe was used to make children's snacks. Today, the figures are kept, not eaten.

Hong Kong

More than seven million people live in the 403 square miles (1,045 square kilometers) of Hong Kong, making it the world's most crowded place as well as a busy trading center.

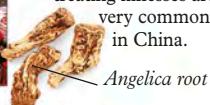


Most Chinese mothers work full-time. Their children are looked after in day care at the workplace, until they are old enough to go to school.



Get well soon

This street trader is selling herbal medicines. Ancient, natural ways of treating illnesses are very common in China.



Buddhist Tibet

Most people living in Tibet are Buddhists. They believe their past leaders are alive now in the body of their present leader, the Dalai Lama. In 1959, the Dalai Lama fled his home, the Potala Palace, to escape the invading Chinese army. He now lives in exile in India.



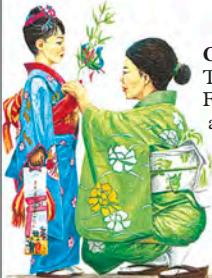


Fish food

The traditional Japanese diet of fish is very healthy. Many Japanese people live to be very old—in 2010, more than a quarter of the population was over 65 years old.

JAPAN & KOREA

Japan is famous for its electronic gadgets and machines. In the last 50 years, Japan has become one of the world's richest countries, and many Japanese people enjoy a high standard of living. Its neighbor, Korea, is split into two separate countries. North Korea has cut off its links with the South and is one of the world's most secretive societies. South Korea is a successful industrial country, like Japan, and trades with the rest of the world.



Children on parade

The Seven-Five-Three Festival in Japan is named after the ages of the children who take part. Every year on November 15, girls and boys are dressed up in traditional costumes and taken to a Shinto shrine. It is a very sociable occasion.



Watch your head

These pupils are not hiding from their teacher! They are practicing what to do if there is an earthquake. Earthquakes do not happen often in Japan, but they could happen any time. In the past, they have caused terrible damage.

Dinnertime

The evening meal is an important time for busy Japanese families to get together and relax. Parents often get home late from work, and children have lots of homework to do in the evenings.



Rice is cooked until it is sticky, so it is easy to eat with pointed chopsticks.

An electric rice cooker sits close to the table.

Japanese tea is drunk without milk, and is called green tea.



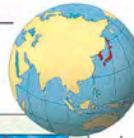
Japan



North Korea



South Korea



Colorful Koreans

This woman is wearing the national costume of South Korea. It is made of brightly colored material. South Korea sells huge amounts of material to the rest of the world. Millions of square yards of cotton are produced in South Korea every year.



The food is placed on the table before the family sits down to eat.

The family sits on cushions around a low table to eat their meal.

Chopstick rest
Presentation is very important in Japanese cooking. Portions are always small.



Selling ships

Most of the ships in Asia are made at the Hyundai shipyard in South Korea, the biggest shipyard in the world. It has 9,000 employees, and in 2015 it became the first shipbuilder to deliver its 2,000th ship.



Watch this space

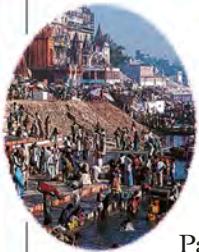
The big cities of Japan can get extremely crowded. Space is often very hard to come by, but the smallest places are always put to good use. This small kiosk in Tokyo has hundreds of items for sale.



Climb every mountain
Japanese people work hard, but they also enjoy their hobbies. Japan has some stunning mountain ranges, and many Japanese people keep fit with mountain climbing. These hikers are on Mount Furano-Dake, on the island of Hokkaido in northern Japan.

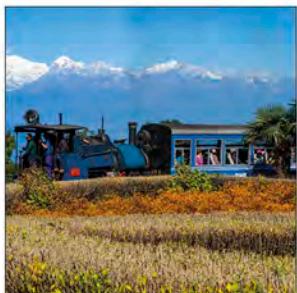


THE INDIAN SUBCONTINENT



Bound by the Himalayas in the north and the Indian Ocean in the south, the Indian subcontinent is a region that includes the nations of India,

Pakistan, Bangladesh, Bhutan, Nepal, and the Maldives. Most of these countries are young, having formed after the end of European colonial rule in the 20th century. Hinduism, Islam, and Buddhism are the most common religions practiced in the subcontinent.



Railroad network

Stretching over an amazing 41,861 miles (67,368 km), the railroad network in India is one of the largest in the world. Most people in India prefer to use trains to travel between towns and cities. Trains are run by the government-owned organization called Indian Railways, which employs more than 1.4 million people and is one of the largest employers in the world.



Urban life

A booming economy underlines India's rapid growth into one of the world's fastest developing nations.

Almost a third of India's population now lives in urban areas, mainly in big metropolitan cities such as New Delhi and Mumbai. Skyscrapers frame parts of the skyline of Mumbai, which has a population of more than 22 million.





Bangladesh



Bhutan



India



Maldives



Nepal



Pakistan



Sri Lanka



Floods in Bangladesh

Bangladesh is a very low, flat country, crisscrossed with rivers. After heavy rain, flooding can cause terrible damage. This farmer is helping to push a tricycle taxi, called a rickshaw, through a flooded village in northeastern Bangladesh.



A world of films

India has one of the most successful film industries in the world, and produces the highest number of films in a year—1,986 films were produced in 2017 alone. The Hindi branch of this industry – Bollywood—is centered in Mumbai. Bollywood films are famous around the world for their vivacious song-and-dance routines, glamorous sets, and colorful dresses.



The land of tea

Sri Lanka is one of the largest exporters of tea in the world, and the country is famous for the Ceylon tea it produces. Tea is consumed in most households, and it has become a major source of revenue for the people.



Playing cricket

Introduced by the British in the 19th century, the sport of cricket has millions of followers across the subcontinent. Many children start playing cricket from a very young age, and can often be seen on the streets and in the parks. Becoming a cricketer is now a well-paid job!



SOUTHEAST ASIA

It is hard to get away from water in most parts of Southeast Asia! The twelve countries that make up the region are linked by waterways and surrounded by oceans. The hot, wet environment is ideal for farming rice, the staple crop of the region. It also supports large areas of tropical rainforests.

Sadly, heavy logging has forced many forest people to move into towns, where the way of life is very different.



People power

The Penan people live in the rainforests of Sarawak. They have tried to stop the destruction of their forest home by blocking roads into the rainforest. Sarawak has the world's highest rate of logging.

Living with water

Many houses in Malaysia and Indonesia are built on stilts. This helps protect them from floods during torrential rainstorms.

The houses are called "long houses. Behind each door is a large room, or "bilik," where the family lives.



The secret of success

The small island state of Singapore is a powerful trading nation. Singapore became successful because of its position. It was built up as a key trading post between the Far East and the West, and is now one of Asia's richest countries.

The houses are made both from natural and modern materials. Some roofs are made from palms, others from corrugated iron.





Cambodia



East Timor



Indonesia



Laos



Malaysia



Palau



Philippines



Singapore



Thailand



Vietnam



Floating market

Much of Bangkok in Thailand is below sea level, and the city has a busy network of canals. Floating markets are colorful occasions—local traders bring their goods to market by boat, and shoppers paddle up to take a look at what is on display.

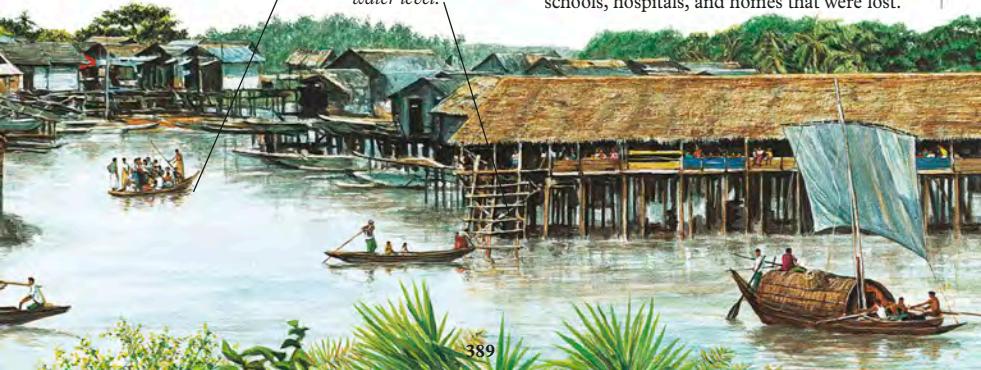


Religious teaching

The vast majority of Thais are Buddhists. Every male Buddhist is expected to become a monk for a while, to study religious teachings and prepare for adult life.

Boats are the main form of transportation. Rivers provide links between small communities.

Notched tree trunks or ladders are used to get down to the water level.





Australia



Fiji



Kiribati



Marshall Islands

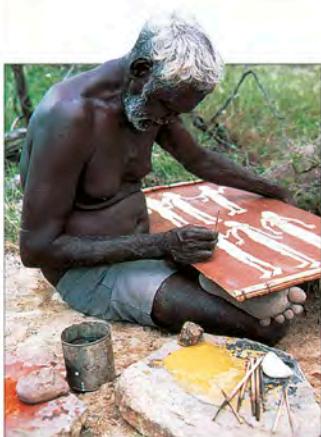


Micronesia

AUSTRALASIA & OCEANIA



Most Australians live in big cities like Sydney, the capital of New South Wales. Both Australia and New Zealand are big economic powers, trading mainly with Asia and the United States. By contrast, many Pacific islanders of Oceania live in isolated communities that have little contact with the outside world.



Aboriginal art

Aboriginal peoples were the first to settle in Australia, more than 50,000 years ago. They have strong artistic traditions, and Aboriginal art is now sold around the world, making much-needed money for their communities.

Australian megamix

British settlers first came to Australia about 250 years ago, but in the last 70 years there have been many new arrivals from other parts of Europe and Asia.

Many Italians moved to Australia after World War II.

The majority of Australians share a love of the outdoors, and live by the sea.



Emergency!

The Royal Flying Doctor Service is a lifesaver for people living in remote parts of Australia. Few patients are more than a two-hour flight away from a hospital.



Nauru



New Zealand



Papua New Guinea



Samoa



Solomon Islands



Tonga



Tuvalu



Vanuatu



Teaching in Tonga

Tonga is one of the independent nations among the Pacific islands of Oceania. English and Tongan are the two official languages for the small population of around 106,000. In Tonga, children have to go to school between the ages of five and eighteen.



This boy has Vietnamese parents. English is his second language, just as it is for one in five other Australians.



Stone money

Some Pacific island tribal traditions have not changed for thousands of years. The people of Yap island still use stones like this one as money when they make important property deals.



Rugby dance

The Maoris settled in New Zealand about 1,000 years ago. The New Zealand rugby team, the All Blacks, has borrowed some Maori traditions. They use an old Maori war chant, called a haka, to get them in the mood for matches.



This girl's parents are Chinese. Many Australians are of Asian descent.



Surfing is popular along the coast of Australia.

First people

These people were some of the first settlers in Australasia and Oceania.



Pacific islander



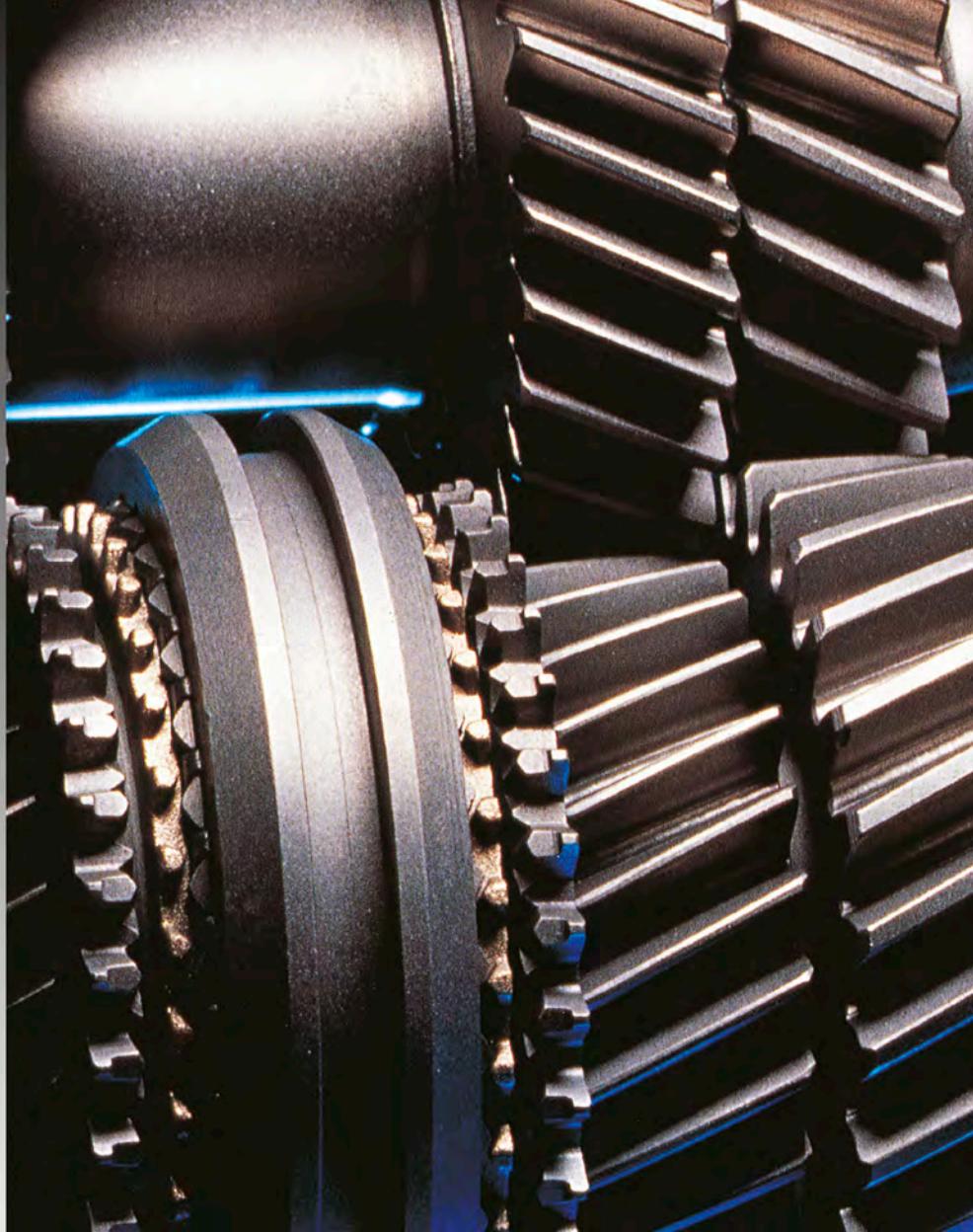
Papua New Guinea tribesman



Maori woman



Aboriginal tribesman





CHAPTER 4

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

Through the centuries, people's lives have changed enormously. Today, the way you live is completely dominated by technology, from the electric toaster that produces your breakfast to the bus that takes you to school.

Computers, devices, and apps have become central to how you learn new things, play games, entertain yourself, meet new people, and keep in touch with family and friends.

Science and technology have helped us in lots of ways. Because of them, we can grow and distribute food cheaply, manufacture clothing and household goods in huge quantities, treat illnesses of all kinds, travel from place to place quickly, and communicate with people all over the world in an instant.

But we have to be very careful to use the technology we have in a responsible way. The same knowledge that saves lives and makes our world better can also lead to the development of dangerous weapons, chemicals that make us sick, and pollution that harms our planet.

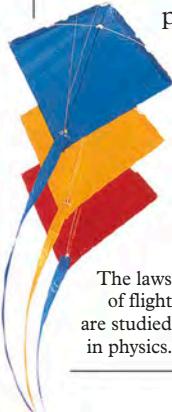
**Science and Machines
Energy and Industry
Transportation**



SCIENCE AND MACHINES

You don't need to walk into a laboratory to see science in action. Science is all around you, every day of your life. There are three main kinds of science. The science of the natural world—plants and animals—is called biology. The study of what things are made of, and what happens when they are mixed together, is chemistry. The third science, physics, is about how everything in the universe works.

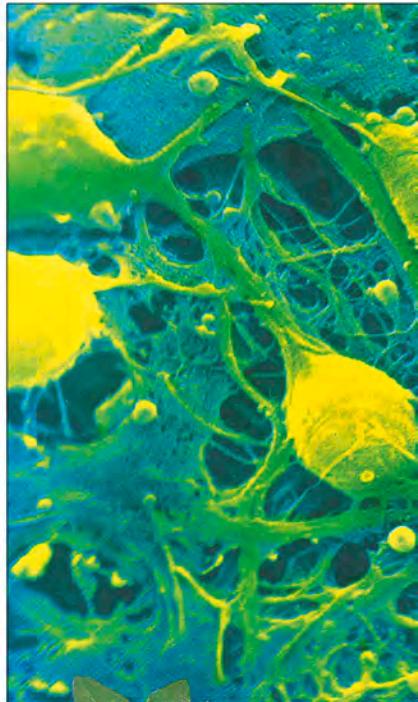
The world of physics includes the study of machines. Machines help us to perform tasks using less effort. For example, one of the first machines, the wheel, makes it easier to move things from place to place. From scissors to smoke detectors, machines are all around us, making our lives easier and safer.



The laws of flight are studied in physics.



Cooking an egg is everyday chemistry. When you heat it, a chemical reaction turns the runny part hard and white.



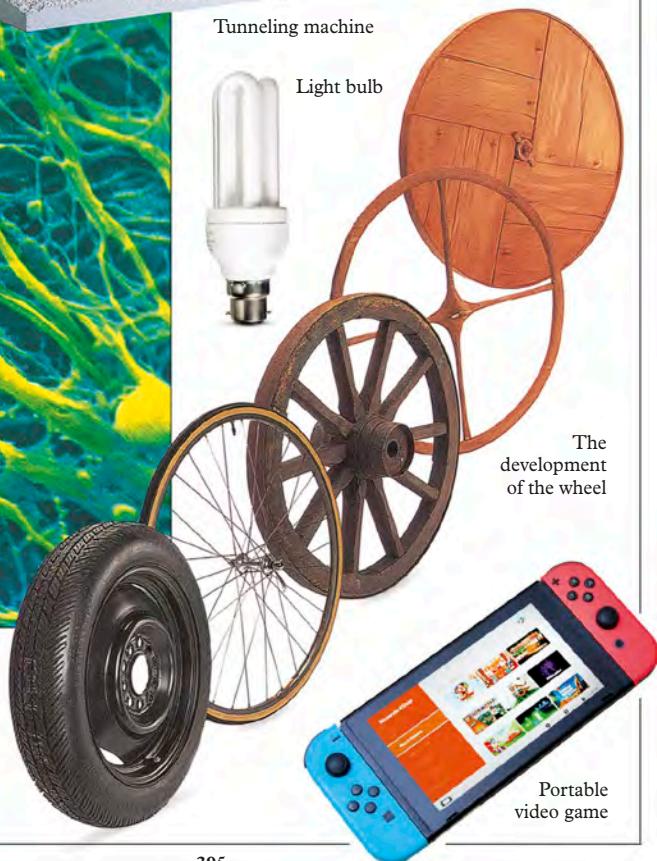
Biology is all about living things.



Colored image of nerve cells from the brain.



Quartz clock



Portable video game

LIVING THINGS

You are a living thing. All living things are made up of cells, and your body is made up of many billions of cells. Your cells join together to make tissues, for example muscles. Tissues combine to make organs, such as your heart. Biologists are scientists who study living things. They have divided the world of living things into groups called "kingdoms." The study of plants is called botany, and the study of animals is called zoology.

Now

20 minutes later

40 minutes later

One hour later

Splitting up

Living things are made up of at least one cell. For a living thing to reproduce and grow, its cells must keep on splitting into identical pairs. This single-cell bacterium divides every 20 minutes. Look how many bacteria there are after one hour.

Fly agaric fungus



Bacteria and fungi kingdoms

Bacteria are so tiny they can't be seen without a microscope. They have a simple, one-cell structure. Bacteria and fungi feed on other living things and recycle the remains.

All living things make copies of themselves. This process is called reproduction.

Living things all find some way of breathing. A cat breathes through its nose.

Moss

Seaweed

Cherries



A kitten grows up into a cat. All living things grow.

Living things need food to stay alive.



Sweet chestnut



Poppy heads and seeds



Gerbera flower



All living things move, but you can't always see the movement.

A cat hears with its ears. Every living thing is sensitive in some way to the world around it.

Plant kingdom

There are many different kinds of plants. Some are soft and small enough to hold in your hand. Others are enormous and woody. Some plants have flowers, but others don't. Green plants use sunlight, water, and carbon dioxide to make their own food.



Raft spinner



Hoverflies

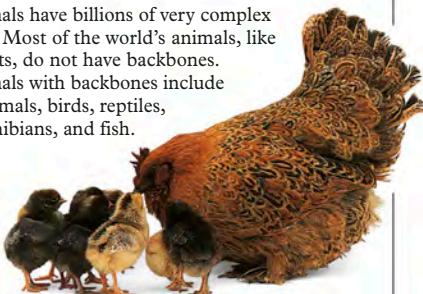


Badger

Animal kingdom

Animals have billions of very complex cells. Most of the world's animals, like insects, do not have backbones.

Animals with backbones include mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians, and fish.



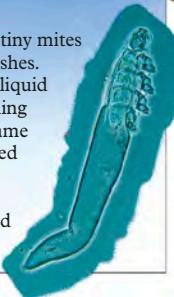
Hen with chicks



Grass snake



Spotted salamander



Cuban hock

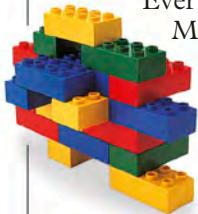


Shore crab

Rudd



SOLIDS



Everything is made up of matter.

Molecules are the building blocks of matter. In solids, molecules are usually packed together in a regular way, so the solid keeps its shape without needing a container to hold it.

Most matter is visible, like

the pages of this book, but some matter is invisible, like air. Matter may be solid, liquid, or gas, and change from one state to another.



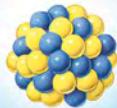
In a state

Ice, water, and steam are made up of the same molecules. They are not alike because their molecules are spaced differently. Solid ice melts into liquid water. When water is boiled, it turns into a gas called steam.

Hydrogen atom



Uranium atom



Amazing atoms

The smallest amount of a pure substance is called an atom. The simplest atom is hydrogen, but other atoms are more complex. Atoms are incredibly tiny—about 100,000 million atoms fit on this period.

Molecules in a solid

Each of these children is acting the part of a molecule in a solid.

The children are all wearing red T-shirts, to show that the molecules are all the same.

The molecules in most solids make up a very regular pattern.



Solids on show

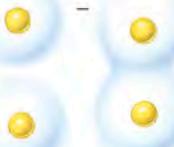
You can tell these solids apart because they do not look, feel, weigh or smell the same. They all have different properties.



A flower is soft and delicate.

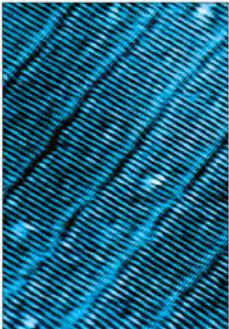
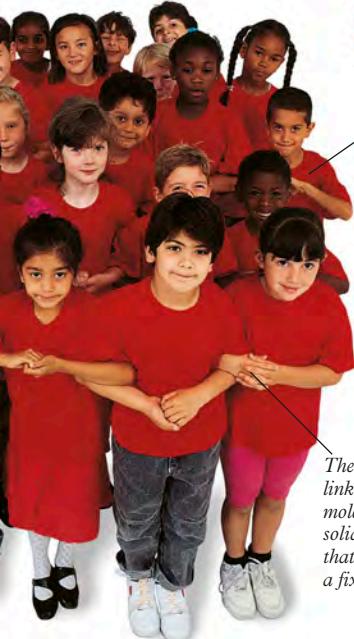


A cake is crumbly and tasty.



Making molecules

Atoms link up to make molecules. Two atoms of hydrogen join together to make one molecule of hydrogen gas.



The molecules in a cool solid do not move around very fast. If a solid is heated, the molecules move around faster and faster.



A shell is hard and brittle.

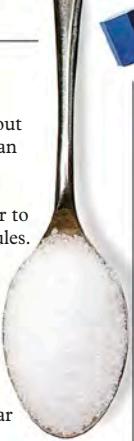


A spider's web is light and strong.

Larger than life

These long, thin wax molecules are shown about 3 million times larger than they are in real life. The tiny blue dots are atoms that have joined together to make up the wax molecules.

Sugar



Crystal clear

Grains of sugar are solid crystals. Their atoms are close together and arranged in a regular pattern called a lattice. Many solids that look smooth actually have a crystal structure, like these vitamin C tablets.



Vitamin C tablets

Vitamin C crystals, seen through a microscope.



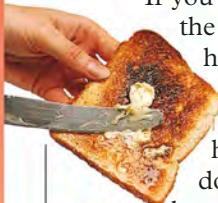
Graphite and diamond

Graphite is soft and is used in pencils, and diamond is the hardest solid in the world. But diamond and graphite have a lot in common! They are two different forms of carbon. This means they have the same molecules, but they are arranged in different ways.





LIQUIDS



If you spread some butter on hot toast, the butter melts. When a solid gets hot enough to melt, it turns into a liquid. Liquids behave differently than solids. The heat that melts a solid breaks down some of the strong links between molecules, so that the molecules can move around more freely. A liquid flows because its molecules can't hold together strongly enough to form a solid shape.

Syrup flows slowly.

Car oil flows fairly well.

Ink flows very easily.

Sticky spoonful

Some liquids flow much more easily than others. Liquids that are "viscous" do not flow well.

Molecules in a liquid

These children are behaving like molecules in a liquid.



Fair shares?

Who has more milk to drink? It may not look like it, but these glasses hold the same amount. Containers of different shapes can hold the same volume, or amount, of liquid.

Liquid levels

Liquids flow to fill containers of any shape or size. The surface of a liquid always stays level however much you may tilt the container.





Too hot to handle?

Ice creams melt very easily, but not all solids have such low melting points. Some only melt if they are heated to very high temperatures. The steel in this factory melts at 2,732°F (1,500°C).

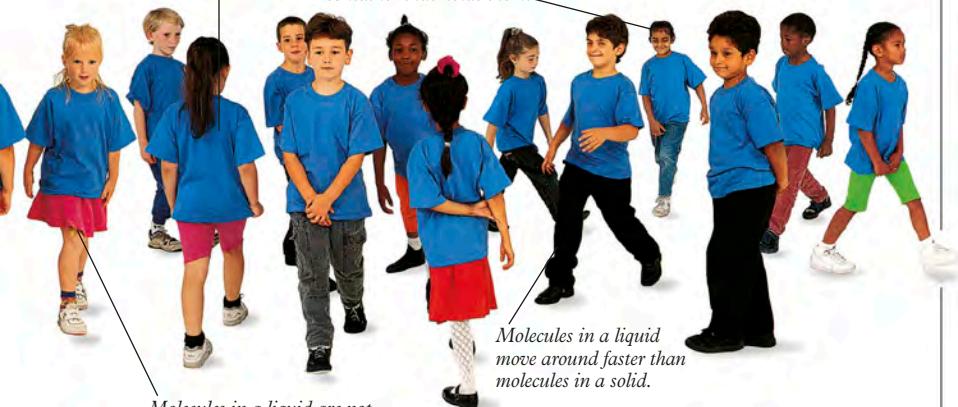
On the boil

When a liquid is heated to a certain temperature, it turns into a gas. This temperature is called the boiling point. Different liquids have different boiling points. The water in this pan boils at 212°F (100°C).



In a liquid, the molecules are separate from each other.

Moving molecules can get into all the corners of a container. This is why liquids take up the shape of the container that holds them.



Molecules in a liquid are not arranged in a regular pattern, so they can move around freely.

Molecules in a liquid move around faster than molecules in a solid.

On the surface

Molecules near the surface of a liquid pull toward each other. A drop keeps its shape because of this surface tension. If some dishwashing liquid is added to a water drop, the surface tension is made weaker, so the drop spreads out.



Good mixers

Cranberry juice mixes well with water. It dissolves completely.



Bad mixers

Some liquids do not mix at all. Oil does not dissolve in water.

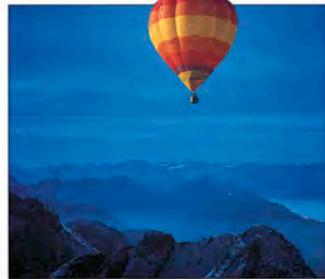




GASES



Gases are all around us and can't usually be seen or felt, but some can be smelled. All smells are molecules of gas mixed in the air. If you smell some tasty soup, you are actually sniffing in molecules of the soup. When you heat a liquid, it turns into a gas. The heat makes the molecules in the liquid move around faster and faster. The gas molecules fly off in all directions, spreading through the air.



Lighter than air

When a gas gets hot, it takes up more room and gets lighter. A hot-air balloon rises up in the air because the air inside it is hot, and much lighter than the air outside.



Dancing on air

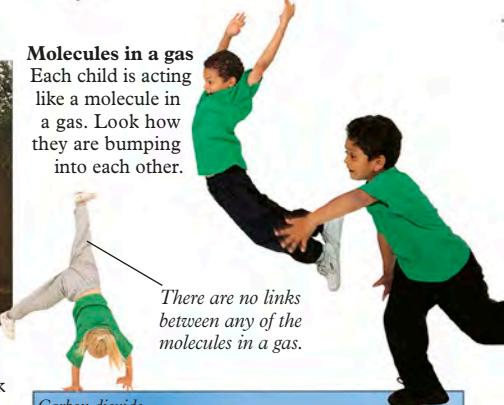
When a shaft of light shines through a gap in the trees, specks of dust look like they are dancing in the sunlight. What is really happening is that the molecules in the air currents move around, flicking the dust in all directions.



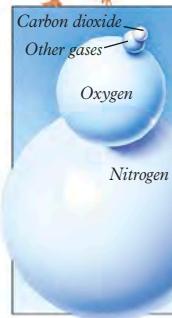
As a gas spreads, the molecules get farther and farther apart. Gases will always spread to fit the space they are in.

Molecules in a gas

Each child is acting like a molecule in a gas. Look how they are bumping into each other.



There are no links between any of the molecules in a gas.



In the air

There are a number of different gases in the air we breathe. 78 percent of air is nitrogen gas. Oxygen makes up 21 percent. Carbon dioxide and a variety of other gases make up just one percent of the gases in the air.



Pumping air

It is easy to squash together, or compress, gas molecules. When you pump up a tire, you compress air molecules into a small space. The more air molecules you pump in, the more they push against the inside of the tire. The tire gets harder because pressure increases inside it.

High pressure

Air presses on everything on Earth. You can see air pressure at work. If you suck juice out of a carton, the carton buckles. This is because the air pressure pushing on the carton is greater than the air pressure inside the carton.

Molecules in a gas move very quickly, darting around in all directions...



Out of breath

Gases can dissolve in liquids, and oxygen from the air dissolves in water. Fish need oxygen to breathe, so they use the oxygen in water to survive under water. Humans also breathe oxygen, but unlike fish, we can't breathe under water without a supply of compressed air.

Night and day

Plants help keep the balance of gases in the air. Night and day, they take in oxygen and "breathe out" carbon dioxide, as we do. But by day, they also take in large amounts of carbon dioxide—which they need to make their food and give off oxygen.

ENERGY



Energy is needed for life, and for every single movement in the whole universe. When you have run a race, you may feel that you have used up all your energy. But your energy has not been lost, it has changed into different kinds of energy: movement and heat. When work is done, energy is never lost, but it changes into other kinds of energy. Movement and heat energy are just two of the many different kinds of energy.



Eating energy

We get our energy from food, and we need to eat plants, or animals that have eaten plants, to stay alive. Plants get energy to grow from sunlight, so our energy really comes from the sun.



Sun power

Living things that grew millions of years ago were buried under rock, where they slowly turned into coal, oil, and gas. Energy from these fuels comes from the sun, shining long ago.



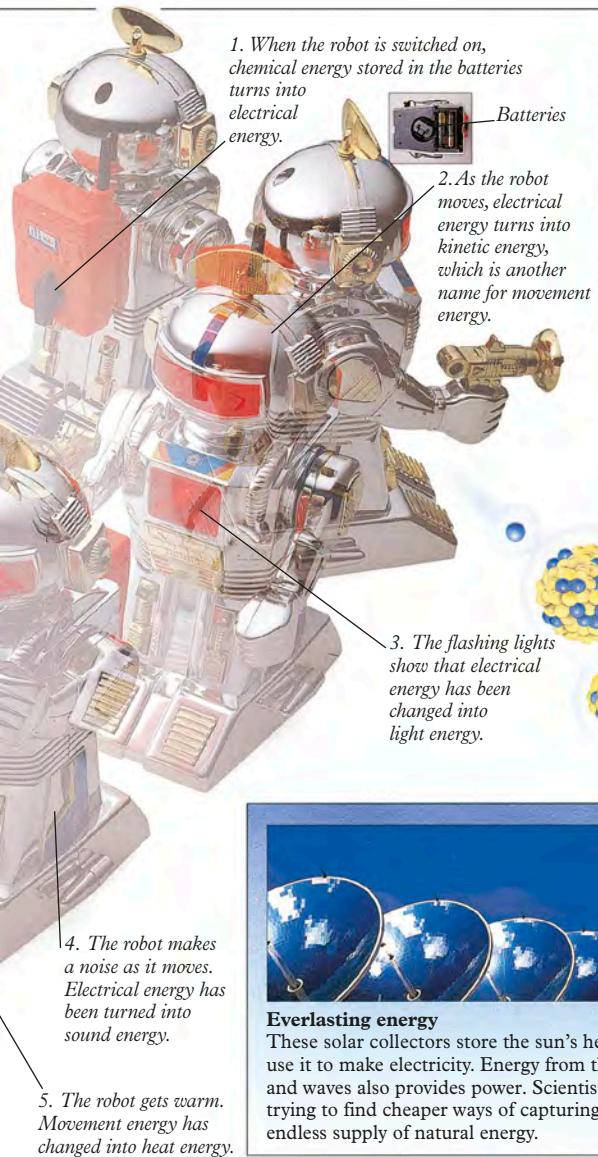
Jumping jack

When the lid is closed, the puppet's spring is coiled up, ready to push the puppet out of the box. We say the spring has potential energy. When you open the lid, the spring's potential energy turns into movement energy.

Energy changes

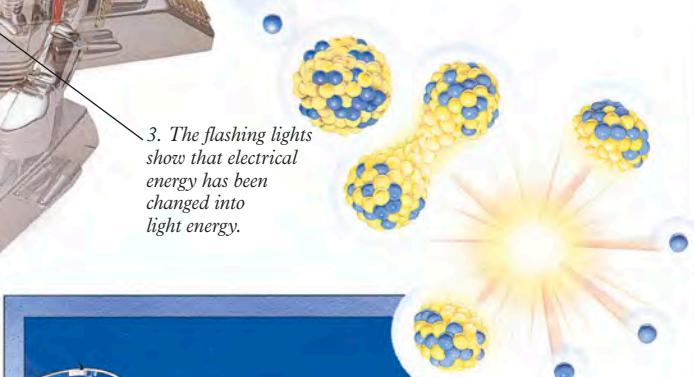
We can't make energy, or destroy it. Instead, energy can change from one kind to another. This toy robot shows how energy may not stay in one form for very long!





Running out of energy

Most machines need energy to work. The energy from oil, coal, and gas is in danger of running out altogether. Once these fuels, called fossil fuels, have been used up, we will never be able to replace them.



Everlasting energy

These solar collectors store the sun's heat and use it to make electricity. Energy from the wind and waves also provides power. Scientists are trying to find cheaper ways of capturing the endless supply of natural energy.

Splitting the atom

Neutrons are tiny particles inside an atom. If a uranium atom takes in one extra neutron, it splits, releasing a huge amount of energy.

Nuclear energy produces radioactive waste, which has to be handled and disposed of very carefully.





HEAT

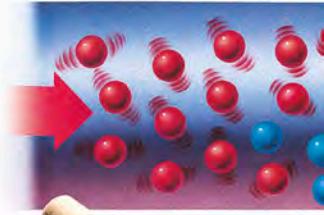


The sun's rays can make you very hot. The way heat rays move through air is called radiation. You feel warm because the radiation makes the molecules in your skin move around faster than usual. Heat comes from molecules moving around.

It moves through solids by conduction—the molecules in a solid vibrate, bumping the heat along. Heat travels through air and liquids in a circular movement called convection.

Snug as a bug?

Heat doesn't travel easily through air, so materials that trap air keep you warm. This polar explorer is wearing clothes made of materials that insulate his body. This means they keep his body heat close to his body, where he needs it.

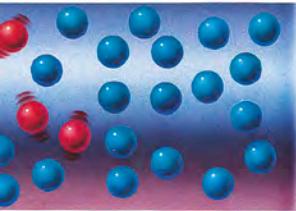


Heat moves along the _____ wooden spoon by conduction. The spoon takes a long time to get hot because wood is not a good conductor of heat.



Tricky fingers

If you dip one finger in hot water and another in cold, the hot water will feel hot and the cold water will feel cold. If you then dip both fingers in lukewarm water, your "hot" finger is tricked into finding the water cold, and your "cold" finger finds the water hot.



Good conductors

If you heat a solid, its molecules jostle around, passing the heat from molecule to molecule. Just as a whisper moves along a line of children, so the moving molecules pass, or conduct, the heat from one end of the solid to the other.



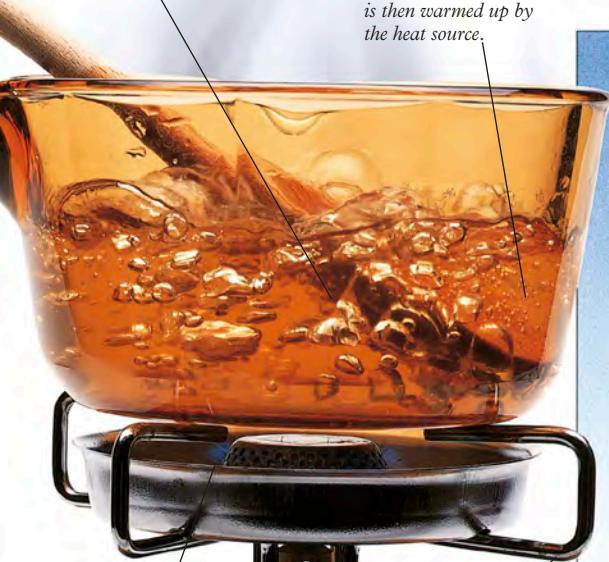
Building bridges

When most solids are heated, they get bigger, or expand. This is because the heat speeds up the molecules, and they get farther and farther apart as they move. Bridges are built with small gaps between the sections of the roadway, so there is room for them to expand on a hot day.

When the water near the heat source gets hot, it rises up toward the surface.

As the water reaches its boiling point, it evaporates into steam.

The cooler water near the surface will sink to the bottom of the pan, where it is then warmed up by the heat source.



The flames are a direct source of heat.

Metal is a good conductor of heat.

Familiar temperatures

212°F (100°C)
Water boils

140°F (60°C)
Cup of coffee

98.6°F (37°C)
Body temperature

86°F (30°C)
Hot summer day

50°F (10°C)
Cold drink

32°F (0°C)
Water freezes

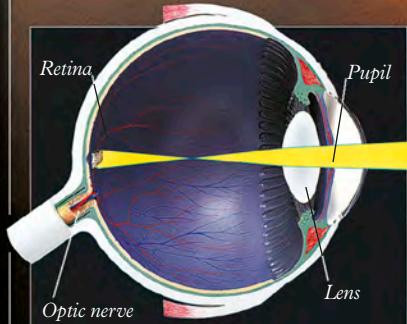


LIGHT



You may need to wear sunglasses on a sunny day, because the bright light hurts your eyes. It is dangerous to look straight at the sun. The sun's light is not just blinding, it also travels to us very fast. In just one second, light travels 186,000 miles (300,000 kilometers). If a straight beam of light has to pass through obstacles such as convex and concave lenses, it changes direction.

This is called refraction.

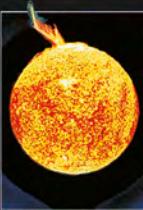


How we see light

Light enters your eye through your pupil. It passes through a lens, which focuses the object you are looking at onto the retina. Millions of tiny cells inside the retina turn this upside-down image into electrical messages. The optic nerve carries these messages to your brain, which "sees" the image the right way up.

Hot stuff

Most light comes from hot objects. A very hot object makes a very bright light. The sun is white hot, and sunlight is the brightest natural light we have.



Concave lenses curve inward in the middle.

This beam of light comes from a flashlight. A flashlight is a man-made light source.

Light bends outward when it passes through a concave lens.

Convex lenses bulge in the middle.



Light for life

Plants always grow toward the light, even if, like this plant, they have to grow around corners to reach it! Light is very important for life. Plants need light to grow, and we need to eat plants, or animals that eat plants, to stay alive.



The big bang!

Light travels faster than sound. When fireworks explode high in the sky, you see the lights before you hear the loud bang. Light reaches your eyes more quickly than sound reaches your ears.



Over the rainbow

Drops of rain act like tiny prisms. When light passes through raindrops, the colors of light are split up to form a rainbow.

When a beam of light passes through a prism, the colors split apart because each wavelength is bent a different amount.

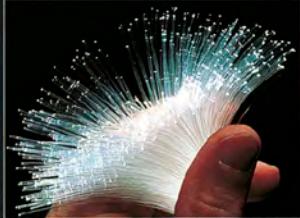
A prism is a solid, triangle-shaped piece of glass or plastic.

Light travels in tiny waves. Light has a mixture of different wavelengths.

When light passes through a convex lens, it is bent, or refracted, inward.

When light is reflected, the beams of light bounce off the mirror at the same angle as they hit it.

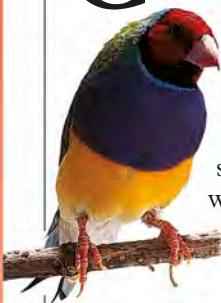
When light hits an object that it can't travel through, such as this mirror, a shadow forms behind the object where the light can't reach.



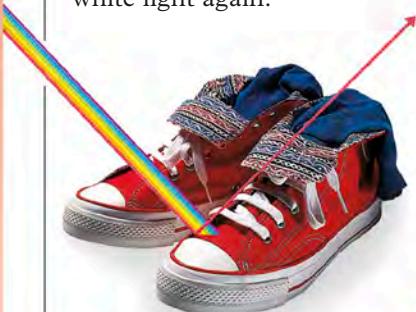
Busy line

When you talk on the telephone, your voice is turned into laser light signals and sent down very thin fiber glass tubes called optical fibers. Up to 150,000 different conversations can be sent down just one of these optical fibers.

COLOR

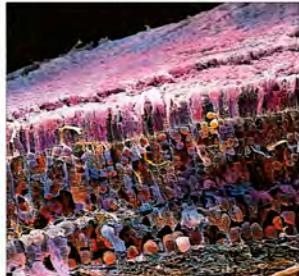


Imagine waking up in a world without color. There would be no beautiful paintings or rainbows to look at, and no bright shoes or clothes to wear. At night when you switch off the light, all the bright colors around you suddenly disappear. This is because you cannot see the color of an object without light. White light can be split into all the colors of the rainbow—shades of red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet. When all these colors are mixed back together, they make white light again.



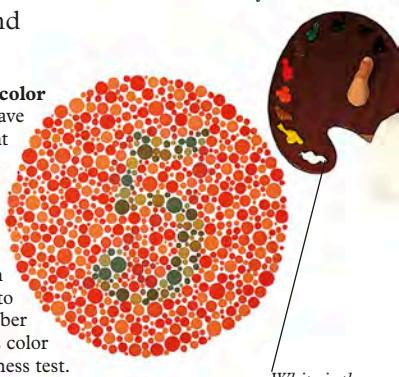
Seeing red

We see things because light bounces off them. Light is actually a mixture of all the colors of the rainbow. When light hits these shoes, all the colors sink in, except the red color that is reflected back to your eyes.



Color cones

The inside of the back of your eye looks like this through a microscope. You have cells in the back of your eyes called cones, which send messages to your brain about the colors you see.



White is the

only color that can't be made
by mixing together
the primary colors of paint.

Light mixing

The colors of light behave differently than paint colors. When red, green, and blue light are mixed together, they make white light. When the same colors of paint are mixed, it makes a dark color.

Paint mixing

You can make new colors by mixing the primary colors of paint together.



Blue, yellow, and
red are the primary
colors of paint.

Red and yellow
mix to make
orange.

Blue and
red mix to
make purple.

Different shades
can be made by
adding more of
one color than
another.



Tasty morsels

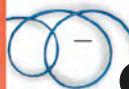
Which of these dinners do you prefer? Both meals would taste the same, but the food coloring in one puts you off before you start. Color can change our feelings about things, especially food.



Warning colors

Colors are often used as a warning. This moth is poisonous, and its bright wings warn hungry birds to leave it alone. We also use colors to warn us of danger. A red traffic light tells us to stop, but a green traffic light means that it is safe to go.





SOUND



Astronauts talk to each other by radio because their voices can't travel through empty space.

Sound travels in waves. When these waves move through air, the air molecules move quickly, or vibrate. If there are no air molecules, no sound is made, because there is nothing to vibrate.

When you shout, the vocal cords in your throat vibrate. These vibrations pass through your mouth into the air, making the air itself vibrate. Your ear picks up the vibrations and you can hear them as sound.



Wailing whales

Whales communicate under water over huge distances. The sound of a great whale may travel hundreds of miles under water. Sound travels faster and farther through liquids and solids than through air. This is because molecules in liquids and solids are more tightly packed.

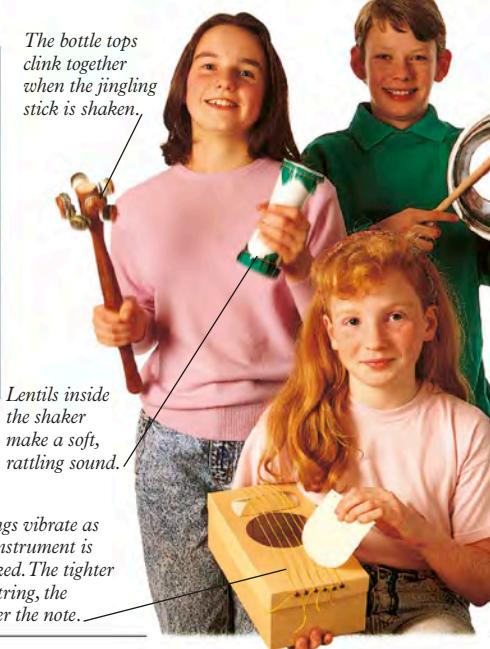


Strings vibrate as the instrument is plucked. The tighter the string, the higher the note.



Deafening decibels

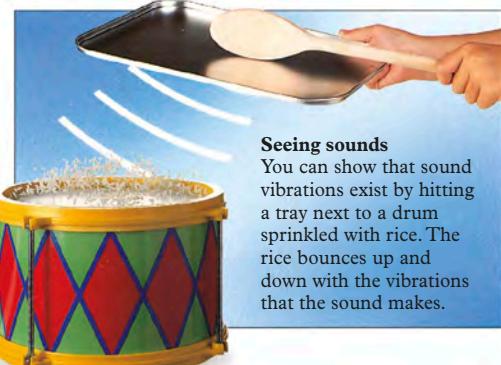
The loudness of sounds is measured in decibels. When airplanes land, they reach a very high number of decibels. This ground controller is wearing ear protectors to prevent being deafened by the noise.



The bottle tops clink together when the jingling stick is shaken.

Lentils inside the shaker make a soft, rattling sound.

Strings vibrate as the instrument is plucked. The tighter the string, the higher the note.



Seeing sounds

You can show that sound vibrations exist by hitting a tray next to a drum sprinkled with rice. The rice bounces up and down with the vibrations that the sound makes.

Hitting a tin pan
makes it vibrate.
You hear a loud
and crashing noise.



What is frequency?

The number of complete sound waves that pass by in a second gives us the “frequency” of a sound. Frequency is measured in hertz. High notes have a high frequency. They make lots of vibrations, and have a high number of hertz. Low notes have a low frequency.

When a wind instrument is played, the air inside the tube vibrates to make a sound.

Blowing into the pipe makes the air inside it vibrate all the way along to the funnel at the end.



Bouncing sound

This pregnant woman can see her baby before it is born because of sound. High-frequency sound waves are reflected as they reach the baby, making an image on the computer screen.

Hearing sounds

We cannot hear sounds of very high or low frequencies, but some animals can. It is impossible for us to hear these sounds because they are outside our hearing range.



Bat

up to 120,000 hertz



Mouse

up to 91,000 hertz



Cat

up to 64,000 hertz



Dog

up to 45,000 hertz



Young person

up to 20,000 hertz



FORCE AND MOVEMENT



A rocket can only take off because a blast of energy forces it to move. Things move if they are pushed or pulled, or if they are high up to start with. The movement they make has a speed in a particular direction. How quickly they speed up depends on how big the force is, and how heavy the moving thing is. Some forces make things move, but others stop things from moving. Friction is the name for the force that stops movement.



The go-cart wheels will keep moving until something stops them or slows them down.



Pull it!



Playing with force
Forces can act in lots of different directions to change the shape of something. Try this for yourself with a lump of modeling clay.

Speed and velocity

The time something takes to move a distance is called speed. Velocity is speed in a particular direction. A rocket's velocity is much greater than a snail's!

A snail moves at about 0.003 miles (0.005 km) per hour.



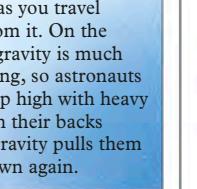
A fast sprinter runs at about 27 miles (43 km) per hour.



A race car reaches speeds of up to 257 miles (413 km) per hour.



A rocket needs to travel at 25,000 miles (40,000 km) per hour.



Down to earth

When you jump, a strong force called gravity pulls you back down to Earth. Earth's gravity gets weaker as you travel away from it. On the Moon, gravity is much less strong, so astronauts can jump high with heavy packs on their backs before gravity pulls them back down again.

Pushing is a kind of force. The harder the boy pushes, the bigger the force on the go-cart.

More pushing power is needed to start the go-cart than to keep it moving.



Quick stop
Without friction between its wheels and the ground, this truck would slip all over the road. The tires have thick patterns, called tread, to help them grip the ground.

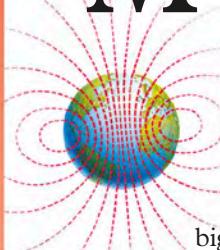


Good performance
At high speeds, air rushes over the top of a racing car, pushing it down onto the track. This makes the wide tires grip the track better, so the car can take bends faster than an ordinary car.





MAGNETS



Magnets are pieces of special material which have an invisible force that can push things away, or pull things towards them. The biggest magnet of all is the world itself. Scientists think that as Earth spins around, electricity is made in the hot metal deep down in its center. This electricity gives Earth magnetic power. Earth has two magnetic poles, called the magnetic North and South Poles. Compass needles always point toward the magnetic North Pole.

Magnetic fields

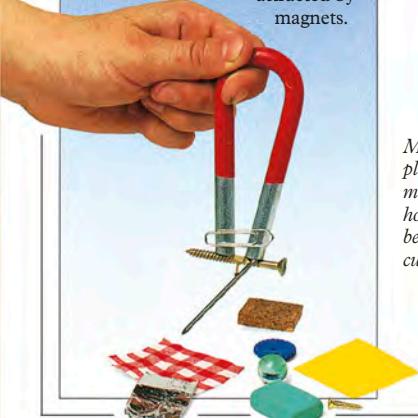
A magnetic field is where a magnet has its power. If iron filings are sprinkled around a magnet, they gather together where the magnetic field is strongest. Two identical poles push each other away, so iron filings curve outward.

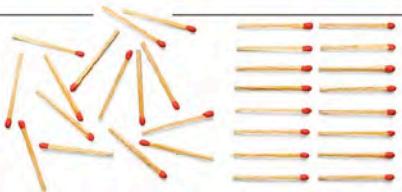
Two different poles attract. The iron filings run straight between them.



Left out

Magnets only attract some kinds of material. Not all metals are attracted by magnets.





What are magnets?

Scientists think that atoms behave like tiny magnets. In a nonmagnetic material, the atoms face in different directions. In a magnet, all the atoms face the same way. Magnets lose their strength if they are hit, dropped, or heated, as this makes the atoms face in different directions.

*The ends of
a magnet are
called its poles.*



*Every magnet
has two poles, a
south pole (S), and
a north pole (N).*

*It is hard to push two
identical poles together.
The magnetic forces are
pushing them apart.*

*It isn't easy to
pull two different
poles apart. The
magnetic forces
between them
hold them close
together.*

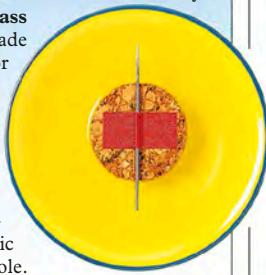


Make a magnet

If you stroke a needle about 50 times with a magnet, it will become magnetic. Stroking the needle in the same direction turns its atoms to face the same way.

Simple compass

Compasses are made with magnets—see for yourself! Tape your magnetic needle to a piece of cork, and float the cork in some water. It points the same way as a real compass needle—toward the magnetic North Pole.



Electricity and magnets

Electricity is used to make magnets which can be switched on and off. The amount of electric current determines the strength of the magnetic field produced. Reversing the flow of electricity will also reverse the magnet's poles. This electromagnet is used to sort scrap metal.

MACHINES

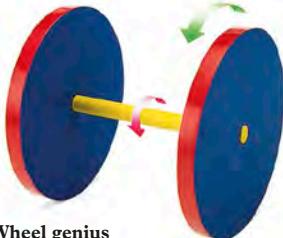
When you solve a difficult math problem, you are working hard, but this is not what scientists call work! In science, work is only done when something is moved—

for example, lifted or turned around. Machines make it easier to move things, so less effort is needed to do a job. Bicycles help us move quickly. Like most machines, bicycles are made up of a number of small, simple machines. Wheels, axles, pulleys, gears, levers, slopes, and screws are all common simple machines.



Easy does it

Levers make it easier to move things. A seesaw is a kind of lever. It balances on a point called a fulcrum. The girl's weight moves the box up. Moving the fulcrum closer to the box will make it easier to lift.



Wheel genius

The wheel is one of our most important machines. Two wheels can be joined together by a pole called an axle. A small movement of an axle makes a big turn of a wheel.

Brake blocks press against the wheel. They use friction to stop the wheel from moving.

The wheel spins, or rotates, around an axle.



Forced apart

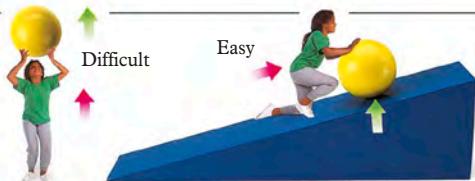
Wedges are simple machines that split things open. When a force hammers a wedge into a block of wood, the wood is pushed apart. A wedge is a kind of slope.

Saddle sore?

It is possible to ride a long way on a bike—between 1922 and 1973, a Scot named Tommy Chambers cycled 799,405 miles (1,286,517 kilometers)!

Cables link the brake levers to the brake blocks. Pulling the brake levers makes the brake blocks stop the moving wheels.

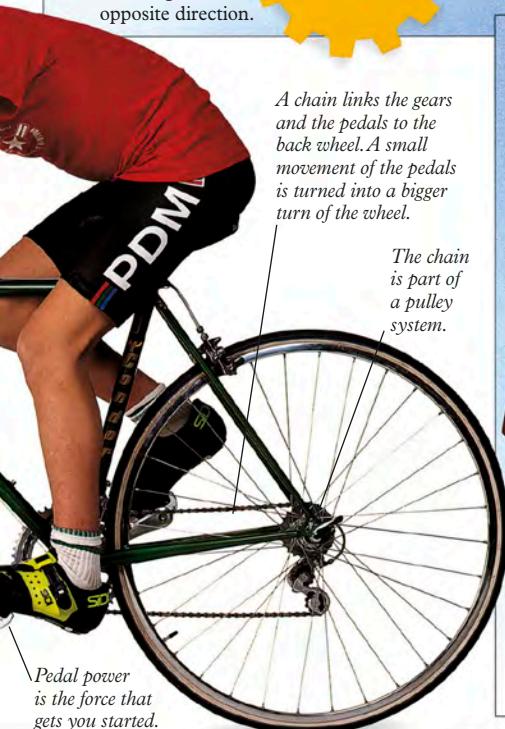
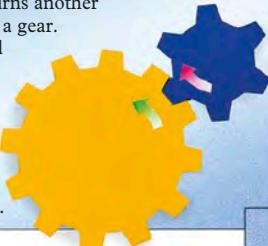




Get into gear

A toothed wheel that turns another toothed wheel is called a gear.

Gears change the speed or direction of the moving part of a machine. The small wheel spins around twice as fast as the big wheel, turning in the opposite direction.



A chain links the gears and the pedals to the back wheel. A small movement of the pedals is turned into a bigger turn of the wheel.

The chain is part of a pulley system.

Uphill climb

Slopes are simple machines. They make it easier to move things onto a higher or lower level. A screw is a kind of slope. If you could unwind the spiral grooves on a screw, they would flatten out as a slope.



Light as a feather?

Lifting up a weight with your bare hands is hard work. It is much easier to lift a weight by pulling down on the ropes of a pulley. If you double the number of pulley wheels, the same amount of effort will lift twice as many weights.



ENGINES AND MOTORS

Engines and motors provide power to make things move. Motors usually run on electricity, and often drive small things, such as fans or hairdryers. Engines are usually more powerful, and run on heat. In steam engines—the first real engines—heat boils water to make steam, and the steam pushes the engine around, just as steam in a pan of boiling water pushes up the lid. Cars have “internal combustion” engines. In these, the engine is pushed around by the gas produced from burning gasoline inside the engine.

Boiler to make steam

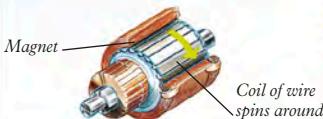
Letting off steam

Brightly colored steam traction engines like this one were often seen at fairgrounds up until around the middle of the 20th century. The steam traction engine drove the rides and made electricity for the lights.



Electric power

Electric motors work by magnetism. An electric current passing through a coil of wire turns the coil into a very powerful magnet. If the coil is set between another magnet, it is driven around at great speed to power machines, such as your hairdryer.



Jet power

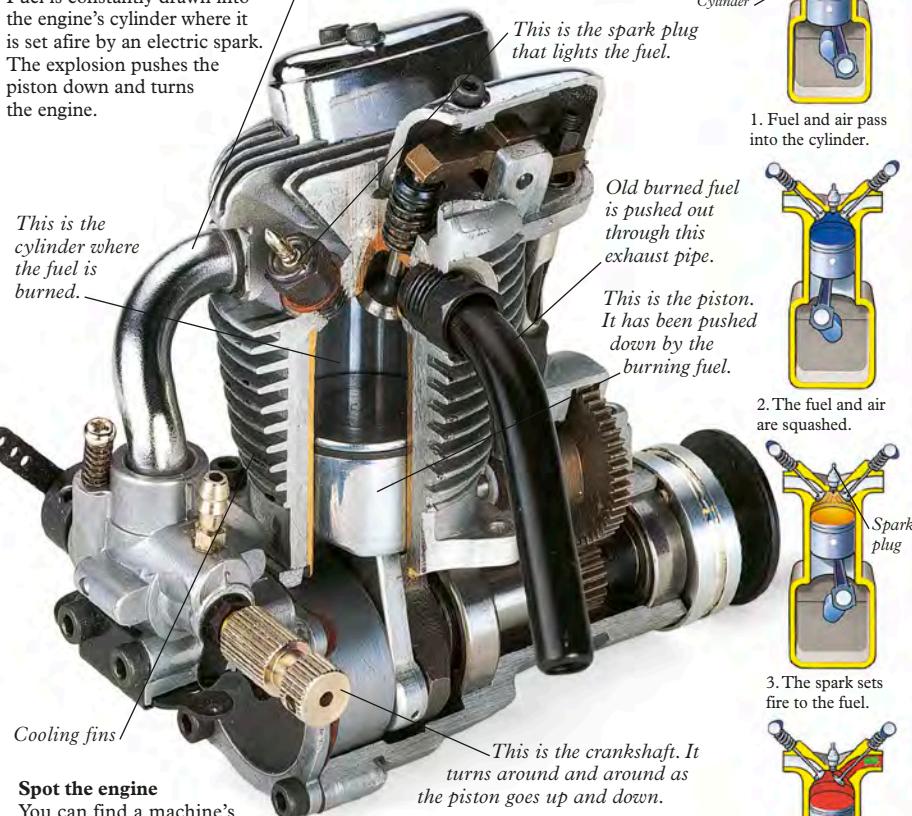
Most modern airplanes have jet engines. These push a blast of hot air out of the back, which drives the plane forward at enormous speed.

Gasoline engine

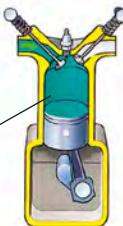
This is a model of an internal combustion engine, just like those used in most cars today. Fuel is constantly drawn into the engine's cylinder where it is set afire by an electric spark. The explosion pushes the piston down and turns the engine.

Fuel is drawn into the engine through this inlet pipe.

This is the cylinder where the fuel is burned.



In most cars, the engine works in four steps, which is why it is called a 4-stroke engine.



1. Fuel and air pass into the cylinder.



2. The fuel and air are squashed.



3. The spark sets fire to the fuel.



4. The burned gases are pushed out.

Spot the engine

You can find a machine's engine in all sorts of places.

The engines here are colored green.



Electric car



Magnet-powered train



Propeller aircraft



Jet fighter





WAR MACHINES



Hand grenade

Going bang!



Gunpowder was first used in China more than 1,000 years ago for making fireworks.



In 1605, Guy Fawkes tried to blow up the English Parliament with gunpowder.



In 1867, Alfred Nobel invented a very powerful explosive called dynamite.



An aircraft carrier

Modern armies have all sorts of weapons, from rifles and grenades for fighting a single enemy, to bombs and missiles for attacking large targets. Soldiers can go into battle riding in a tank—a huge gun on wheels protected by heavy armor plating. But nothing can protect against nuclear bombs, the most powerful weapons of all.

The main gun can fire powerful shells that will travel nearly 10,000 feet (3,000 meters).

This is the turret. It turns around so the gun can be aimed in any direction.

The tank can carry a huge amount of fuel—around 420 gallons (1,900 liters). But it is only enough to drive about 275 miles (440 kilometers) at 25 miles (40 kilometers) an hour.

*The commander
sits at the top.*

The driver sits inside at the front, and uses mirrors to see what is happening outside.

'The gunner aims the main gun using a thermal imaging sight. This picks up the heat given out by enemy targets.'

The loader loads the main gun with explosive shells. He also operates the radio.



Runway at sea

Aircraft carriers are huge ships with flat decks which war planes use for taking off and landing. The carriers sail close to enemy coasts so the planes can launch attacks.

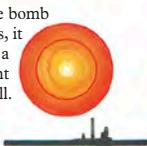
One of the crew uses a machine gun to defend the tank against enemy aircraft.



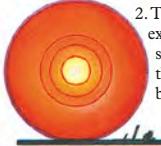
The wheels run inside tough metal bands called caterpillar tracks. To steer, the driver makes one track run faster than the other.

A nuclear explosion

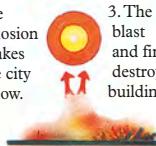
1. As the bomb explodes, it makes a giant fireball.



2. The explosion shakes the city below.



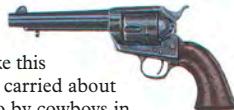
3. The blast and fire destroy buildings.



4. A cloud of rubble and dust mushrooms up high into the sky.

Getting up speed

Muskets were used by soldiers in the 17th century. They needed reloading after each shot.



Handguns like this Colt 45 were carried about 150 years ago by cowboys in the American west. They could fire six bullets without being reloaded.



Machine guns were invented in 1884 by Sir Hiram Maxim. They could fire dozens of bullets one after the other.

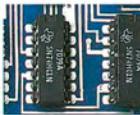


Destruction caused by a nuclear bomb in Hiroshima, Japan, 1945.

Nuclear weapons

A single nuclear bomb can destroy a whole city, and the radiation it leaves behind can kill people and animals years later. There are now enough nuclear weapons to destroy the world.

COMPUTER MAGIC



Computers are the world's smartest machines. Inside a computer are thousands of very tiny electronic switches, a bit like light switches. By switching them on and off in different combinations, computers can perform all kinds of tasks. They are used everywhere, from factories and hospitals to stores and offices. Some guide aircraft, ships, submarines, and spacecraft. Others are used just for having fun, such as playing games and watching movies.



Keeping your head up

A jet fighter pilot must not take their eyes off the view ahead, even for a second. All the information they need to control the plane and fire at targets is fed to a computer, and projected onto the pilot's face mask. This is called a "head-up" display.



Seeing inside

Doctors can use a CT (computed tomography) scanner to see inside a patient's body. A CT scanner uses X-rays to create images of "slices" through the body. These are put together on a computer to create a 3-D image, which doctors use to see what needs treating.



Pocket brain

The first electronic computers filled a large room. Now there are smarter and faster computers that can be held in your hand, such as this smartphone.



Bytes and megabytes

Computers can help with homework, or steer a rocket into space.



Laptop computer



Tablet computer



Global positioning system (GPS)



Gaming device



Data center

Computers now have microprocessors. They are only the size of a small fingernail, yet packed with billions of switches.





ROBOTS

Robots are machines that “think” with a computer brain that tells them what to do. Once they have been programmed, they can work entirely by themselves. Some people believe that one day we will be able to make robots that can do everything a human can—and they may even look like humans. Right now, though, most robots in use today are nothing more than mechanical arms or cranes.



Mechanical men

Automatons are smart machines that move kind of like humans or animals. This one was made for a fair in Victorian times.

The camera in Asimo's head allows him to see objects, plan routes, and even recognize faces.



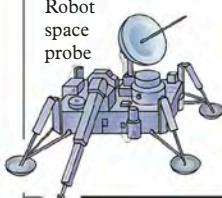
Asimo automatically bends or twists his body to keep balanced while walking or running.



Factory hand

A factory robot is often just a moving arm. But a robotic arm can hold things, screw them into place, weld them, and check that they work. It can replace lots of human workers.

Robots at work and play



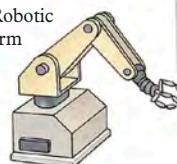
Robot space probe



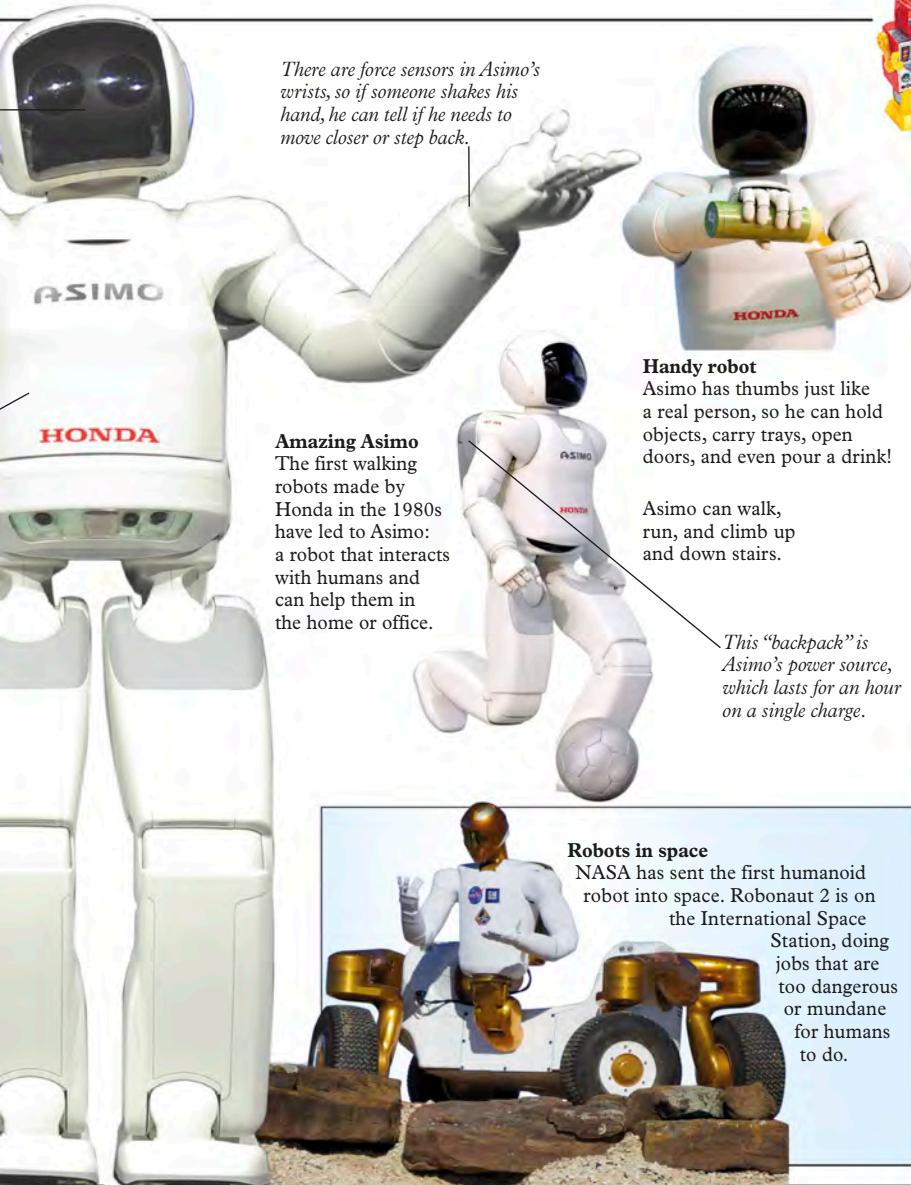
Robot dog



Bomb-disposal robot



Robotic arm



There are force sensors in Asimo's wrists, so if someone shakes his hand, he can tell if he needs to move closer or step back.

ASIMO

HONDA

Amazing Asimo

The first walking robots made by Honda in the 1980s have led to Asimo: a robot that interacts with humans and can help them in the home or office.

Handy robot

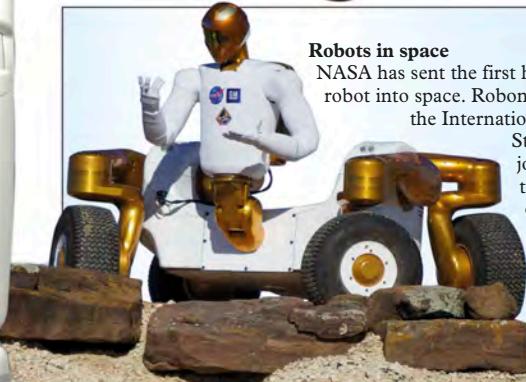
Asimo has thumbs just like a real person, so he can hold objects, carry trays, open doors, and even pour a drink!

Asimo can walk, run, and climb up and down stairs.

This "backpack" is Asimo's power source, which lasts for an hour on a single charge.

Robots in space

NASA has sent the first humanoid robot into space. Robonaut 2 is on the International Space Station, doing jobs that are too dangerous or mundane for humans to do.



ENERGY AND INDUSTRY

In today's world there are thousands of different industries, and they are divided into three groups. Primary industries, such as farming and mining, take raw materials from the earth. Manufacturing industries make, or manufacture, things from the raw materials. Service industries are made up of people who sell these goods or supply skills, such as nursing or teaching. All industry needs energy, so as the world becomes more industrial, it needs more and more energy.

Energy for industry comes mostly from fossil fuels—coal, oil, and gas. Since these are quickly being used up,

we are now switching to solar, wind, and ocean energy that will last forever.



Oil



Coal



Natural gas



Nuclear energy



Oil rig



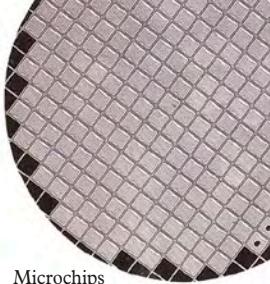
Wind is a type of endless energy.



Iron ore



Cars are made from steel.



Microchips
manufactured
on a silicon slice.



Nylon rope



Stores are
part of the
service
industry.



Factories put things together, one step at a time, in production lines.





COAL



Like layers of icing in a cake, there are bands, or seams, of coal in the rocks beneath the ground. Some seams are near enough to the surface to be scraped out with diggers. This

is called opencast mining. But most seams are found deeper down, and have to be dug up by miners using massive machines. About 40 percent of the nine billion tons of coal mined each year is burned in power stations to generate electricity.

Cooking coke

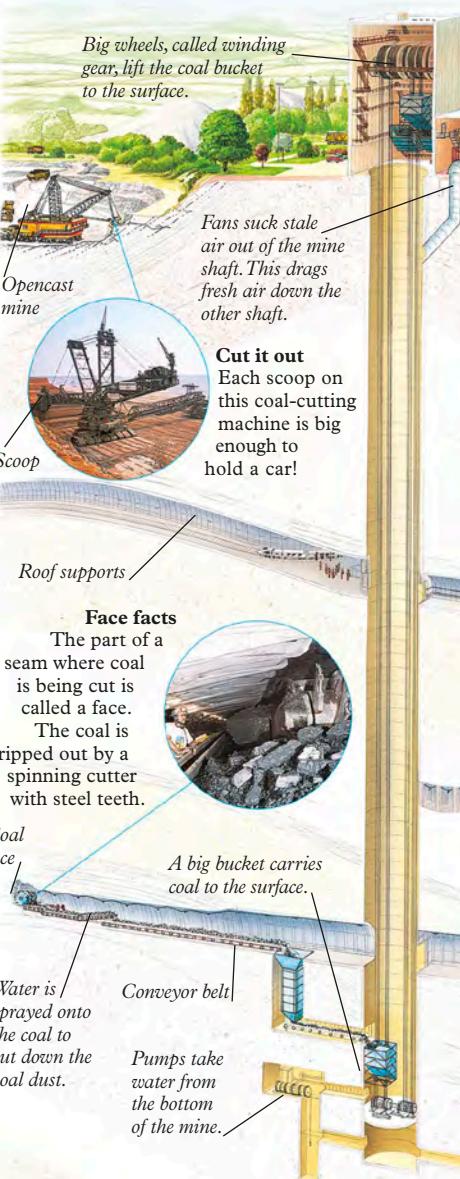
Coal is put into giant ovens and baked at more than 1,650°F (900°C). When the oven door is opened, coke topples out. Coke is needed to make steel.



Coke is coal minus tar, oils, and gases.



The tar that collects at the bottom of a coke oven is used to make soap!





Air in

The coal is washed and separated into different-sized lumps before it leaves the mine.

Cages carry miners down a deep shaft.

The main shaft was blown out of the rock with explosives.

Long tunnels are dug to reach new coal seams.

Boring!

Big machines chew through the rock to open up new tunnels.

Mine shafts can be 4,000 feet (1,200 meters) deep.

Computer control room

Burning to go
Nonstop trains take coal straight to the power station.



Down to earth

Not all coal is the same. Hard coals, which are found deeper underground, release more energy when they burn.



Half-squashed coal, or peat, is made into fuel bricks.



Soft, crumbly brown coal is burned to make coke.



Black bituminous coal is burned to generate electricity.



Anthracite coal is used in houses and factories.

All aboard!

Miners travel on trains to coal faces that are many miles away from the shaft.



Most of the coal in this seam has already been dug out.

A breeze can always be felt in the tunnel as the air moves through the mine.



Davy's safety lamp



Seeing the light

Miners once worked by candlelight, but the flames often set fire to the explosive gases that build up in tunnels. In 1815, a safety lamp was invented. Its flame was kept behind a wire mesh. Modern lamps are even safer, as they are battery powered.





OIL

In the rocks under hot deserts, snowy plains, and stormy seas, there is buried treasure: a “liquid gold” called oil. Most of this sticky, black fossil fuel is used for energy, but 12 percent of each barrel is turned into chemicals and plastics. All oil is brought to the surface by drilling deep holes called wells. On land this is fairly easy, but at sea, platforms as tall as skyscrapers have to be built.

Sandstone



Sandstone with oil

Solid “sponge”

Oil is found in the tiny spaces in rocks such as sandstone. This oily layer is often sandwiched between water and a layer of natural gas.

Each marble stands for a grain of rock.



A boring bit

A sharp-toothed metal cutter, called a bit, bores through rock to reach oil. Drill bits are replaced twice a day, as they wear out quickly.

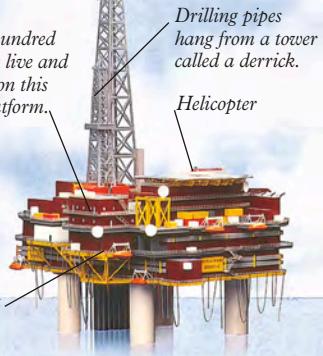


During drilling, chemicals are pumped around the bit to carry rubble up to the surface.

This is a model of an oil platform in the North Sea.

Two hundred people live and work on this oil platform.

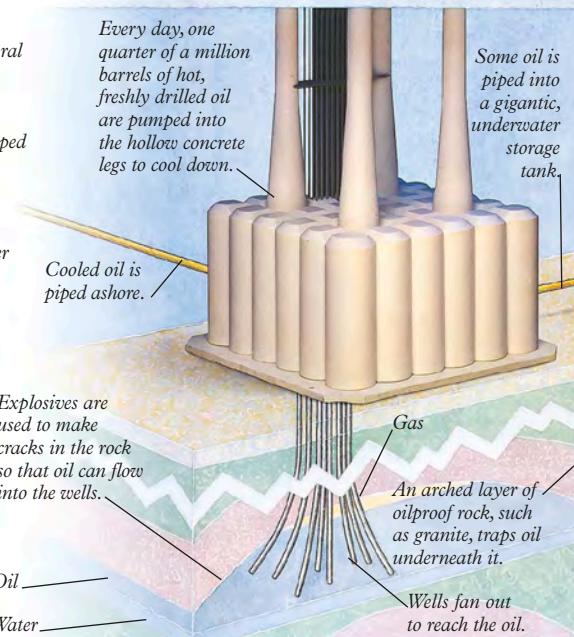
Unwanted gas is burned from the top of a tall tower.



Lifeboat

Every day, one quarter of a million barrels of hot, freshly drilled oil are pumped into the hollow concrete legs to cool down.

Some oil is piped into a gigantic, underwater storage tank



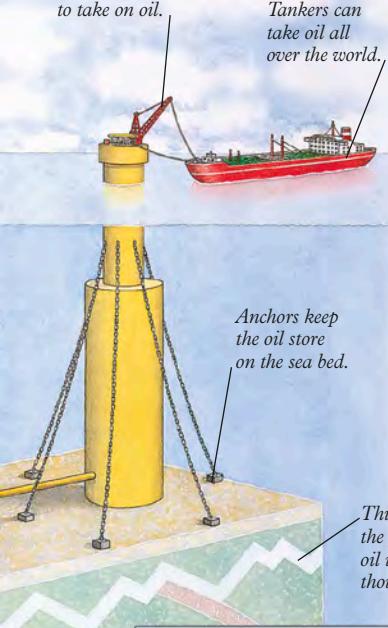
Explosives are used to make cracks in the rock so that oil can flow into the wells.

Only way out
A 769-mile-long
(1,287-kilometer-long)
pipe snakes across the
snowy wastes of Alaska.
Oil takes a whole week
to flow down the pipe to
reach an ice-free port in
the South.



Huge tankers "plug
into" this oil store
to take on oil.

Tankers can
take oil all
over the world.



Anchors keep
the oil store
on the sea bed.

This zigzag break
in the picture is to show that
oil is usually found under
thousands of yards of rock.



Wildcat wanted?

Before a well is dug, geologists must be sure that the rocks below the ground are the right shape to trap oil. A test drill, or "wildcat," is only started if the surveys and satellite pictures look good.

Look how big this
rig is compared to
the Statue of Liberty!



Jack-up rig



Drill ship



Semisubmersible rig

Gas gushes
out when the
pressure is
released.



Bubble trouble

Just like the
fizz in soda pop,
bubbles of natural
gas are trapped in oil.
If there is enough gas, it
is piped ashore. If not,
the gas is just burned.



Oil at sea

Huge structures,
called rigs, drill down
to find oil. At sea,
some rigs float on
the surface, while
others stand on the
sea bed.



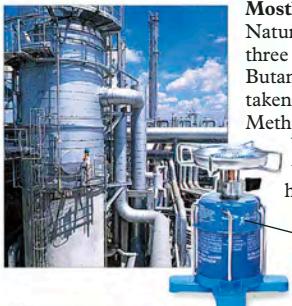
NATURAL GAS



What a whiff!

Natural gas has no smell. Chemicals are added to it so that leaks can be smelled.

In 1918, a gas was discovered in an oilfield in Texas. It was named natural gas because it replaced a gas that was manufactured from coal. This new fuel is now used in factories and homes all over the world. Natural gas travels a long way before it reaches your stove, to burn as a bright blue flame. It has to be released from deep below the ground, cleaned, and piped countless miles.



Mostly methane

Natural gas contains three different gases. Butane and propane are taken out at a gas terminal. Methane, the part that burns best, is sent through pipes to houses and factories.

Butane gas camping stove

Cool it

Ships take methane to places that are not connected to pipelines. The gas is cooled into a liquid so that it takes up 600 times less room.

Methane tank

If it is cooled into a liquid, a balloonful of methane gas can fit into a space the size of a pea.

Methane is cooled to -260°F (-162°C) to make it turn into a liquid.



The journey begins at a gas rig.

Gas terminal

Giant fans waft natural gas along the pipes.

Pipe



"Pig"

Soil

Very important pig

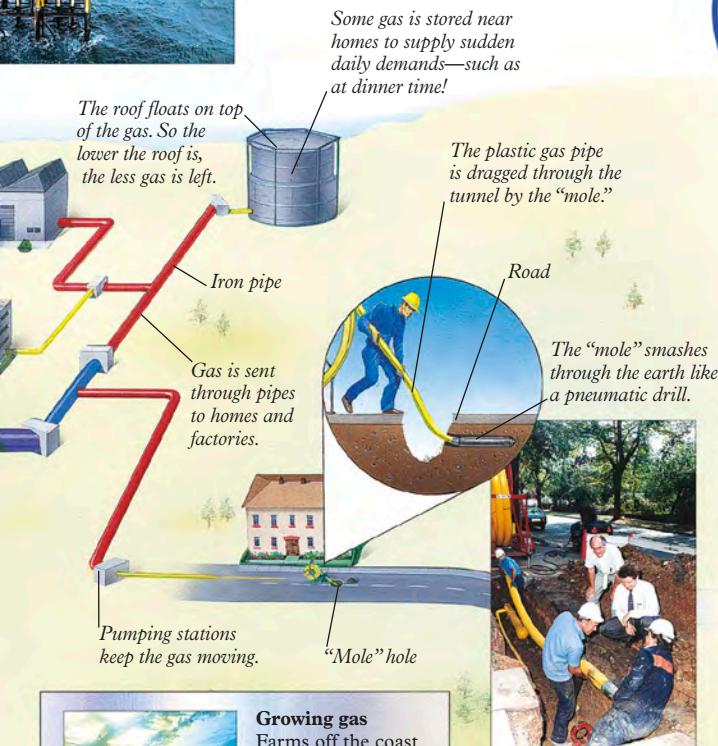
"Pigs," not people, check natural gas pipes!

A "pig" is a computer on wheels that whizzes down pipes to pinpoint cracks and other problems.



On the way up

This big building, called a rig, gathers up gas that flows from deep under the sea bed. The drill to reach the pocket of gas may be nearly four miles (six kilometers) long.



Growing gas

Farms off the coast of California grow a giant seaweed called kelp. It is harvested three times a year by special ships and then put in tanks and left to rot. The decaying kelp gives off methane gas.



Some gas is stored near homes to supply sudden daily demands—such as at dinner time!

The plastic gas pipe is dragged through the tunnel by the “mole.”

The “mole” smashes through the earth like a pneumatic drill.

What size pipe?



You could stand up in the pipe that travels between the rig and the terminal.



A dog could fit into the pipe that links factory pipes to gas-terminal pipes.



The pipes that take gas to factories is roomy enough for a cat to sit in.

Moles beat diggers

Small pipes can be laid without digging up streets by using a rocketlike machine called a “mole.” Its route is guided by a computer.



A mouse could fit into the small plastic pipe that goes into your home.



NUCLEAR ENERGY



Super fuel

One handful of pure uranium can release as much energy as 72,000 barrels of oil! From this hot water is used to generate electricity. People worry about nuclear power because when the energy is released from an atom, deadly rays, called radiation, also escape.

Atoms are the tiny particles that make up the whole universe. Enormous amounts of energy are locked inside atoms. When billions of uranium atoms are torn apart in a nuclear power station, the energy that is set free can

boil water. Steam from this hot water is used to generate electricity. People worry about nuclear power because when the energy is released from an atom, deadly rays, called radiation, also escape.

A neutron collides with an atom.

The center of the uranium atom splits in half.

Energy and radiation

Two or three new neutrons escape. Each one can collide with another atom and set free more energy.

Fission division

The heart of an atom, called a nucleus, is made up of neutrons and protons. These are held together by energy. When an atom is split, some of this energy is set free. Splitting an atom to release energy is called fission.

Old fuel rods are radioactive "garbage."



Not so fast

This drawing shows very simply how neutrons whizz around a nuclear reactor and crash into uranium atoms in fuel rods.

2. The splitting uranium atoms inside the fuel rod "shoot out" new neutrons which travel at 9,900 miles (16,000 km) per second.

1. Energy is released when neutrons hit atoms in the fuel rods.

Water warms up

Fuel rod

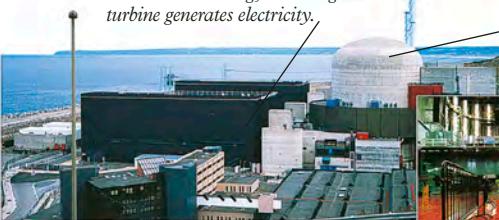
Cold water

Cool it

Fuel rods are replaced every few years. Before the reusable uranium can be removed from them, the rods are cooled in a special pond.



Inside this building, a turning turbine generates electricity.



The nuclear reactor is in here.



The reactor is under this red steel floor.

A powerful building

The nuclear reactor is surrounded by thick concrete walls. These make sure that dangerous radiation does not escape.

3. The neutrons collide with atoms in the moderator. This slows them down to just 1.2 miles (two kilometers) per second!

4. This metal rod is a neutron stopper! It is pulled in and out to let just the right number of neutrons through.

If the neutrons travel too fast, they will just whizz past the uranium atoms in the fuel rod, and not release any energy to heat up the water.

Control rod

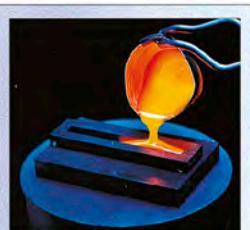
Hot water

If too many neutrons pass the control rod, too much energy is released, and the reactor could explode.

5. Heat passes from the hot water inside the reactor to this flow of cold water. The cold water boils into steam.

6. The powerful jet of steam turns a turbine to generate electricity.

Laser beam



Safe deposit?

A typical nuclear power station produces about 20 bathfuls of very dangerous radioactive waste each year. It is made into a sort of glass and poured into steel tanks, which are coated in concrete and buried.

Less dangerous waste is buried in barrels.



Sunny future

When superhot atoms collide, they fuse together and set energy free. It is this fusion that makes the sun shine. Scientists are trying to build "suns" on Earth by firing lasers at atoms.





RENEWABLE ENERGY



When oil, gas, and coal run out, people will need other sources of energy to fuel their cars and light their houses. Wind and water are already being put to work, but the best hope for a renewable supply of energy is the sun. Light and heat from the sun pour down onto Earth all the time. Today, sunshine runs everything from watches to power stations. One day scientists hope to collect sunlight in space, and beam it back to Earth!



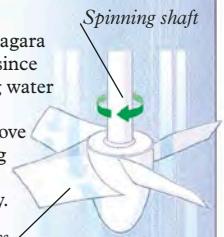
What a gas!

In some countries manure is collected, dumped into containers, and left to rot. The gas it gives off is piped into homes and used for cooking and heating.



Falling for you

The energy of the crashing water at Niagara Falls has been used since 1759. The cascading water forces huge paddles, called turbines, to move around. The spinning turbines turn a shaft to generate electricity.



Whooshing water pushes the paddles around.

Trick of the light

This is the world's first solar power station. It was built in 1969 at Odeillo in France. Electricity is generated by using reflected sunlight to boil water into steam.

This enormous mirror is curved so that all the sunshine that hits it is reflected onto one small spot at the top of the tower.

Computers keep the 63 minimirrors facing the sun.



Not alone

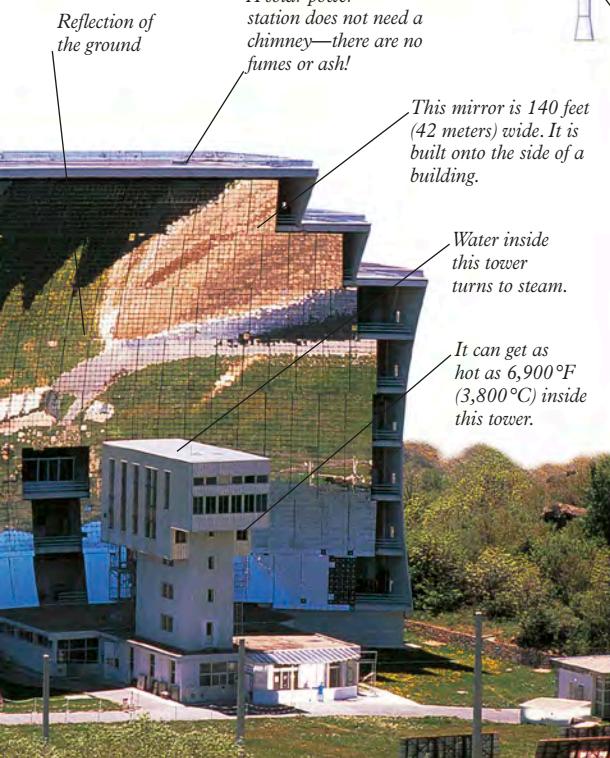
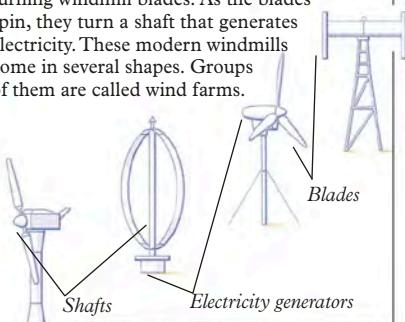
The solar power station is faced by 63 small, flat mirrors. They reflect extra light onto the main mirror.





Whizzing in the wind

Strong, steady winds can be put to work turning windmill blades. As the blades spin, they turn a shaft that generates electricity. These modern windmills come in several shapes. Groups of them are called wind farms.



Reflection of
the ground

A solar power
station does not need a
chimney—there are no
fumes or ash!

This mirror is 140 feet
(42 meters) wide. It is
built onto the side of a
building.

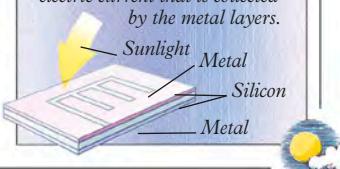
Water inside
this tower
turns to steam.

It can get as
hot as 6,900°F
(3,800°C) inside
this tower.



No need for a plug
Solar cells, made from slices of wafer-thin silicon, turn sunlight into electricity. This remote jungle telephone is powered by several solar cells.

Sunlight knocks electrons from the top layer to the bottom layer of silicon. This generates an electric current that is collected by the metal layers.

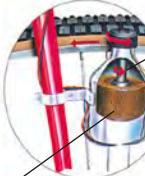


ELECTRICITY

Electricity is used as a way of moving energy from place to place. It can take energy from burning a fuel, such as coal or gas, in a power station into your home to work your television. Most electricity is generated in machines.



Small machines, called dynamos, light the lights on bikes. Huge generators in power stations light whole cities. Pedal power works a dynamo, but steam produces the electricity in a power station. This steam is made by using the heat from burning fossil fuels or splitting atoms. Sunshine, falling water, and whirling windmills can also generate electricity.



This magnet spins around because it is fixed to a rod that touches the turning wheel.

Electricity is generated in this coil of wire by the spinning magnet.

A pile of coal as heavy as 40 elephants is burned each hour.



1. Coal is crushed and then blown into the boiler to burn.

Choice of fuels

A power station uses just one sort of fuel to generate its electricity.

This one burns coal, but

other power stations use oil, natural gas, or nuclear fuel.

Oil



Natural gas

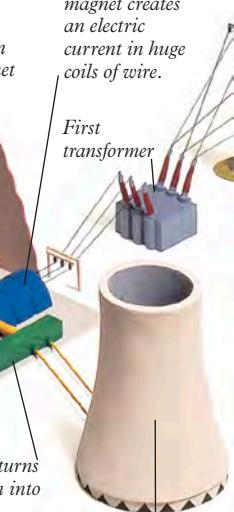
Uranium



Mighty machine
The big blue generator inside this power station is about ten times as tall as you!

5. The moving magnet creates an electric current in huge coils of wire.

First transformer



A condenser turns the hot steam into hot water.

The cooling tower cools the hot water so that it can be used again.

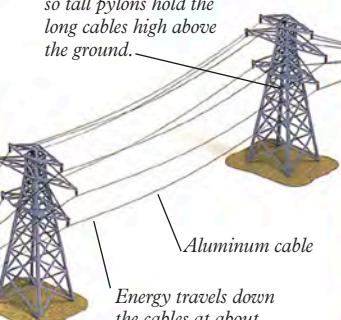


In charge

Power stations can't be built near all the places that need electricity. So the electricity generated flows into a network of cables, called a grid. At the touch of a button, electricity is made to flow to wherever it is needed.



Electricity is dangerous, so tall pylons hold the long cables high above the ground.



Energy travels down the cables at about 155,000 miles (250,000 kilometers) per second—almost as fast as the speed of light!

Second transformer

Electricity cables are laid under the ground in towns and cities.

A substation makes electricity safe for you to use in your home.



These children are pretending to be tiny parts of atoms, called electrons.

Each ball is a "parcel" of electrical energy.



Going up or going down?

Machines called transformers change the strength of an electric current. The current that flows between pylons has to be decreased to stop the cables from melting.

Pass the parcel

People once thought that electricity flowed like water, which is why it was called a current. In fact, energy moves along a cable more like balls being passed down a line!

Watt is power?

The speed at which different machines use energy is measured in units called watts.



Electric clock
(10 watts)



Vacuum cleaner
(900 watts)



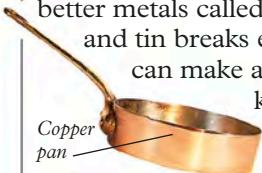
Welding machine
(10,000 watts)



METALS



Metals are found in the ground, hidden in certain rocks called ores. Tin, copper, and iron all have to be taken out of their ores before a factory can melt and shape them into a can, pan, or car. Pure metals, however, are usually too weak to be used in industry, and have to be mixed together to make better metals called alloys. Lead is soft, and tin breaks easily. Together they can make a strong, tough alloy known as pewter.



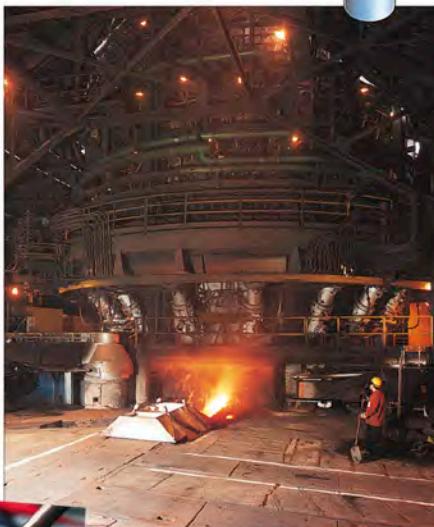
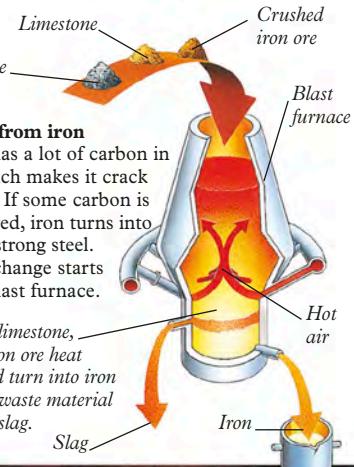
Not natural

Brass cannot be dug out of the ground. It is an alloy made by mixing together two weaker metals, copper and zinc.



Precious metals

Gold and silver are used to make much more than just jewelry. Gold is sprayed onto an astronaut's visor to reflect sunlight. Silver is used in electronic equipment because it carries electricity very well.



1. Blasted iron ore

A stream of iron is flowing from this huge oven, called a blast furnace. It has been burned out of iron ore by blasts of hot air.





Big dipper

Steel girders are dipped in a bath of melted zinc to stop them from rusting. This process is known as galvanizing.



Plane wrapper

Aluminum is a marvelous metal. Thin sheets are wrapped around chocolate to preserve its taste. Thick sheets are made into jumbo jets. Aluminium is used to make planes because it does not rust, and it is very light. The aluminium is made as stiff as steel by adding a little copper.



Iron waiting to be converted



Oxygen rushes down this tube.

Upright converter

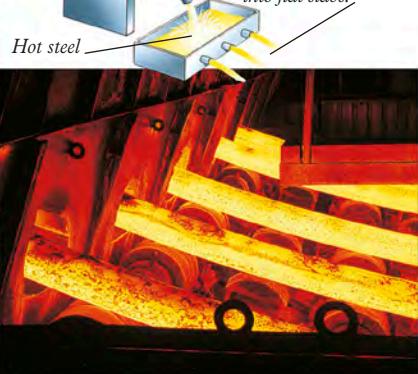
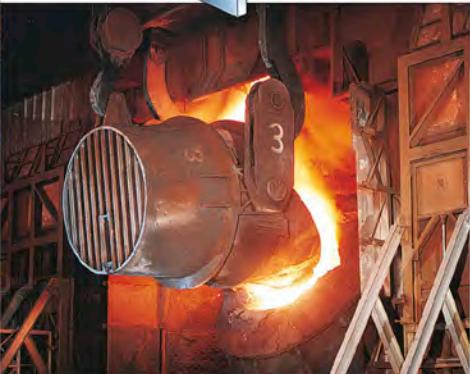


Scrap iron can be put into the converter, too.

Tipped-up converter



When the strips of steel are cold they can be squashed by rollers into flat slabs.



2. Iron in, steel out

The liquid iron is poured into a converter. After a powerful jet of oxygen has burned out the impurities and most of the carbon, the converter is tipped up to pour out steel.

3. Taking shape

Hot, freshly made steel is poured into a big tray. When it has almost set, nozzles are opened and steel oozes out, like toothpaste out of a tube.





MAKING A CAR



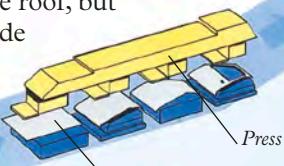
Model T

Every few seconds, somewhere in the world, a brand-new car rolls off a production line and out of a car factory. Each car is made from raw materials, such as iron ore, sulphur, and sand, which have been shaped into more than 30,000 parts! Most of this "jigsaw puzzle" is put together on a kind of giant conveyor belt. Each area of the factory puts on a few particular pieces; for example, the body shop adds the roof, but never the seats. The first car made like this was the Model T Ford.



Start with steel

Steel is the most important ingredient for making cars. Rolling mills press hot steel into thin sheets. These are then rolled up and sent to car factories.



The start of the "conveyor belt."

About 65 percent of a car is made of iron and steel.



Stamp it out

Sheets of cold steel are stamped into shape by machines called presses. A press room can be the size of three football stadiums!



A roller test is used to check that the car is working.

Apart from their color, all the cars made on this production line are the same.



Cars are washed and polished before they leave the factory to be sold.

Each car body is made from more than 20 pieces, or panels, of steel.



Built to bounce

To make your journey smooth, tires are made of rubber and filled with air.

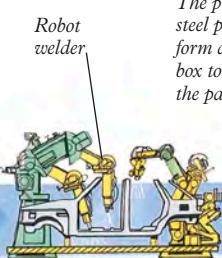


Strands of steel or nylon strengthen the tires.



Ready to go

Cars were invented toward the end of the 19th century. There are now more than one billion of them.

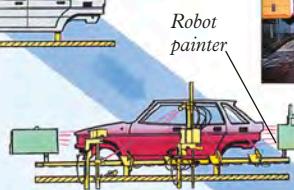


Robots in charge

The steel sides, roof, and doors have to be joined together. This is done by welding—making the metal melt and stick together. Using more than 1,000 welds, robots can build a car body in just 42 seconds.



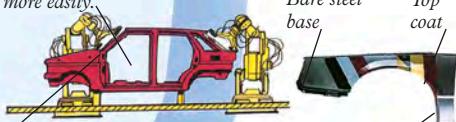
Heavy cars use more fuel. So more and more metal parts, such as bumpers, are being made of plastic.



The doors are removed so that the inside can be reached more easily.

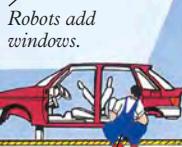
Mechanical Monets

Cars are painted by robots with sprays. The robots are not harmed by paint fumes, and can put paint on quickly and accurately.



Fifteen coats of paint are put on each panel.

The car is lowered onto an engine, which was built on a separate production line. This may have been in another country!



Each worker repeats the same job over and over again.



Together at last
The engine is the heart of the car, but it is not added to the body until near the end of the production line.



Pile up

A new car may not be as new as you think. Up to 25 percent of the steel may have come from old cars! Recycling scrap steel saves raw materials and energy.

CHEMICAL INDUSTRIES

Soap, fertilizer, and glue are just a few of the useful products of the chemical industries. They are made by combining different substances. Crude oil (unprocessed oil taken straight from the ground) is the main raw material for these industries. The carbon and hydrogen in oil can be made to combine in different ways to make more than half a million things, such as gas, paint, or pills! This manufacturing starts in large factories called refineries.



Oil refinery

Split it up!

Crude oil is split into useful oils inside a distillation tower at a refinery. The oils are separated by being boiled into a gas, and then cooled back into a liquid.

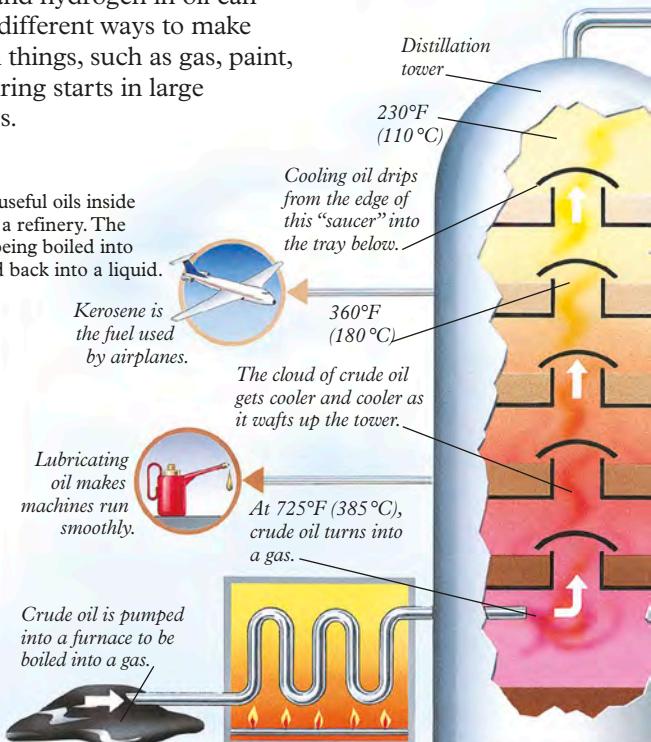
Liquid again

If you put a saucer over a cup of steaming hot liquid, droplets collect on the saucer. The liquid has turned into steam and then cooled back into a liquid when it hit the cold saucer.



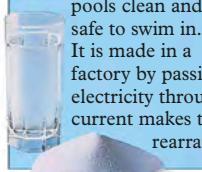
Very hot liquid turns into a gas.

Gas cools into a liquid.



All change

Chlorine keeps the water in swimming pools clean and safe to swim in. It is made in a factory by passing electricity through salty water. The electric current makes the atoms in the salt and water rearrange, and produces chlorine.



The gases that come out of the top of the tower are made into plastics.

One-fifth of each barrel of crude oil separates into gasoline.



Gasoline is the most common fuel used to power cars.

When the cloud of crude oil reaches this height, it is cool enough for diesel to turn into a liquid.



Diesel is the fuel used by many trains.

A different oil flows out of each pipe because all the oils in crude oil cool into liquids at different temperatures.



Dark industrial oil is burned in factories and power stations.

Bitumen is the first oil to flow out of the tower.



Thick, sticky bitumen is spread on the surface of roads.

Catalytic cracker

Oil is made up of long chains of carbon and hydrogen atoms. Useful chemicals, called petrochemicals, are made by breaking up these chains. This is done by heating the oil in tanks called catalytic crackers. The small chains can be used to make useful things such as shampoo.



Hydrogen atoms are forced between the carbon atoms to break up the chain.



Super sulphur

About 165 million tons of sulphuric acid are used every year to help make things such as fertilizer, paper, and explosives. This acid is made by heating a yellow rock called sulphur.





PLASTICS

Plastics are amazing materials. They don't rot like wood or rust like some metals, and they are light and easy to shape. Plastic pens, shoes, and even surfboards are all made from oil or coal. Chemicals are taken from these fossil fuels and turned into small, white pellets.



These are then melted and blown to form bags or rolled flat to make floor tiles. Buckets, bowls, and boxes are usually shaped by being injected into molding machines.



Get set or go?

Some plastics are like bread! Once they have been "baked" they cannot be reheated and made into new shapes. A mug made of melamine will not change shape when hot drinks are poured into it. Polystyrene and polythene are more like chocolate—they can be melted again and again. Each time the mixture cools, it sets into the shape of the mold it has been poured into.



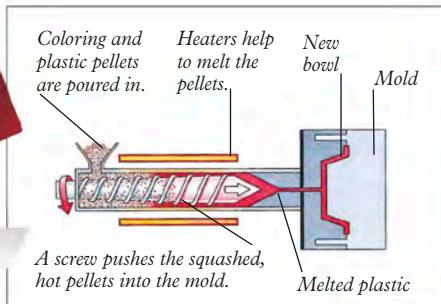
The two halves of the steel mold lock tightly together.



Bowled out

Plastic bowls are made by injecting melted plastic pellets into the space between two halves of a steel mold.

The plastic cools inside the mold, and sets into a bowl shape.



Each bowl needs this amount of coloring.

Two handfuls of polypropylene plastic pellets make each bowl.

Temperatures of 540°F (280°C) are needed to melt the pellets and make them flow into this mold.

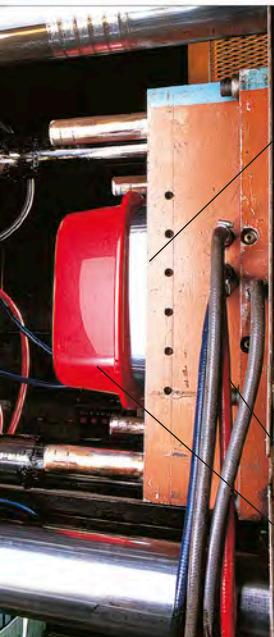




Plastic products



Each half of this bowl mold weighs as much as 20 eight-year-old children!



Many electronic gadgets, such as game consoles, are made of a tough plastic called ABS.



Food slides off the slippery plastic, known as Teflon, used to coat the surface of nonstick pans.



Plastic packaging keeps food fresh for longer. For example, polythene bags stop bread from drying out.



BUILDING



Taipei 101

The invention of new materials and new ways of building has enabled cities to shoot up into the sky. Skyscrapers are not held up by wood, brick, or stone walls, but by strong steel skeletons on which walls and windows are simply hung like curtains. One of the tallest office buildings in the world is the Taipei 101 in Taiwan, which was built in 2004. It has 101 floors and stands 1,670 feet (509 meters) tall.

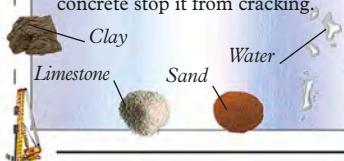


There are around 26,000 hand-cut glass panels covering the tower, which are all cleaned by hand, too!



Concrete creation

Many modern buildings, such as the Sydney Opera House, are made of concrete. This artificial rock is made by roasting clay and limestone to make cement, and then adding sand and water. Stretched steel cables inside the concrete stop it from cracking.



Growing up

The tallest building in the world is the Burj Khalifa, in Dubai. It is 2,700 feet (830 meters) to its spire, and has more than 160 floors. Construction on it began in 2004 and it was finished in 2010.

Three different entrances on three sides take you to three different floors of the spiral-shaped building.



*It took about
22 million man-hours
to complete the tower.*

*There are
26 stages where
the tower gets
narrower as it
gets taller.*

*There are
34,600 tons of
reinforced steel
bars in the
tower—enough
to reach more
than a quarter of
the way around
the world.*



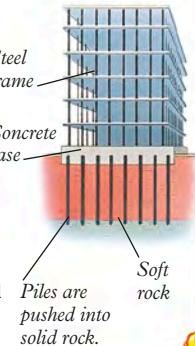
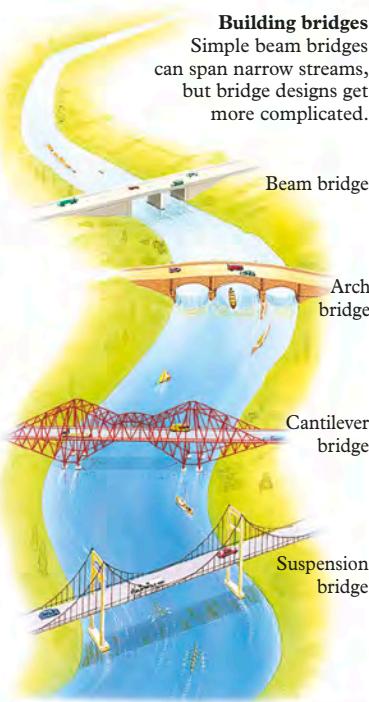
*A team of more
than 380 people
worked to put
on the glass and
metal cladding—
as many as 175
panels a day.*



Rock steady

Buildings need a strong base, or foundation, to stop them from sinking, slipping sideways, or being blown over by the wind. Tall buildings are held down by long steel or cement piles.

Building bridges
Simple beam bridges
can span narrow streams,
but bridge designs get
more complicated.



TRANSPORTATION



Transportation is so much a part of our daily lives that most of us take it for granted. Without it, we would all grind to a halt. Millions of people would not get to work, many children would not get to school, and no goods would be delivered to stores. Even the letters we send would never reach their destinations.

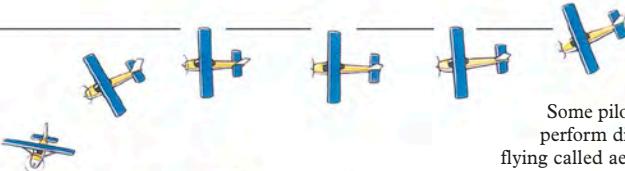
Early people relied on animal transportation, and this remained the only way of getting around until about 200 years ago, when the bicycle was invented. Cars didn't come into common use until the first part of the 20th century. Today, though, a jet plane can fly you across the world in hours, and huge spacecraft take astronauts on exploratory journeys into space. Soon, you may be able to book a ticket to outer space!



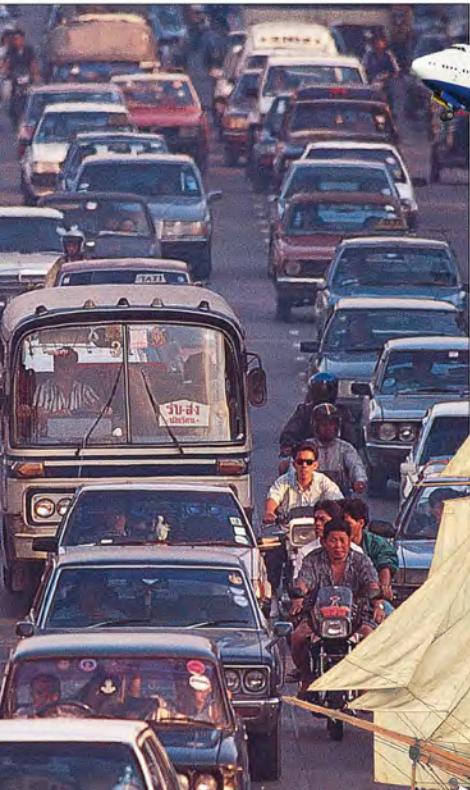
Motor scooter



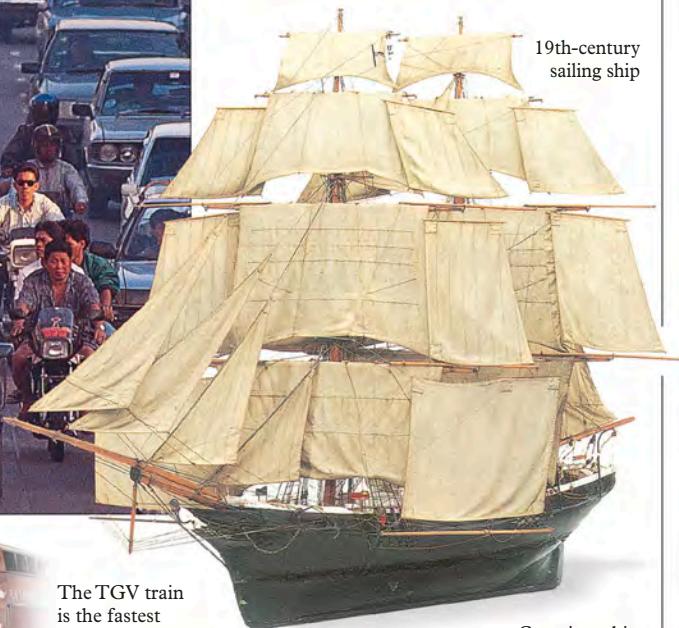
Electric car



Some pilots like to perform displays of flying called aerobatics, in which they twist and turn their planes.



Boeing 787 taking off



19th-century sailing ship



The TGV train is the fastest wheeled train in the world.



Container ship



BIKES

Bicycles were invented in the late 1700s. But they have changed their shape so much over the years that some early bikes such as the “ordinary” bicycle, also called the penny-farthing, look very strange to us today. Power for a bicycle comes from the rider, but sometimes the rider simply runs out of energy! In 1885 a German, Gottlieb Daimler, added an engine to the bicycle, and the motorcycle was invented. The very first motorcycles had tiny steam engines, but today they have gasoline engines, and can more than match cars for speed.



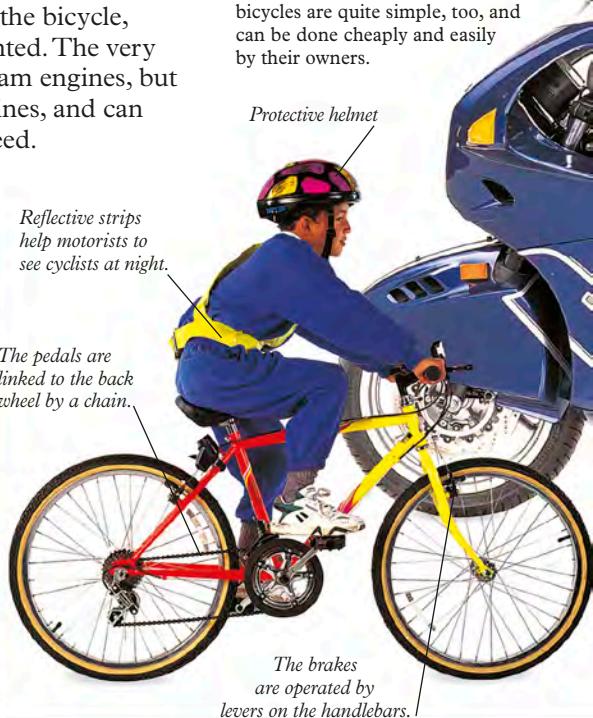
Pollution-free traffic

In the Netherlands, there are more bicycles than people. Nearly 40 percent of all trips taken in the capital, Amsterdam, are on bikes. Imagine the terrible fumes, and the effect on the environment if all these riders drove cars instead of pollution-free bicycles.

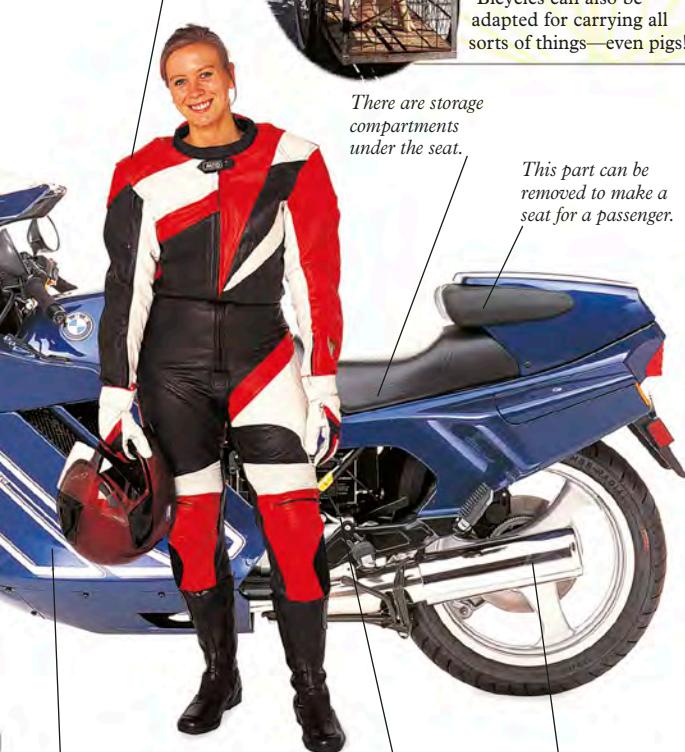


Fix it yourself

Bicycles are simple machines and one of the cheapest forms of transportation. Most repairs on bicycles are quite simple, too, and can be done cheaply and easily by their owners.



Riding a motorcycle can be dangerous, and a rider should wear leather clothes and a special helmet for protection.



Working bikes

Scooters, which are motorcycles with small engines, are used for many jobs around the world. The Spanish Post Office uses yellow scooters for delivering most of its mail. Bicycles can also be adapted for carrying all sorts of things—even pigs!



Hot wheels

Motorcycles come in all shapes and sizes for different jobs and sports.



World War II
US Army motorcycle



1966 police motorcycle



1983 Racing motorcycle

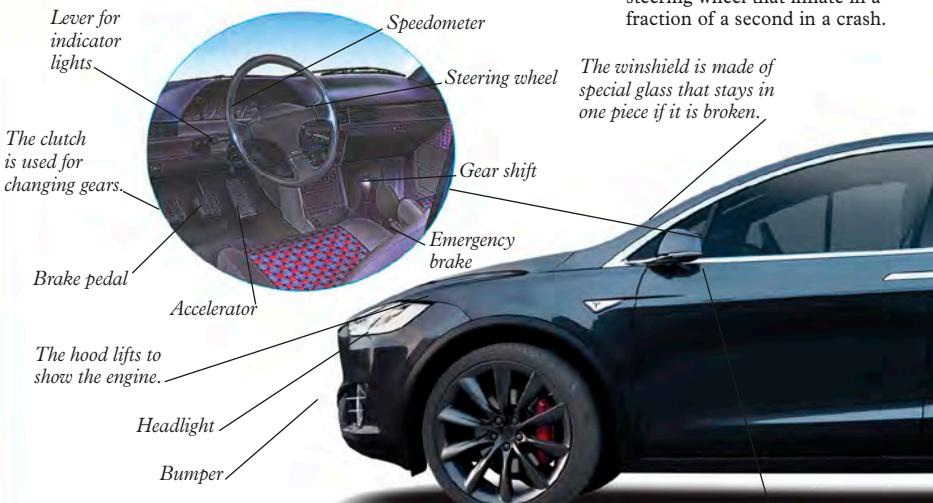


Motocross motorcycle



CARS TODAY

It is hard to imagine a world without cars. They are all around us and are always being improved to make them more comfortable, more reliable, faster, and safer. And cars must continue to change. There are now so many cars in the world that they are one of the greatest threats to our environment. Experts are constantly thinking of new ways to make affordable cars that use less energy and produce less pollution.



Models for driving

Cars are designed to suit the needs of many different people.



Mini car



Sedan car



Sports car



Family car



Safety first

Engineers test all new car designs for safety by crashing the car and filming what happens to the dummies inside. Most cars have airbags in the steering wheel that inflate in a fraction of a second in a crash.

Record-breaker

Cars like this are the fastest around. In 1997, ThrustSSC set a new Supersonic World Land Speed Record, traveling at 763 miles (1228.5 kilometers) per hour.



The body is strengthened to act like a protective "cage."

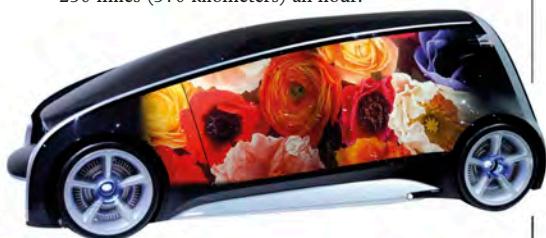
This door opens wide so that luggage can be stored in the back.



Tires grip the road in all weathers.

**Sticking to the road**

Race cars have low bodies, an airfoil or "wing" at the back that pushes the car down, and wide, gripping tires. These are all designed to keep the car firmly on the road at speeds of up to 230 miles (370 kilometers) an hour.

**Cars of the future**

Most gasoline engines are quite noisy and give off harmful fumes. Electric cars are quieter and cleaner, although their batteries need charging. Some futuristic cars, such as the Fun-Vii concept car (above), can even display pictures on their outsides.



Filling up with gas

These lights are used to tell the driver behind if the car is going to turn, brake, or reverse. They also show where the car is in the dark.



Pickup truck



Stretch limousine

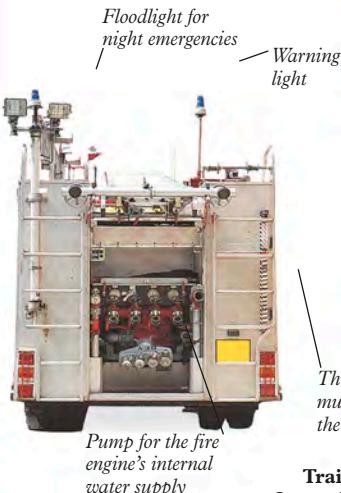


Camper van



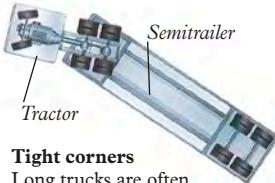
TRUCKS

Trucks come in all shapes and sizes, and do very different jobs. Some trucks are very specialized and are used for essential services, such as collecting garbage and fighting fires. Most trucks, however, are used for transporting goods. Trucks are ideal for this job because they can deliver things right to your door. Even goods carried by trains, planes, and boats usually need trucks to take them on the last stage of their journey.



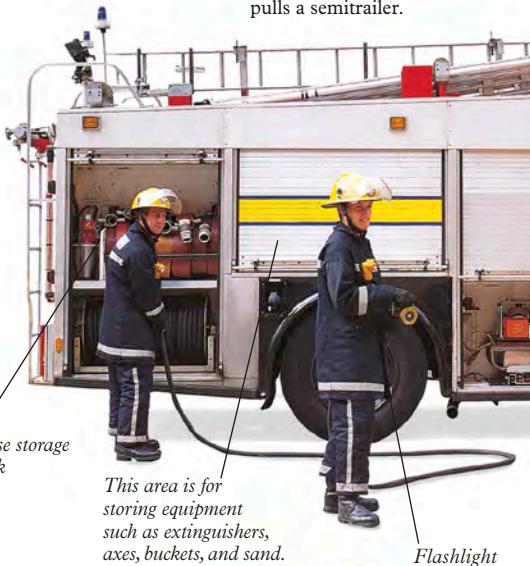
Trains without tracks

Some of the world's biggest trucks are used to transport goods across the desert in Australia. They are called roadtrains because one truck pulls many trailers.



Tight corners

Long trucks are often made up of two parts that are hinged so they can turn tight corners. The front part is called the tractor, and it pulls a semitrailer.



Big trucks



Amphibious truck

The equipment for cutting people out of crashed cars is stored in here.



Cement truck



Earthmover



Car transporter

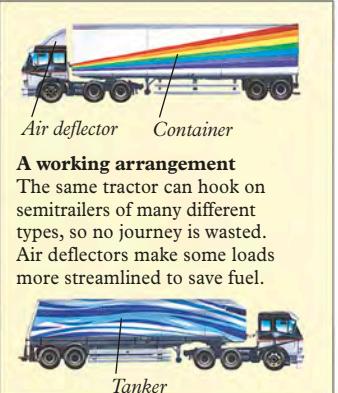


This reflective strip makes the fire engine easy to see.



Over the top

Trucks are not just used for work. People often race them and perform crazy stunts with them, too. This Big Foot truck is demonstrating how to flatten a row of parked cars!



Five crew members can sit in the front and rear of the cab.



Cab comforts

Cab Comforts
At night, long-distance truck drivers usually sleep in their cabs, in an area behind the seats. Some have only bunks, others have televisions, radios, and even ovens.

ELECTRIC AND DIESEL TRAINS



In 1964 the Japanese opened the first high-speed electric railroad. These “bullet” passenger trains reached speeds of 130 miles (210 kilometers) an hour, a world record at that time. But railroad companies earn most of their money by moving goods, called freight. Freight trains are often pulled by diesel locomotives, and they keep a lot of traffic off the roads. The world’s longest freight train had 682 cars and was more than four miles (seven kilometers) long!

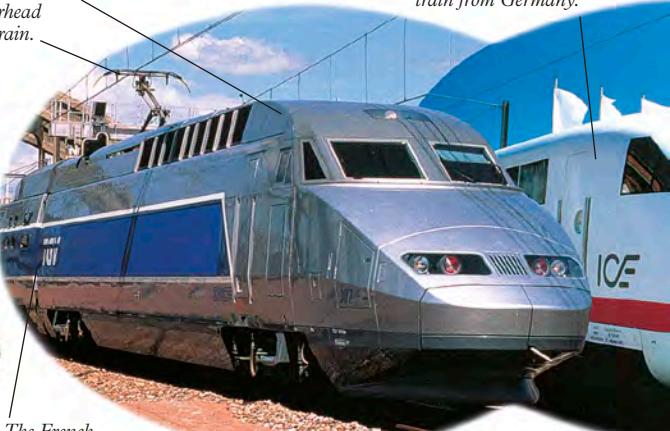
Pantographs pick up electricity from overhead wires to power the train.

On electric trains, the section that pulls the coach cars is called a power car.



Diesel power

Many passengers and goods still travel by cheaper, diesel-powered trains, such as this long Canadian railroad convoy.



The French electric high-speed train is called the TGV. On its regular route it has a top speed of 190 mph (300 kmh).

High-speed train routes are expensive to set up because they need a special track that has gentle curves.



Around the bend

Trains have to slow down to go around bends safely. Some trains can tilt inward on curves, just like a motorcycle leaning into a bend. This means they don’t have to slow down so much.

The Inter-City Express, or ICE, is an electric train from Germany.





At the controls

The control center for Eurostar is in contact with the driver of every train. Controllers can warn the driver about any problems ahead, such as delays, signal failures, and electrification faults. In this way, the control center keeps the rail network running as smoothly as possible.



A typical ICE has eight coach cars with 16 power motors and can carry up to 500 passengers.



The streamlined shape of electric trains helps them speed along. In tests the ICE has reached 215 mph (345 km/h).

Grand Central Station

The largest railroad station in the world is Grand Central Station in New York. It has two levels with 41 tracks on the upper level and 26 tracks on the lower one.



Coast to coast

One of the great railroad journeys of the world crosses Australia, from Sydney to Perth. The route covers 2,466 miles (3,968 kilometers) in three days and includes a world record 297 miles (478 kilometers) of completely straight track!



On the tracks

A variety of engines and freight cars use the railroad tracks of the world today.

Breakdown train



Snowplow



Passenger train



Freight train





UNDERGROUND AND OVERGROUND



As a city grows busier, the traffic on the roads becomes heavier and slower. This problem often can be solved by building a railway across the city, either over it, on tracks raised above the roads, or under it! There are underground trains all over the world, from London, where the world's first underground railway was built, to Moscow, where stations are like palaces. But they all do the same job—keep people moving.

No smoking

The first underground railroad opened in London in 1863. It used steam trains, but the smoke often made it impossible to see in the tunnels. The answer was electric trains, which were introduced in 1890.



A tight squeeze

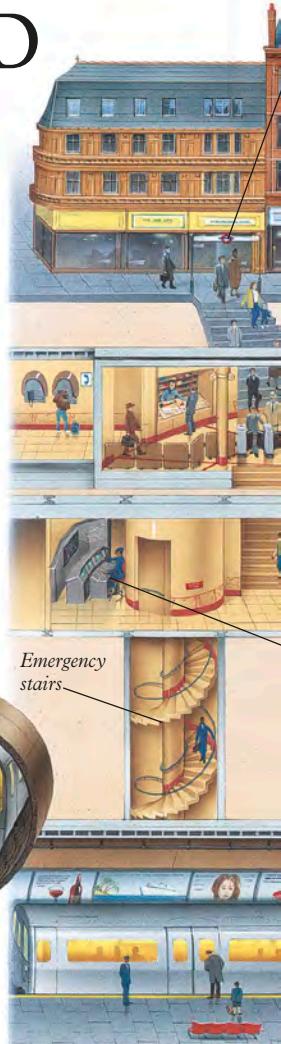
So many people travel on the underground trains in Tokyo, Japan, during the rush hour, that special "pushers" are employed to squeeze passengers into the cars.



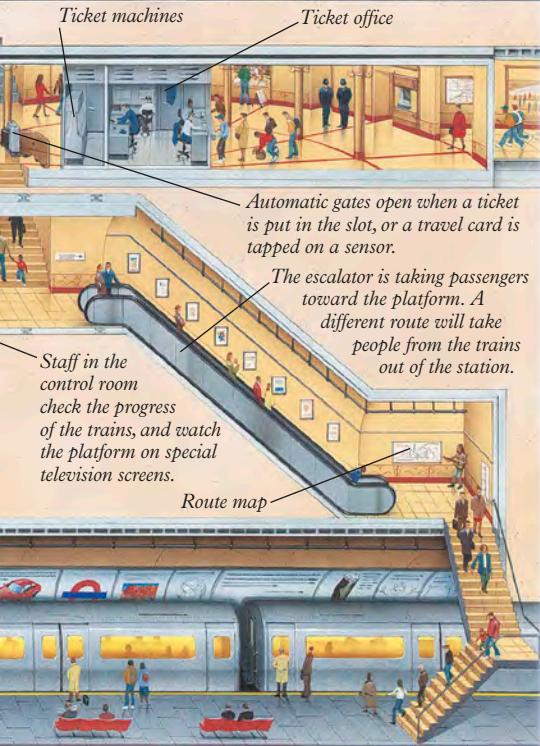
The London Underground is also called the "tube" because the deep tunnels are built using steel tubing. Tunnels near the surface are dug like ditches and then covered over.



Underground trains are powered by electricity picked up from extra rails.



Signs tell people where there is an underground station.



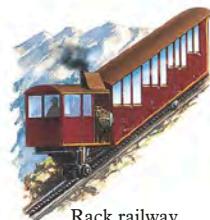
Riding a single rail

It is not always possible to build an underground railway system, so some railways run overground. Some trains run on top of a single rail, called a monorail.



Hanging on

Not all trains run on top of the rail. The first monorail was built in Wuppertal, Germany, and the electric trains hang from the line.



Going up!

Special types of transportation are needed for getting people up steep slopes.



Cable car



Funicular railway





SAILING SHIPS

Nearly three-quarters of Earth's surface is covered by water, most of it in the seas and oceans. For thousands of years people have been finding ways to cross this water. At first they built rafts, and boats with oars, but around 3200 BCE the Egyptians began to use sails. From then on, sailing ships ruled the seas until a century ago. Today, big ships have engines, but small sailing ships are used for sports, fishing, and local trade.



Sea charts

The sea often hides dangers, such as shallow waters or shipwrecks, so sailors must find their way using sea maps, called charts.

Across the ocean

For hundreds of years, sailing ships have traveled the oceans of the world for exploration, trade, and war.

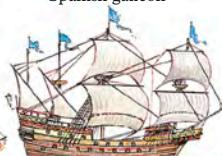
Sailors once used an instrument called a sextant to find their way in the middle of the ocean. A sextant helped navigate using the position of the sun or stars.



15th-century Portuguese caravel



16th-century Spanish galleon



17th-century merchant ship



China tea bundles

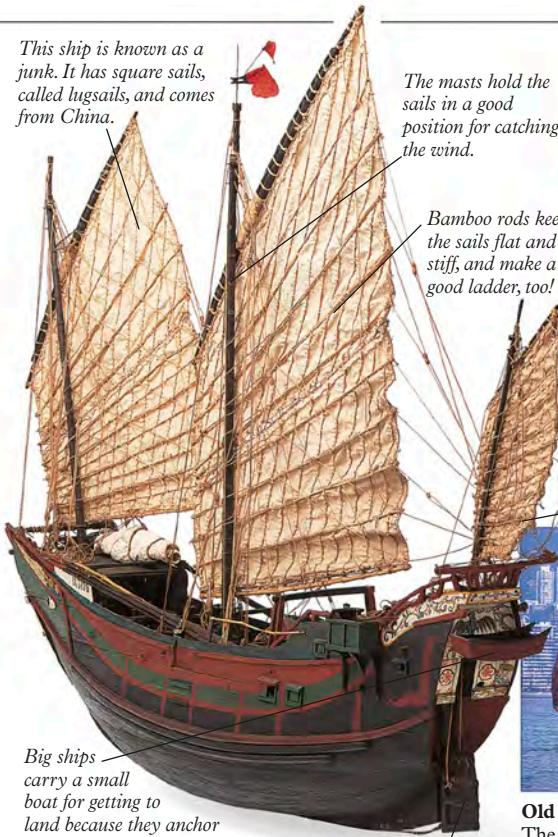
A ship's speed is measured in knots—one knot is about 1.85 kmh (1.15 mph). The fastest sailing ships were clippers, such as the Cutty Sark, which had a top speed of 17 knots. It transported tea from China to England in about 100 days.



Tall ships

Many of the great ships of the past have been restored and are used today for special "Tall Ships" races.

This ship is known as a junk. It has square sails, called lugsails, and comes from China.



The masts hold the sails in a good position for catching the wind.

Bamboo rods keep the sails flat and stiff, and make a good ladder, too!



Sailing to work

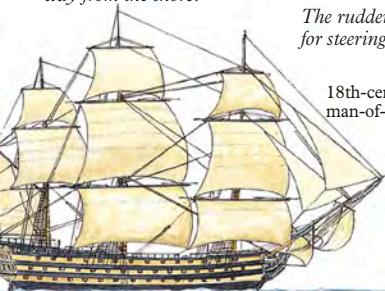
Many countries, such as Sri Lanka, still rely on small sailing ships for coastal fishing.

When the sails are full of wind, the ship will move forward.



Big ships carry a small boat for getting to land because they anchor in deep water a little way from the shore.

The rudder is used for steering the ship.



18th-century man-of-war



19th-century iron-hulled trading ship



SHIPS WITH ENGINES

Wind is not a very reliable form of power—sometimes it blows from the wrong direction, and sometimes it does not blow at all! But from around 1800, steam engines were used to turn paddle wheels or propellers. Steam power moved ships faster and was a more reliable way of transporting people and goods. Today, ships use mainly diesel engines, and their most important job is carrying cargo.

This part of the ship is called the bridge.

The cruising speed of a ship like this is around 15 knots or 17 mph (28 kmh).



In the dock

In modern ports, like Singapore, most cargo arrives on trucks and trains, and is already packed in containers. These are stored on the docks and can then be neatly loaded onto the ships by cranes.



Pull and tug

Big ships are difficult to control, and from full speed can take several miles just to stop. So in ports and harbors, small, powerful boats called tugs help push and pull big ships safely into position.



Propeller power

The ship's engine turns a propeller at the back of the ship. This pushes the ship forward. On a big ship, these propellers can be enormous.

A vacation at sea

Cruise ships offer passengers a luxury vacation as they travel. The biggest cruiser today holds nearly 9,000 people. It is the length of 4 football fields, and has 23 swimming pools and 24 elevators.

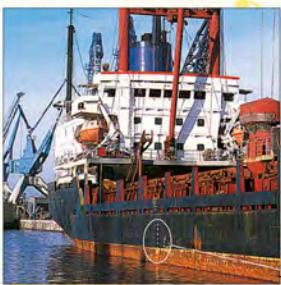


Containers are stacked in racks on the deck.



Ship shapes

The seaways of the world are busy with ships of all shapes and sizes.



A loading line

On the side of a ship is a row of lines called a Plimsoll mark. A certain one of these lines must always be above water or the ship may sink. There are several lines, as ships float at different levels in salt or fresh water, in summer or winter, and in the tropics or the North Atlantic.

Plimsoll mark

The front of the ship is marked with a sighting mast. Otherwise it would be hidden from the crew in the bridge by the cargo on the deck.



Save our souls

In an emergency at sea, passengers and crew put on life jackets and send an SOS signal. Rescue is carried out by a lifeboat crew.



Naval frigate



Roll-on/roll-off ferry



Oil tanker



SKIMMING OVER THE WATER



Most boats travel very slowly because the water itself creates a drag on a boat's hull, or body, that slows it down. But hovercraft

and hydrofoils just skim across the water, so they can travel at great speed. A hovercraft is not really a boat because it hovers above the surface of the water. It is also amphibious, which means that it can travel on both land and water.

Hovercrafts, like this Landing Craft Air Cushion, are still widely used in the military.

Fan boating

People get around the reed beds and watery forests of the Everglades in Florida using flat-bottomed fanboats. These have raised fan motors that do not get caught in the weeds.



What a drag!

Water-skiers can speed over the water, but will slow right down if they fall in. This is because water is more than 800 times denser than air.





Up and away
Hovercraft are also known as air-cushion vehicles because they float on a cushion of air.



When the hovercraft is sitting still on the tarmac, the skirt is flat and empty.



The engines start, and the skirt fills with air to become a thick cushion.



Hovering just above the surface of the water, the vehicle speeds on its way.



Super speed
Superboats have very powerful engines. They race at speeds of around 155 miles (250 kilometers) an hour—so fast that their hulls rise right out of the water.



Thin fins

Fins under a hydrofoil lift it out of the water so that it can skim over the surface at great speed.



Riding high

Catamarans have two thin hulls so there is very little of the boat in the water to slow it down.





PLANES WITH PROPELLERS

For hundreds of years people tried in all sorts of crazy ways to fly like birds and insects. But it was not until 1903, when the Wright brothers attached a propeller to a small gasoline engine, that people first managed to control a plane's takeoff and landing. Today, huge jet planes can fly hundreds of people around the world, but smaller, cheaper planes with propellers are still the best form of transportation for many jobs.



Fresh air!
In 1927 Charles Lindbergh made the first nonstop solo flight across the Atlantic in the *Spirit of St Louis*. Like all pilots at that time, Lindbergh had to wear warm leather flying gear such as a helmet, gloves, a coat, and boots to protect himself from the cold.

These propellers have three blades. As they spin around, they move the plane forward.

Skis have been attached to the wheels so the plane can land and take off from the snow.



Open cockpit



To the rescue

Light aircraft are relatively cheap to run and are ideal for transportation in large remote areas. In parts of Africa, for example, the only way doctors can get to their patients quickly is by plane.





Short take-off
Small planes only need short runways. This means they can go to places where larger planes could not land, such as this grassy airstrip on a mountainside in Nepal.



War and peace
Over the years, there have been many types of propeller-driven aircraft.



World War I triplane



World War II Spitfire



Cessna light plane



Floatplane

Fighting flames

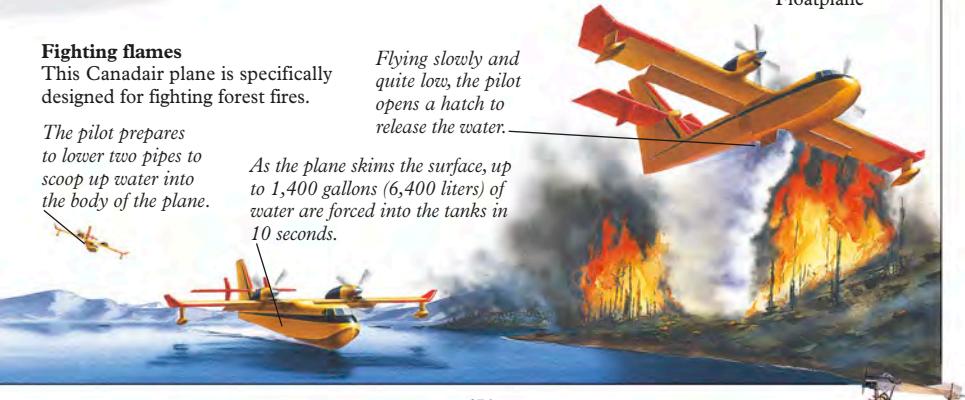
This Canadair plane is specifically designed for fighting forest fires.

The pilot prepares to lower two pipes to scoop up water into the body of the plane.



Flying slowly and quite low, the pilot opens a hatch to release the water.

As the plane skims the surface, up to 1,400 gallons (6,400 liters) of water are forced into the tanks in 10 seconds.





PASSENGER PLANES



The biggest airliner today is the Airbus A380, which can carry 853 passengers and enough fuel to fly 9,200 miles (14,800 km)—as far as England to Australia. Big planes have made flying much cheaper, and millions of people pass through the world's airports each year. The passengers simply step onto a waiting plane, but many jobs must be done to ensure every flight takes off and lands safely.



Join the line

The busiest airport in the world is Hartsfield-Jackson Atlanta International Airport in Georgia. More than 92 million passengers pass through it every year, as well as 950,000 planes.



Park it

Once a plane has landed, a marshaller helps to park it by signaling instructions to the pilot with brightly colored wands.

Special trucks pump fuel from underground tanks into the plane.

Airplane movement on the ground is directed from this control tower.

All sorts of vehicles are needed to take luggage, supplies, and freight from the plane to the terminal.

This plane can carry up to 116 passengers.



Top speed

The fastest passenger plane in the skies today is the Boeing 747, also known as the jumbo jet. The average 747-400 plane takes off at 180 mph (290 kmh) and cruises at 565 mph (910 kmh).



A room with a view

At peak hours in major international airports, there is a plane taking off or landing every 45 seconds. Workers called air traffic controllers carefully organize planes for takeoff and landing.



Curious cargo

Goods may be loaded onto a plane with a scissor-action crane or a conveyor belt. Some cargo simply walks in and out of the hold!



A good checkup

Before each journey the ground crew give the plane a good cleaning, inside and sometimes outside! Engineers check that the plane is in perfect working order.

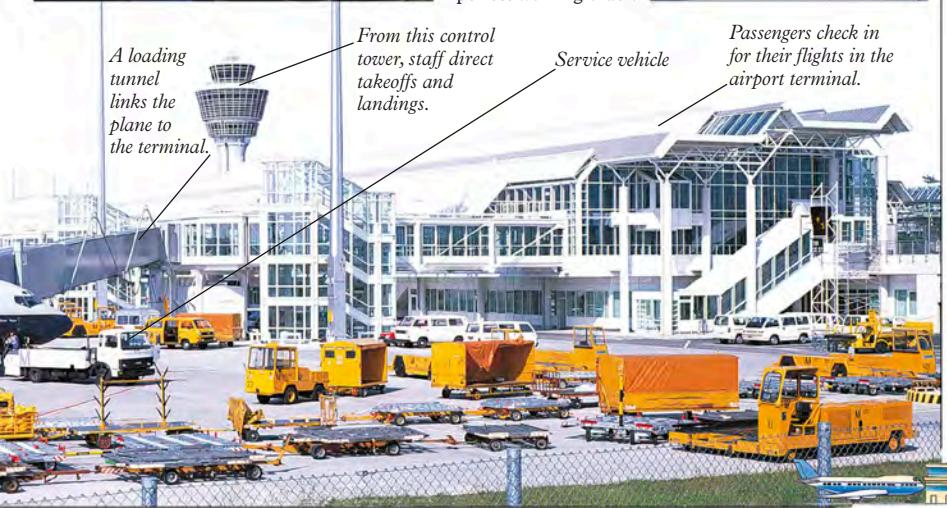


A loading tunnel links the plane to the terminal.

From this control tower, staff direct takeoffs and landings.

Service vehicle

Passengers check in for their flights in the airport terminal.



INDEX

A

abacus 293

Aborigines 301, 390, 391

ABS plastic 449

Achilles tendon 241

Africa 325, 348, 360-3

 animals 192, 193, 194,

 199, 210

 birds 173, 174, 182

Afrikaners 363

afterlife 258

agave 62

air 402-3, 412

 pollution 456

Airbus A380 472

aircraft carrier 422-3

air-cushion vehicles 468-9

airports 472-3

albatross, Royal 158

Albertosaurus 149

Aldrin, Edward "Buzz" 40

algae 57

Algeria 360, 361

All Blacks rugby team 391

Allosaurus 149

alloys 442

alpaca 213

alpine plants 71

aluminum 443

American Civil War 290-1

amphibians 57, 151, 397

Amsterdam, Holland 370

Amundsen, Roald 351

Andes mountains, South

 America 273, 359

angler fish 85

animals 57, 87, 259, 396

 breathing 232-3, 402, 403

 See also individual species

Antarctica 25, 178-9, 350-1

antelopes 187, 214

antler 72, 74

anthracite coal 431

ants 108, 120-1

apartheid 363

Apatosaurus 142

apes 198-9

Apollo space program 36-9,

 40-1

apple 60

archaeids 108

Arctic 25, 58, 160-1, 350-1,

 366-7

Arizona 51, 151

Armstrong, Neil 40

"Arnolfini Marriage, The"

 (J. van Eyck) 310-11

artists 271, 310-11, 383, 390

 Cook's voyages 282-3

Asanti kingdom 278-9

Asia 325, 326, 380-1

 animals 192, 193, 194

 See also individual

countries

Asimo (robot) 426-7

ass 208-9

Astaire, Fred 305

asteroids 35, 50, 150-1

astrolabe 267

astronomy 52-3

athletics 260-1

atoms 398, 436-7

Australia 11, 79, 288, 390-1

 animals 174, 188-9

 food production 336, 346

Austria 376-7

automata 426

Aveccini 70

avocado 77, 273

B

baby development 246-7

bacteria 57, 396

badger 174, 397

bagpipes 301

baileen whales 102-3

Bali, dancers 389

balloon 295, 306-7

bamboo 69

Bangkok, Thailand 389

Bangladesh 31, 386, 387

banj 301

banana 68

babob 69

barley 322-3

Barosaurus 133, 140, 142-3

bats 75, 154, 187, 202-3, 413

batteries 405, 417

Bavarisaurus 146

bazaar, Istanbul 364

beans 273, 343

bears 196-7

Beauchamps (ballet teacher)

 306

beaver 206, 207

bedouin 364-5

bee eaters 157, 175

bee 330-1

bees 74, 108, 124-5

beetles 109, 112-13

beetroot 340

Belgium 370

Berber 360

Bering Strait 350

Bhutan 386

Bible, Gutenberg 270

bicycles 418-19, 454-5

Bilund, Denmark 367

biology 394, 396-7

birch 63, 82

bird of paradise flower 75

birds 57, 86, 132, 141, 151,

 152-85, 221, 225, 397

birds of paradise 173

birds of prey 160, 180-1

birth 247

bison 214-15, 253

bitumen 447

bivalves 88-9

black holes 55

blackberry 58

blackbuck 215

blood 224, 230-1

blue tits 152, 159, 164

blue whale 84, 103

Boeing 747 aircraft 473

boiling points 401

Bolivia 358, 359

Bollywood 316, 387

bombs, nuclear 422-3

books 242, 243, 244-5

books 267, 270

botany 396

bovids 214-15

Braachiosaurus 140-1, 142

Brahmaputra River, India 31

braille 226

brain 224-5, 226, 240

brass 442

Brazil 201, 346, 358, 359

breathing 96, 232-3, 396,

 402-3

bridges 451

British Isles 286-7, 368-9

Bronzino, Il 310

bubble shells 88

Buddhism 274, 383, 389

burdigeridoo 152, 175

buffalo, African 215

buildings 450-1

Bunyols festival, Spain 372

Burj Khalifa, Dubai 450-1

bushtucker 38

butterfly 283

butterwort 67

C

cable car 463

cactus 58, 61, 69

calcite 22, 23

California 354, 435

camels 212-13, 268-9, 330

Camarasaurus 132, 142

cameras 314-15

Canada 288, 346, 352-3

 animals 194, 197, 215

Canadian plane 471

capsicum 342

capybara 206

car transporter 459

caravans 269

carbohydrates 238, 239

Caribbean 356-7

carnivores 194-5, 196

carnivorous plants 66-7

carrot 340

cars 355, 375, 444-5, 456-7

cartilage 97, 100, 245

castles 266, 376, 379

Cat on a Hot Tin Roof

 (play) 298

Catal Hüyük, Turkey 255

catalytic cracker 447

catamarans 469

catapillars 109, 114-15, 116

Catherine II, Empress of

 Russia 280-1

catkins 74

cats 192-3, 225, 259, 263,

 413

cattle 212, 214, 254, 330-1,

 358

caves 22-3, 26

 paintings 252-3, 310

cavy, rock 206

Central America 272-3, 325,

356-7

Central Europe 378-9

cephalopods 95

Ceratosaurus 135, 149

cerals 254, 256, 322-7

Cessna light plane 471

Chambers, Tommy 418

Chaplin, Charlie 316

cheetah 192-3

chemical industries 432, 446-9

chemistry 394

chillies 273, 343

chimpanzee 198-9

China 36, 310, 382-3, 422, 465

Marco Polo 268-9

 plays 299

 sugar production 346

chinchora 206

chipmunk 206

chiton 89

chlorine 447

chlorophyll 64-5

chocolate 272, 344, 357, 361, 370

Christ statue, Rio de Janeiro,

 Brazil 358

Christmans 266, 365

chromium 443

chraysil 116

circulatory system 219, 230-1

citrus fruits 336-7

clam 89

clementine 337

cliffs 23, 26-7, 171

clippers 464

clock astronomical 283

clothes 253, 332, 361, 364, 365

 protective 406, 455

coal 286, 287, 404, 405, 428,

 430-1

coastlines 26-7

cobra lily 59

cocido 373

cockatoos 141

coca 272, 344-5, 361

coconut 78-9, 328

cocoon 115

cocoyam 341

Coleophysis 149

coffee 78, 344-5

cocke 287, 403, 431

Collins, Michael 40

Colorado River 31

color 410-11

Columbus, Christopher 272

comedies 298

comets 50-1

compass 417

Compsoognathus 135, 146

computers 424-5, 434

conduction 406-7

Congreve rockets 36

conifers 83, 143, 162

conkers 76

continents 14-15

control tower 473

convection 406, 407

convection 406, 407

Cook, James 282-3

Copenhagen,

 Denmark 366

copepods 86-7

copper 442, 443

- Corythosaurus* 141
 coral 27, 84, 89
 corn 272, 277, 322, 324-5
 cosmetics 267
Cossacks 281, 380
 cotton 287, 291, 329, 385
 cowrie 89
 cows 259, 377
See also cattle
 crabs 84, 85, 86, 90-1, 243
 crane fly 111
crassula 81
 Cretaceous period 134, 135, 136
 cricket (the game) 368, 387
 crickets 122
 crop rotation 322
 crossbills 163
 cruisers 467
 crusades 266-7
 crustaceans 91
 Crystal Palace, London 287
 CT scan 424
 Cuba 346
 cuckoo 165
 cucumber 343
 cue clapperboard 316
cuestas 32
 cuneiform writing 256
Cunning Little Vixen, The (opera) 309
 currants 339
 cuttlefish 95
- D**
 da Vinci, Leonardo 271
 daddy-longlegs 111
 daffodil 81, 369
 Daimler, Gottlieb 454
 Daimyo 275
 dairy products 330, 331, 370
 Dalai Lama 383
 damselfly 127
 dance 304-7, 373, 380, 389
 Darby, Abraham 287
 Darby III, Abraham 287
 day length 350, 366-7
 decibels 220, 412
 deciduous trees 82, 165
 deer 212, 253
 deforestation 352, 388
Deinonychus 133, 146-7
 deltas 31
 Denmark 264, 366-7
 deodar 83
 deserts 32-3, 176-7, 342, 364
Devil's Marbles, Australia 33
 dhole 195
 diamond 399
 diaphragm 233
 didgeridoo 301
 diesel transport 447, 460, 466
 digestion 218, 238-9
Dilophosaurus 134
 Dinosaur National Monument, USA 137
 dinosaurs 57, 132-51
Diplodocus 135, 138
- distillation tower 446-7
 dogfish, prickly 99
 dogs 194-5, 333, 413
 dolphins 84, 104-5
 dormouse 204, 205
 dragonflies 108, 126-7
 dried fruits 339
dromaeosaurus 146
 dromedary 212, 213
 drums 300, 360-1
 Dublin, Ireland 264
 ducks 154, 159, 161, 169
 dung beetle 113
 dunrock 165
 dynamite 422
 dynamo 440
- E**
 eagles 172, 180, 181
 ears 220-1
 Earth 9, 10-33, 34, 35, 40-1, 49, 57, 84, 108, 152
 earth mover 459
 earthquakes 14, 18-19, 384
 earthworm 70
 Eastern Europe 378-9
 eating 238-9
 echinoderms 92-3
 echoes 221
 Edinburgh Festival, Scotland 369
Edmontosaurus 145
 eggplant 343
 eggs 158-9, 246
 Egypt 251, 258-9, 360, 464
 Eiffel Tower, France 287
Einatrieb 377
 electricity 286, 416-17
 production 430, 436-41
 trains 460-3
 electronic instruments 300
 electroplating 287
 elephants 187, 216-17, 221
 ellipses 48
 emu 182
 energy 404-5, 438-41
 geothermal 367
 nuclear 436-7
 engines 420-1
 England 292-3, 349, 368-9
 estuaries 27
Euoplocephalus 135
 Euphrates River 256, 257
 Europe 15, 252, 266, 346
 Renaissance 270-1
 European Union 370
 evergreen trees 82, 83
 Eyck, Jan van 311
 eyes 110, 222-3, 408
 birds 160
- F**
 falcons 160, 180-1
 fats 238
 faults 13, 18-19
 feathers 154-5
 ferns 60, 61, 63, 143
 fertilization 76, 246
- Fiat car works 375
 fig 63, 75
 fig wasp 75
 films 316-19, 387
 finches 156-7, 165, 175
 fingerprints 228
 fire fighting 458-9, 471
 fireflies 113
 fish 84, 86, 96-101, 225, 397, 403
 fishing bats 203
 fission 436
 flamenco dancing 304, 373
 flamingo, greater 167
 flies 109, 110-11
 flight 110-11, 154-5, 162-3, 168
 flint tools 252-3, 254
 flounder 85
 flowering plants 60-1, 72-6, 145
 flying doctors 390, 470
 foods 238-9, 263, 277, 404
 staple 322-47
 force 414-15
 forests 352-3, 388
 birds 162-3, 172-3
 fossils
 dinosaurs 136-7, 150
 fuels 404, 405, 430-5
 fox 194, 195
 France 284-5, 335, 348, 370-1
 cave paintings 252-3
 freight trains 460, 461
 friction 414-15
 frigate 467
 frogmouth 185
 frost 336
 fruit-eating bat 202
 fruits 76-7, 336-9
 fuel rods 436-7
 fungi 396
 funicular railway 463
 funnel web spider 128, 129
- G**
 galaxies 54, 55
 galvanizing 443
 gamelan 302
 games, outdoor 292, 368
 Ganges River, India 31
 gannet 170, 171
 Ganymede (moon of Jupiter) 47
 garlic 341
 gas 402-3, 446-7
 coal 286
 natural 404-5, 428, 432-3, 434-5
 gasoline 447, 457
 gastropods 88-9
 gazpacho 373
 gears 419
 gelada 186
 Gemini Titan rocket 36
 generators 440-1
 Genghis Khan 381
 geometrid moth 119
 geothermal energy 367
 gerbil, Indian 205
 Germany 376-7
- Ghana 278, 360-1
 ghost moth 118
 gibbon 198
 ginger 80
 giraffe 186, 187
 glaciers 20-1, 25, 28-9, 30
 Globe Theatre 296-7
 goats 215, 254, 330
 Gobi desert, Asia 213
 gods 259, 260
 Gogh, Vincent van 310
 gold 278-9, 442
 discoveries 272, 288
 Gondwanaland 15
 goose, red-breasted 161
 gorge 23, 31
 gorilla 198-9
 goshawk 181
 gourd 69
 granaries 327
 Grand Canyon, Colorado 31
 Grand Central Station, New York 461
 granite 21
 grapefruit 336-7
 grapes 338-9
 graphite 399
 grasses 322-7, 346
 grasshoppers 109, 122-3
 grasslands 174-5
 gravity 415
 Great Exhibition, 1851
 287
 "Great Trek," South Africa 289
 grebe 168, 169
 Greece 374
 Ancient 260-1, 296, 297
 Greek Orthodox church 374
 greenfinch 156-7
 green marble 11
 grizzly bear 196-7
 groundnut 78, 273, 329
 guanaco 212, 213
 Guatemala 349, 356
 guillemot 153, 171
 guillotine 284, 285
 guineafowl, vulturine 175
 guitar 267, 300
 guitarfish 101
 guns 422-3
 Gutenberg, Johannes 270
 Guy Fawkes night 368-9, 422
- H**
Hadrosaur 141
 hair 229
 hair seals 107
 Hajj 365
 Halley's comet 50, 51
 hand grenade 422
 harbor seal 85
 Hartsfield-Jackson International Airport 472
 harvesters 339, 341
 combine 322-3, 327
 hawks 180, 181
 hearing 220-1, 412-13
 heart 224, 230-1, 232

- heat 404-5, 406-7
 hedgehog 187, 190-1
 Hercules beetle 113
 Hermitage, The
 St. Petersburg, Russia 281,
 380
 herons 156, 167, 184
Herrerasaurus 134
 herring gull 170, 171
Heterodontosaurus 134, 145
 hibernation 190
 hieroglyphs 258
 Himalaya Mountains, Nepal 10
 Hinduism 305, 386
 hippopotamus 210-11
 Hiroshima 423
 holly 63
 Hollywood, California 316
 honey possum 74, 189
 honeybees 124-5
 honeyguide 174
 honeypot ants 121
 Hong Kong, 383, 465
 horse chestnut 63, 76
 horses 208-9, 252
 hospitals, field 290-1
 hothouses 342-3
 houses 277, 289
 Ancient Rome 262-3
 Houses of Parliament, London,
 England 368-9, 422
 hover flies 110-11
 Hovercraft 468-9
 Hubble space telescope 52-3
 human body 218-247
 humans 57
 hummingbird 75, 158, 173
 Hungary 379
 hunters 252-3
 hunting birds 160, 180-1
 HW-1 rocket 36
 hydrofoil 468-9
 hydroponics 71, 343
Hypsiphodon 141, 145
 hyrax 216
 Hyundai shipyard,
 South Korea 385
- I**
 ibis, scarlet 166-7
 ice 28-29, 398
 icebergs 25
 Iceland 15, 265, 367
 igloos 350
 igneous rocks 20-1
Iguanodon 144, 145
 illusions, optical 222
 India 316, 346, 349, 386-7
 dance 304-5
 Indonesia 302, 348, 388-9
 industrial revolution 286-7
 insects 57, 108-127
 insectivores 190-1
 Inter-City Express (ICE)
 460-1
 internal combustion engine
 420-1
 Inuits 348, 350, 353, 381
 Ireland, Republic of 368, 369,
 370
 iridium 151
- iron 286, 287, 429, 442-3
 Ironbridge, England 287
 iron-hulled trading ship 465
 Israel 266, 365
 Italy 349, 370, 374-5, 460
 Renaissance 270
 Ivory Coast 361
- J**
 jacana 169
 jackal 195
 jaguar 192
 Janáček, Leoš 309
 Japan 346, 384-5
 theater 274-5, 296
- jeans 355
 jerboas 204, 205
 Jerusalem, Israel 266, 365
 jet engines 420, 472
 jewelry 253, 279, 361
- Jews 266, 365
 joints 245
 Jordan 266, 342
 jungle fowl 173
 junks 465
 Jupiter 34, 35, 46-7
 Jurassic period 134
- K**
 Ka'ba, Great Mosque 365
 kagu 182
 kakapo 183
 kangaroos 188
 kelp farm 435
 Kenya 362
 kestrel 153, 181
 kibbutzim 365
 Kiev, Ukraine 264
 King's game 225
 "King Ramses II" 310
 kingfisher 168
 kiwi 182, 183
 koala 187, 189
 Korea 384, 385
 Krak des Chevaliers, Syria 266
 Krakow, Poland 379
 krill 87, 102, 178
 Kublai Khan, Emperor 269
 Kumasi, Ghana 278-9
 kumquat 337
- L**
 La Paz, Bolivia 359
 Lacroix, Christian 370
 ladybug 112, 340
 Lagos, Nigeria 361
 Lagosuchus 134
 lamprey 97
 languages
 See individual countries
 larch 59, 163
 laser light 409, 437
 Laurasia 15
 lava 16-17, 20, 21, 23
 lava 442
 leafcutter ants 120
 leaf insect 123
 leaves 62-3, 64-65, 82
 leeks 341
- Legoland, Denmark 367
 lemmings 204
 lemon 78, 336, 373
 lemur, ring-tailed 200
 lens 408-9
 leopard 187, 193
 leopard seal 107, 179
 lettuce 343
 levers 418
 lichens 61
 lifeboat 467
 light 49, 87, 350, 366-7,
 408-9, 410
 energy 404-5, 438-9
 photosynthesis 64-5,
 86, 397
- lily 66, 72
 lime 336
 limequat 337
 limestone 20, 22-3
 Lindbergh, Charles 470
 lion 192
 liquids 400-1, 412, 446
 Lisbon, Portugal 373
 liverworts 61
 living things 396-7
 llama 213, 330
 lobster 91
 locusts 122-3, 324
 logging 352-3, 388
 London, England, underground
 railway 462-3
 longship 264-5
 lorike, blue-crowned 283
 Louis XIV, King of France 306
 Louis XVI, King of France 284
 Low Countries 370-1
 "Lucrezia Pianciachi"
 (II Bronzino) 310
 Ludwig II, King of Bavaria 376
 lunar modules 37, 38-9, 41
 lungs 232-3
 Luxembourg 370-1
- M**
 machine gun 423
 machines 418-19, 440-1
 Machu Picchu, Peru 359
 mackerel 97
 Magellan space probe 42-3
 magma 17, 20, 21
 magnets 416-17
 magnolia 73
 magpie 153
 Magritte, René 311
 Maiasaura 132, 133, 139
 Malaysia 388-9
 Mali 361
 mallard 169
 Mallee fowl 177
 Mamenchisaurus 142
 mammals 57, 102, 106, 151,
 186-217, 397
 mammoth 252
 Mandela, Nelson 363
 mandrill 200
 Manitoba, Canada 323
 man-of-war 465
 manta ray 100
 manure 438
- Maoris 391
 maple 63, 82, 83, 347
 marble 21
 Marceau, Marcel 298
 ("Marilyn Monroe"
 (A. Warhol) 311
 Mariner 10 space probe 42
 Mars 34, 35, 44-5
 marshes 27, 166-7
 marsupials 186, 188-9
 matte painting 318-19
 Maxim, Sir Hiram 423
 Maya 356, 357
 mayfly 127
 Mecca, Saudi Arabia 365
 medicinal plants 267, 272,
 273, 383
 Mediterranean 265, 336, 372,
 374
- melamine 448
 melting points 401
 Mercalli scale 19
 Mercury 34, 35, 42, 49
 Mesopotamia 256-7
 metals 442-3
 metamorphic rocks 20-1
 meteors and meteorites 51
 methane 434, 435
 metronome 300
 Mexican hat plant 81
 Mexico 176, 273, 357
 sugar production, 346
 Mexico City 357
 Middle East 364-5
 milk 330-1
 Milky Way 9, 34, 54, 55
 millet 322, 325
 mime 298, 305
 minerals 238, 336
 mining 430-1
 miracle plays 296
 mites 397
 molding machine 448-9
 molecules 398-403
 moles 190, 191
 Molère 298
 mollusks 88, 94-5
 Mongolia 380, 381
 monkey 199, 200-1
 monkey puzzle tree 82, 145
 monorail 463
 monstera 63
 moon 24
 missions 38-41
 Morocco 360, 361
 Moscow, Russia 380-1, 462
 mosses 61, 396
 moths 114-15, 118-19
 motorcycles 355, 454-5
 motors 420
 Mount Furano-Dake,
 Hokkaido, Japan 385
 mountain ash 82
 mountains 12-13, 20-1, 28-31,
 33
- mouse 186, 204-5, 413
 movement 397, 404, 414-17
 Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus
 303
 mullein 73

Mumbai, India 386
mummification 258-9
muscles 218, 219, 240-1, 243
music 294, 300-3, 360-1, 369
musical instruments 267, 300-3
musket 423
Muslins 266-7, 365, 381
mustang 209

N

narwhal 103
nautilus 95
nebulae 53, 54
nectar 74, 75, 76
Nepal 386, 387
Neptune 34, 46, 48-9
nerves 219, 226-7
nests 156-7
net-casting spider 129
Netherlands 370-1, 454
Neuschwanstein castle,
 Bavaria 376
New Delhi, India 386
New Moscow Circus 381
New World 272-3, 276-7
New York 354
New Zealand 182, 390, 391
Newfoundland, Canada 265
Niagara Falls 438
Nigeria 349, 61
nightingale 164
nightjar 184
Nile River, Africa 31
Nobel, Alfred 422
nocturnal birds 184-5
nodding donkey 433
nonflowering plants 61, 397
Norilsk, Russia 350
North Africa 360-1
North America 176, 272, 276
 food production 325, 331, 347
North Pole 160, 416, 417
northern Eurasia 380-1
Northern Ireland 368, 369
Norway 264, 366
nuclear energy 405, 436-7
nuclear weapons 422-3
numbat 189
numerals 267
Nunavut, Canada 353
nymphaid butterfly 118

O

oak 59, 78, 82, 83
oats 322-3
observatories 53
obsidian 21
oceania 13, 24-5
octopus 84, 86, 94-5
Odeillo, France 438-9
oil 404, 405, 428, 432-3, 446-7
 Alaska 433
 Middle East 364
 vegetable 328-9, 446
okra 343
olives 328-9, 373
Olivier, Laurence 298
Olympic games 260-1

Oman 364
onions 340, 341
opera 308-9, 375
opossum 189
optical fibers 409
orange 336-7, 373
orangutan 198-9
orb web spider 129
orbita 48-9
orchestras 302-3
orchids 61, 73, 74
Orion (constellation) 53
Ornitholestes 134
oryx, Arabian 214
ostrich 158, 182-3
otter 187
owls 153, 160, 164, 184-5
 elf 176, 177, 185
oxen, musk 214
opeccker 174
oxygen 58, 96, 232

P

Pacific islands 390-1
Pacific Ocean 282
paella 373
Painted Desert, Arizona
 20
painting 310-11, 410-11
 caves 252-3, 310
 Renaissance 270-1
Pakistan 386, 387
Palestine 266
palms 64
pampas grass 61
panda 186, 196, 197
Pangaea 15
panpipes 301
panther 193
Papua New Guinea 391
papyrus 81
Paris 370
 opera house 308
parrots 152, 153, 172, 173
Parthenon, Athens, Greece 374
passion flower 60-1
pasta 375
Pavarotti, Luciano 309, 375
peacock 156
peacock moth 119
peanut 78, 273, 329
peccary 210, 211
Peking opera, China 299
Penan people 388
penguins 178-9, 182, 183, 351
pentathlon 261
percussion 302-3
peregrine falcon 180-1
perfume, red 161
Philippines 346
photography 286, 314-15
photosynthesis 64-5, 86, 397
physics 394
Picasso, Pablo 310
pigeons 155, 165
piggyback plant 80

pigs 320, 210-11, 334-5
pine 62, 77, 145, 162, 163
pineapple 273
Pioneer spacecraft 47, 52
pirates 389
pitcher plant 66
plaiice 97
planes 271, 470-3
planets 42-9

See also Earth

planetkin 86-7
plants 57, 58-83, 87, 396-7,
 403, 408
 medicinal 267, 272, 273,
 383
plastics 42, 447, 448-9
Plateosaurus 134
plates, earth 14-15, 18-19
platypus 186
plays 298-9
Plimsoll mark 467
plover, ringed 156, 171
Pluto 48-9

poinsettia 72
polar bear 196
pollen 72, 74-5, 76
pollination 74-5, 76
Pollock, Jackson
 311
pollution 351, 379
 air 357, 456
Polo, Marco 268-9
polystyrene 448, 449
polythene 448, 449
poppy 73, 76, 397
porcelain 268, 269
porcupine 206
porpoise, harbor 105
portraits 310-11
Portugal 370, 372-3
Portuguese caravel 464
Potala palace, Tibet 383
potato 80-1, 272, 273, 340-1
pottery 254, 255
power stations 438-9, 440-1
prairie chickens 175
prairie dogs 206, 207
prawns 91
praying mantis 123
primates 200
printing press 270
propellers 466, 468, 470-1
prosthetic makeup 319
proteins 238, 240
Przewalski's horse 208
ptarmigan 160-1
puffin 170, 171
Pugachev, Emilian 281
pulleys 419
pulsar 55
pulse 231
pumice 11
pumpkin 277
purse web spider 129
Puya raimondii 72
pyramids 258, 360
pyraustine moths 119

Q

quadrant 283
quail, Gambel's 177

quartz, shocked 151
Quebec City, Quebec,
 Canada 352, 353
quetzel 77
quinine 273

R

rabbit 186, 221
race cars 457
rack railway 463
radar 52, 137
radiation 436, 437
radio telescope 52-3
radish 340
rafts 468
railroads 286-7, 386, 460-3
rainforest 58-59
raisins 339
rapeseed 328, 329
raptors 180, 181
rats 204, 205
ravines, Tunisia 33
rays 101-2
razor shell 88
recycling cars 445
red monarch butterfly 116
redwood, giant 83
reed warbler 166
refineries 446
refraction 408-9
reindeer 253, 330
relay races 261
Renaissance 270-1
reproduction 246-7, 396
 plants 72, 74-81
repiles 134, 151, 397
Return of the Jedi (film) 318-19
revolutions 284-7
rhea 183
ribs 233
rice 326-7, 382, 388
Riesenrad, The, Vienna,
 Austria 377
rivers 20, 30-1
roadrunner 176
roadtrains, Australia 458
robin 153
robots 404-5, 426-7, 445
rockets 36-9, 41, 414
rocks 20-3, 29, 151, 442
 volcanic 17, 21, 23
rodents 204-7
Rodin, Auguste 295
roll-on/roll-off ferry 467
Roman Catholic church 373,
 375
Romania 378-9
Romany people 378-9
Rome, Ancient 262-3, 297
Romeo and Juliet 298-9
roots 64, 70-1, 340-1
rose 76-7
rosella 155
Rosetta mission 51
rowan 165
Royal Flying Doctor Service,
 Australia 390
royal jelly 125
runestones 265
Russia 265, 280-1, 380-1
Russian Orthodox church 380

rye 322-3

S

Saami people 367

safety lamps 431

St. Basil's cathedral, Russia 380-1

St. David's Day 369

Saladin 266

Saldasaurus 135

sampler 293

Samurai 251, 274-5

San Andreas Fault, CA 18

sand dunes 27, 32-3

sand gaper 88

sandgrouse 176

sandstone 11, 20

São Paulo, Brazil 358

Sarawak 22, 388

satsuma 336, 337

Saturn V rocket 36-9, 41

Saudi Arabia 32

saunas 366

sauropods 140, 141, 142-3

sawfish 101

saxophone 300

scallops 88

Scandinavia 366-7

Scelosaurus 141

scooters 372, 455

Scotland 301, 368, 369

Scott, Captain Robert 351

screws 419

sea anemone 84, 91

sea charts 464

sea cucumber 93

sea gooseberry 87

sea horse 97

sea lily 93

sea lion 107

sea slug 84

sea urchin 93

seabirds 170-1, 178

seals 86, 106-7

sedimentary rocks 20-1

seeds 72, 74, 76-7

germination 78-9, 343

seismology 19

Seismosaurus 137

semitrailers 458, 459

semipervious 81

senses 220, 222, 226-7, 234-5

flies 110

serfs 280, 281

sesame 328, 329

Seti I, King of Egypt 258-9

Seven-Five-Three festival, Japan 384

sexual intercourse 246

sextant 464

shag 171

Shakespeare, William 297,

298-9

shallot 341

starks 84, 97, 98-9

sheep 214, 215, 254, 320, 330,

332-3

shellfish 86, 88-9

ships 264-5, 385, 464-7

shoebills 167

Shogun 275

shrew 190, 191

sight 160, 223-3, 408

signing 220

silk 115, 268, 269, 310

Silk Road 268-9

silkworm 115

silver 272, 442

Singapore 388

siskin 162-3

skeletons 27, 97, 219, 236,

242-3

dinosaur 138-9, 140, 141,

149

Ski-doos 350-1

skiing 366, 377

skin 228-9

skull 236

slate 21, 293

slaves 263, 290, 291, 357

See also serfs

slopes 418-19

smell 195, 234-5

smew 169

snake's head fritillary 73

snow bunting 160

snowplow 461

soccer 375

solar power 438-9

solar system 48-9, 55

solenodon 191

solids 398-9, 412

"Son of Man" (R. Magritte)

311

songbirds 164-5

sorghum 322, 325

sound 220-1, 308, 412-13

South Africa 288, 289, 363

South America 201, 272-3,

301, 358-9

birds 166, 172, 183

food production 325, 331

South Pole 416

Southeast Asia 388-9

soybeans 328, 329

Soyuz rocket 37

space shuttle 37

Spain 253, 372-3

Spanish moss 71

sparrowhawk 165

Sparta, athletics 261

sperm 246

spices 268-9

spiders 108, 128-31, 346

spinning 333

Spirit of St. Louis (aircraft)

470

spitfire 471

spitting spider 131

spoonbill 167

springs, hot 16

spruce 83, 163

squash 277

squid 95

squirrels 206, 207

Sri Lanka 386, 465

stagest 309

stag's horn fern 60

stag's horn sumach 58

stalactites 10, 22

stalagmites 23

starfish 85, 86, 92-3

starlings 153

stars 52-5

Statue of Liberty 354

steam engines 420

steamships 286, 466

steel 401, 429, 430, 442-3

Stegosaurus 135

Steller's jay 162

stems 68-9

stick insect 123

stigma 72, 74, 76

stilt, black-winged 167

stingray 100-1

stomata 62, 65

stork 167

story telling 265, 305

Strauss, Levi 355

strawberry 77, 81

string instruments 267, 300,

301, 302-3

studios 315, 317

Sudan 361

sugar 291, 346-7, 399

Sugar Loaf Mountain, Brazil

21

sugarbeet 346-7

sulphuric acid 447

sultanas 339

Sumerians 256-7

sun 9, 24, 34, 35, 350, 366-7

sundew 67

sunflower 68, 272, 329

sunlight 86

superboats 469

supernovas 55

surface tension 401

swamps 31, 166-9

sweet pea 68

sweet pepper 342

sweet potato 341

sweetcorn 272, 277, 322,

324-5

Switzerland 376, 377

Sydney, Australia 390-391

opera house 308, 450

to Perth railway 461

T

Taipei 101, Taiwan 450

Taiwan 383

takahé 183

Talbot, William Fox 286

Tales of Beatrix Potter, (ballet) 306

"Tall Ships" race 464

tamarind 200, 201

tanager, scarlet 154

tangerine 336

tank 271, 422-3

tap dancing 305

Tarbosaurus 149

Tasmanian devil 189

taste 234-5

tea 344, 387, 464

tears 222

teeth 236-7

telion 449

telephones 353, 409

telescopes 52-3, 271, 283

telkin 88

temperatures 401, 407

tendons 241

Tenontosaurus 147

tenrec 191

TGV train 453, 460-1

Thailand 346, 389

thistle 69

thrush 164

Tibet 383

tides 24

tiger 192

Tigris River 256, 257

timber 352-3, 388

tin 442

tires 415, 444, 457

Tokyo, Japan 462

tomato 272, 273, 342

tombs, Royal 258, 360

Tonga 391

torque 235, 241

tools 252-3, 254

Torosaurus 135

totem poles 352

toucan 172

trade 256-7, 265, 276

Silk Road 268-9

tragedies 298

trains 287, 386, 460-3

transformers 441

transpiration 63

transportation 425-473

Transvaal daisy 73

trapdoor spiders 130

tree creeper 163

trees 60, 65, 68-9, 82-3

See also forests

Triceratops 133, 135

Triassic period 134

triplane 471

tropical sundial shells 84

trucks 458-9

truffle hunting 335

tsunamis 18-19

tubers 340-1

tugs 466

tundra 160

turnip 340

turtles 84

tusk shell 88, 89

Tyrannosaurus rex 134, 135, 136, 138-9, 148-9

V

ukaraks, bald 200

ugly fruit 336

Ukraine 380, 381

Uluru 11

United Kingdom 368-9

United States of America 354-5

animals 194, 196, 215

food production 326, 327,

328, 346

uranium 405, 436

Uranus 46, 47, 48-9

urn plant 80

Uzbekistan 381

W

V-2 rocket 36

valleys 13, 29, 30-1

vampire bat 203
Vatican city, Rome, Italy 375
vegetables 340-1, 342-3
 New World 272-3, 277
 oils 328-9, 446
Velociraptor 146
Venera space program, 43
Venice, Italy 268, 375
Venus 34, 35, 42-3, 52, 283
Venus flytrap 66-7
verdin 177
vetch 76-7
vibration 412-13
vicuña 212, 213
Viking spacecraft 44-5
Vikings 250, 264-5
vinegar 338
vines 338-9
Vinland 265
virtual reality 424-5
vision 160, 222-3, 408
vitamins 238, 336-7, 399
voices 309
volcanoes 14, 16-17, 20-1, 25
vote, sagebrush 205
volume 400
Voyager space probe 46-7, 49
vulture 180

W

wading birds 166-7
Wales 368, 369
wallaby 189
walrus 106, 107
waltz 304-5
warbler 158
Warhol, Andy 311
water birds 168-9
water power 33, 438
waterfalls 30-1, 438
water-skating 468
watts 441
waves 25, 26-7
wax 399
waxwing 162-3
Wayang Topeng, Bali 389
weapons 252, 274-5,
 276, 422-3
weathering of rocks
 20-1, 28-31, 33
weaver ants 120
weaver birds 157
weaving 279
 Guatemala 356
 Ghana 361
“Weeping Woman”
 (P. Picasso) 310
welding 445
whales 84, 86, 102-5, 412
wheat 254, 322-3
wheel 257, 418
whirlpool galaxy 52
white ermine moth 118
wildebeest 208, 214
Williams, Tennessee 298
willow, weeping 82
wind 32-3, 82, 154
wind machines 318, 336
windmills 439
wine production 338-9, 371

Winkler, Johannes 36
wobbegong 99
wolf spiders 131
wolves 147, 194-5
wood carving 352, 361
woodchuck 206
woodland birds 164-5
woodpeckers 158, 164, 177
woodwind 302-3
wool 332-3
wren cactus, 177
Wright brothers 470
writing 256, 258, 382
Wuppertal, Germany 463

X

X-rays 243

Y

yak 215
yam 341
Yanomami tribe, Brazil 359
Yap island 391
yarrow 73
Yucatán, Mexico 150-1
Yukon Delta, Alaska, USA 31

Z

zarzuela de pescado 373
zebra 208-9
Zen Buddhism 274
zinc 442, 443
zoology 396
zucchini 343
Zulus 363

& Architecture Collection: 256d,
260, 261c, 268b; **Aquila**
Photographics: C.Greaves 167h;
Archiv Fur Kunst und Geschichte,
Berlin: Musee du Louvre, Paris; **Arden;**
C.K.Brown 177l; D.Paper & E.Paper;
Cook 13x, K.W.Fink 209sa; F.Gohier
102b, 103c, 105c, 213b; C.Haagner
135, J.M.Ball 18sc; Mike Osmond/
Auscape Int. 102-3; S.Wedberg 170c,
R.&V.Taylor 98b, A.Warren 203cr,
199b, A.Wearng 239tr; **Art**
Directors: 352c; **ASAP:** Y.Mazur
365b; **Australia House:** 461bc;
Australian Picture Library: 371r;
Aviation Picture Library: Austin
J.Brown 268b; **373c; Hans**
Banziger: 119c; **Michael Benton:**
137lbf; **BFI Stills, Posters &**
Designs: courtesy Productions La
Fete Inc., Montreal; Canada 373tr;
Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris:
267c; **Cambodia:** Heard 292c,
62br, 68b; **Canary Islands:** 56b, 57tr,
106c; **Scuba 344b;** **Barry Campbell** 25,
Brian Rogers 29cr; **Birmingham**
Museum: **349c;** **Black Hills**
Institute of Geological Research:
Ed Gerken 138b, 139c; **BNFL:**
437crb; **Bridgeman Art Library:**
Bibliotheque National, Paris 310clc;
Christies, London 1993; Pollock-
Krasner Foundation 311cr; Forbes
Magazine Collection 287c; Galleria
degli Uffizi, Florence 310bcl;
Giraudon 306d, 310b, Giraudon/
Louvre 303b, National Palace,
Mexico City 272b; Guildhall Library
462c; **Macmillan Rodin:** Parke-Bernet,
National Gallery, London 311d;
Phillips 311bc; **Private Collection**
©ADAGP Paris & DACS, London
1993 311b; **Private Collection**
©DACS 1993 310b; Tretjakov
Gallery 280bl; **British Aerospace:**
424bl; **British Coal:** 430l, cr. 431tc,
cl, bl; **British Gas:** 434br, 435c;
Courtesy Trustees of the British
Museum: 250bl, 251bl, br, 258d,
258-9c, 259b, 259r, 260t, 261t,
278-9t, 357cr; **British Steel:** 430c,
442br, 443bc; **John Brown:** 447br;a,
© Canon 314d, 314bt; **J.Allan**
Cash: 43c; **Christie's Colour**
Library: 293b; **Bruce Colemen**
Ltd.: 170, 201, D.Austin 12c,
Janet 12, **Bartlett:** 141b, 182b,
Ervin & Page 141b, 175cr,
MLN 140t, 151r, M.J.Brockenhurst
122c, J.Burton 67b, 78cl, 113b,
194-5, 204cr, J.Cancalosi 325cl,
G.Cappelli 339er, D.Chouston 180tr,
A.Compost 198-9, E.Crichton 114b,
145b, 402d, G.Cubitt 66r, 69cr,
P.Davey 200c, A.Davies 200c, F.Frieze
107d, 178r, 206tr, DR.Leverson 102c,
MP1, Fogden 75d, 118r, Jeff Foot
61cl, 104-5b, 176r, C.B. Cowen,
D.W. Frith 64cl, F.Furlong 170tr,
J.Grayson 109r, D.Green 158tr,
F.Greenaway 171c, U.Hirsch 72b,
M.Katz 65hr, S.C.Kaufman 67br,
200, 347bc, 371c, S.J.Krasner 151b,
202-3b, 386b, ElBardissi 126c,
H.Lane 61tr, **Lanyon:** 171-6b,
F.Lanning 161b, 176, L.Lee 66br,
320r, 363b, M.Timothy O'Keefe
336bc, W.S.Paton 193tr, M.R.Philpot
137ra, 210cr, M.D.Plate 108b,
217cr, Dr.E.Pott 74cr, 329br, Dr.
Sandro Prato 67c, 115cr, M.P.Price
58-9c, A.J.Purcell 74b, 109tc, M.Read
130t, H.Reinhard 60bl, 71tr, 106bl,
210tr, 215tc, F.Sauer 123b, J.Shaw

162-3, 151tl, K.Taylor 117bl, 123br,
127l, 258b, N.Tomalin 192cr,
M.Viard 335cr, J.Visser 205cr,
R.William 119l, 141c, K.Wothe 69bc,
201tr; **Bruce Coleman:** 113c;
Colorado: 375-6, 378b; **Corset:**
469b; **Connacht:** 154b; **Corrie:** George Lepp
159c; **Corbis:** Aster/BSP 424cb,
Dave Buttruff 367bl, Blue Jean
Images 424-5, Tammy Chappell/Reuters
472tr, Leo Mason 472l; Tom Sibley
425br; **Deringate Theatre,**
Northampton 380tr; **DLP:** D.Heald
342-3c, D.Phillips 301c; **Droring**
Kindersley: Neil Fletcher 128, Kate
Howey and Elgan Loone of Kentree
Ltd, Ireland 426b; David Leffman/
Rough Guides 367cr, Gary Oberly/
Oxford Museum of Natural History
145cl, John Rigg/The Robot Hot
426b; **Dreamstime.com:**
Dreamstime.com/Christian Delbert/
Babara 760 375c; Michael David 425tr,
Dimitri 375c; **Drone:** **Frederick**
369c; **Hedstock 425c;** **Koldmannos**
Moraitis 456bl, 456-457c, 457b,
Pavel Losovsky 380c; **Manamedia**
425scr; **Ebenezer Pictures:**
J.Browne 383cr; **Ecoscene:** 449c;
ESA: ATG medialab 51c;
E.T.Archive: 288bc, 464r; **National**
Maritime Museum: 282d, V.W&
A. Museum 251; **Mary Evans**
Picture Library: 284l, 285trb,
287b, 314tr, 357c, 376cl, 422clb;
Gary Farr: Photo appears courtesy of
New Line Cinema Corp. 317cbr;
Chris Fairclough: 313tr, 330bl,
447tc; **Fotograph:** Patrick Athie
369crb; **Fine Art Photography:**
286c; **Focus Argenteuil:** 158-9c;
Michael and Paul Fogden: 457br;
Foods from Spain: 337b; **Ford**
Motor Co. Ltd.: 45sr; **Werner**
Forman Archive: Asantehene of
Kumase 279c; **Plains Indian**
Museum: Buffalo Bill Historical
Centre, Wyoming 276; **Footfax:**
Stocksnapper 355cas; **French**
Railways Ltd.: 461tr; **Fullwood:**
331c; **Christina Gaiscoigne:** 265tr;
John Paul Getty Museum: 262c;
David Gillette, PhD: 137l; **Getty**
Images: Ebrahim Adai/AIFP 319tc,
Oleg Albinsky 355, Andria 453cl,
Chabruken 248-9, Gianluca Colla/
Bloomberg 426ch, Charles Cromartie/
Bloomberg 451tr, John D. Gutfreund
366tr; **EY - Ernst & Young:** 456-5c; **ESA**/
Rosetta/MPS 51br; Flightlevel80
453ca, Romeo Gacad/GAP 389cr,
Gallo Images/Motivate Publishing
451cla, Chris Goris 224-225c
hadynyah 387bc; **The Image Bank:**/
Martin Child 450c, iStock Editorial/
csakisti 364b; **Jesúsdefuente** 310t,
Johner Images 363c, Jason Kempin/
WireImage 426-7, Kimimasa
Mayama/Bloomberg 457ra, mrbfaust
314fr, Bill Nation/Sygma 457l,
Nordroden 350tr, myshooter 457bc,
olrat 453bl, Joaquin Ossorio-Castillo
385cr, **Photographer's Choice RF:**
Franz Aberham 367c, **Pictorial**
Parade/Archives Photos 422c, Monty
Polk 414-5, 416-7, 53d;
Richland 351tr, Robert Harding
World Imagery/Eurasia 450fr, Joel
Saget/AIFP 450fr, sunaki 332bl;
Sankel 427tr, **Science Photo Library**
245tr, sdboxer 61cr, Stone/Arnulf
Husmo 366-7, suwich 130cr, Time
Stopper 442b/Yoshitaka Tsuno/AFP
427c, Universal Images Group/
Environment Images/UIG 424clb;

Giraudon: 285tc; **Ronald Grant Archive:** 317br; **EMI Film Productions Ltd.:** 306c, © Saul Zaentz Co., all rights reserved, Franco Duhamel: 318b; **S.R. & R. Greenhill:** 220c, 236cl; **Geoscience Features:** 165, 173, 151d; **Fin**

Haffmans, Robert: *Harding Picture Library:* 238, 27b, 252, 256br, 266bl, 271cl, 282-3b, 316r, 333tc, 342d, br, 347r, 353cl, 362d, 366r, 372cl, 374r, 343cl, 439cr, 444cl, bl, 445tc, 451br, 455tc, 463cr, 496l, tr, *Bildagentur Schuster/Meier* 379b, MJ, Bramwell 470-1c, P.Craven 380-1, G.Heller 385bc, J.Green 471b, D.Maxwell 232cl, C.Renner 382b, 381c, 455tr, W.Rawlings 370b, V.Southwell 257r, G.W.Milnes 370-1bc, 386cl; © E.Photofoto 290

Studio Internationale: K.Arthemy 355b; D.Donne Bryant 327tr, cr, Nigal Catlin 68cl, 78r, bc, 323b, 367-8, 333cl, 344b, 340tr, 343cl, 344c, 345br, Jurgen Dierschneider 329bc, Primrose Peacock 341c, Inga Spence 320-1c, 338-9, 393bc; **House of Marbles:** 292cl; **Dianne R. Hughes:** Biological Sciences, Macquarie University, NSW Australia 99tc; **Hulton-Deutsch Collection Ltd.:** 304c, 470b; **Robert Hunt Library:** 423br; **Hunterian Museum, Glasgow:** Malcolm McClelland 278bs;

Huntington Photo Library: 296b, 361b; **Samuel Edwards:** 363b; **Turner 325:** L.McIntyre 325tl, M.MacLaverty 302b; Stephen Penn 381d; John Ryle 358b; **The Image Bank:** 444tr, S.Allen 457crb, D.Bervin 366c, I.Block 390cl, A.Caulfield 4501, 371cl, G.M.Corian 137clca, A.Choisnet 308cr, M.Coyne 450d, G.Faint 280-1, 460bl, D.Fisher 412tr, Fotoword 377cl, Di Giacomo 332-3, T.King 468bl, R.Lockyer 308tl, N.Mascardi 392-3, R.Phillips 301tr, Andrea Pistolesi 356b, Barrie Rokeach 354bc, Marc Romanelli 301c, Guido Alberto Rossi 212r, 288rl, Schlier 445br, H.Schlesinger 460-1, M.Scaryd 472cl, J.Smith 441c, Harold Stoen 298-9, 383cl, Dag Sundström 367c, Jack Ward 209r, Frank Wining 338bc; **Images:** 239r, 234hl, 244cr, 287cr, 370cl, 390cl, 396cl, 404bl, 466tr, 467tr, cr, 472d; **Impact:** M.McQueen 422cl, G.Mendel 363br, M.Mirecki 373ic, R.Brybott 298r; **Jacana:** A.Le Garsmeur 382tr, Jean-Michel Labey 157c, Jean-Philippe Varin 159; **Kobal Collection:** 305r, 316cl, 317cra, tr, Warner Bros. 318br; **Ian Lambot:** 451tl, clb; **Frank Lane Picture Agency:** E.&D.Hosking 191tl, S.McCutcheon 28clb, M.Newman 160-1, R.Van der Linde 124cr, Frizzell 174b; **Leeds University:** 185c; **Legoland:** 365b; **Lodestar Martin:** 449r; **Magnium:** Abbotts 360tr, Eric Arnold 382-3a, Bruno Barby 294-5c, 373c; Fred Mayer 373bl, Chris Steele Perkins 359c; **MARS:** U.S.Navy 422r; **Marshall Cavendish Picture Library:** 267tr, 292tc, bc, Palazzo Tursi di

Genoa, Servizio Beni Culturali 268tl; **Michelin:** 415cr; **Massey-Ferguson Ltd.:** 321br; **Michel Muller:** © Henry Moore Foundation (1993) reproduction by kind permission of the Henry Moore Foundation 312bc

Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York: 426cl; **Museum of London:** 250b, 262b, 263; **Museum of the Rockies:** Bruce Sylvem 136b, 137br; **NASA:** 371, 39b, 40, 42br, 43, 47, 49c, 150cr, 415tr, 427bc; ESA and A.Simon (NASA Goddard) 47cr, ESA, and the Hubble Heritage Team 55cr, Goddard/GSFC 41, 11bc, 11bl, 11bc, 53c, 53a, 55br, JPL 46br, 52cl, JPL - Caltech 55cr, JPL/University of Arizona 45tr, JPL-Calech/R. Hurt 55bc, JPL-Calech/SNS 46c, 46cn, JPL-Calech/SwRI/JMSS/Asso of Major 47tr, JPL-Calech/Univ. of Texas/NASA 47tr, **National Geographic Society:** William E. Garrett 350hd; **National Maritime Museum:** 453br; **National Palace Collection:** Museum of Taipei, Taiwan, Republic of China 269br; **NATS Swanwick control centre:** 473cl; **Natural History Museum, London:** 137cr, cb, 138cl, bc, br, 283r; **Nature Photographers Ltd.:** Frank Blackbourn 180bl, K.Carson 166b, Hugh Clark 163b, A.Cleare 171c, E.Jane 167b, P.Steyer 335br; **Peter Newark's American Pictures:** 285br, 291tr; **Network Photographers:** J.Leighton 376cl, Barry Lews 378bc, 39c, Paul Lowe 44cl, D.Mill 369br, Linda Sparham 379cr; **NHPR:** Agency News 214c, H.Auslos 210hd, 403er, A.Bannister 75, 114r, 130bl, G.Bartmed 11b, Bishop 60cl, N.A.Callow 68l, L.Campbell 69crb, S.Dalton 75b, 110tl, tr, 116tr, 123b, 190clb, tr, 204clca, c, M.Daneeger 152c, L.B.Free 69c, S.Krasemann 113tr, M.Leech 205l, D.Middleton 83r, M.Morecombe 74l, L.H.Newman 175cl, A.Papazian 101b, S.Robinson 198c, John Shaw 74c, 82cl, 161c, 196cr, R.T.Iddon 159cr, M.Tweedie 113crb, D.Watts 178cr, Martin Wender 124c; **183ch: Nissan:** 445tr; **Osprey Media:** Films: D.Aldridge 107c, 176r; Animals: 214-5, B.Atkinson 88c, S.Bebb 208, Hans & Judy 202bl, G.Bernard 172r, Neil Bromhall/Genesis Film 247r, S.Camazine 128r, J.C.Cannon 179rl, Densey Clyne 121c, M.Colebeck 33c, D.Dale Photo Researchers Inc. 110b, B.Fredrick 126c, MPL Fogden 121r, 346cl, D.Lee 412b, S.Littlewood 114cl, R.Lynn/Photo Researchers 148tl, J.C.McDonald 188-9c, T.McHugh 188l, 147r, G.A.McLean 124r, Mantis Wildlife Films 114r, 120tr, T.Mitchell 230r, M.Mitton 128c, S.Mitton 192-3, P.Parks 186-7b, H.Reinhard 333c, J.H.Robson 156bl, E.Schaefermeier 104d, David Thompson 73r, 125bl, R.Toms 177r, Panos 363r; **Peabody Museum, Yale University:** 133bl, J.H.Ostrom 146br; **The Performing Arts Library:** Clive Barda 309br;

Dr.Chris Pellatt: 26; **Photostage:** Donald Cooper 298b, bl, 299r, 309tl, c, bl; **Pictor:** 31t; **Pictopoint Ltd.:** 361ca; **Pitt Rivers Museum, University of Oxford:** 251d; **Plane Earth:** Pictures: K.Antoniou 210-1b, K.Brown, J.Bragg 207tr, J.Bradbury 194c, 196m, May 192d, L.Coller 93bc, R.Comber 166cl, P.David 85cr, H.C.Heap 32, A.Kestech 91c, K.Lucas 95tc, br, 108-9, 198b, J.Lythe 88-9b, R.Matthews 201c, D.Perrine 88-9b, Christian Petron 89cr, M.Potts 31b, R.S.Rogoff 195r, A.M.Shih 192bc, PScoones 84-5c, S.Just 216bc, 216-7c, P.Stephen 94cl, H.Voigtman 100b, J.D.Watt 104bl, Norbert Wu 94tr; **Popperfoto:** 425c, 470cl; **Prephotos:** K.G.Preston-Matham 119b, 120bl, 122br, 131r, R.A.Preston-Matham 128b; **Quadrant:** 473cn, A.Dalton 446cl, c; **John Reader:** 194c; 359ca, 360cl, 361cl, 362cl, 389c, 391c; **Renasci:** 45c; **Retna Pictures:** J.Wesby 375c; **Rey:** **Shutterstock:** Disney/Kobal 315cr, 319cl; **Rex Features Ltd.:** M.Friedel 374cl, Stevens/Zimnig/Sipa Press 375clca, Sills/Par Atanol 370cl; **Ludwig Richter:** Gutenberg Museum 270c, bl; **Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew:** David Cutler 70br; **Royal Collection, St.James' Palace:** ©Her Majesty The Queen 280t; **Royal Geographical Society:** 351tc; **Royal Museums of Scotland:** 250br; **Scala:** 253tr, Irisa Museum, Baghdad 257td, Museo della Scienza, Milan 271, Museo Vittorio Veneto 271c, 272-3; **Science Museum:** 36-39cl, 44-45; **Science Photo Library:** A.Bartel 422bl, 438bl, 440-1c, Dr.Jeremy Burgess 399cr, CNRRI 243tr, 394-5c, T.Cradock 430r, 438-9bc, Fred Espanol 34-5c, European Space Agency 8b, 10l, Dr.G.Feldman/ NASA/GSFC 57b, S.Fraser 1c, 447tr, 150bc, Adam Hart-Davies 410c, Gary Hinck 214b, Kapteyn Laboratorium 52b, M.Martens 437tl, J.Mason 437tr, A.C.McCleugh 411br, P.Menzel 424bc, 460th, Prof.Motta/Degt of Anatomy, University 'La Sapienza', Rome 235br, 238tl, 410tr, Prof.E. Mueller 151bc, 152c, 153c, 154b, 151b, 142l, 414-423b, NGO 45b, Claude Nyridakis & Marie Parmentier 28d, cl, bl; D.Parker 18, Max Planck Institute 52t, E.Pritchard 452-3c, R.Ressmeyer, Starlight 436bc, 437bc, R.Royer 54-5, S.Ford 511, c, Dr.R.Schild/Smithsonian Astrophysical Observatory 54t, Dr.R.Spicer 150cl, S.Terry 21r, 42bc, A.Tsiaras 413tr, US.Dpt.of Energy 427br, 436tl, 437c, D.Vaughan 351c, E.Viktor 150bl; **Schwangau/Ostallgäu, Germany:** Tanner Nesselwang 376bl; **See Containers:** 469cl; **Survival Anglia:** Jeff Foot 211tr, 435bl, J.Slater 324c, J.M.Pearson 194bl, Alan Root 189cr, J.Ross 190tr; **Stein & Harry Smith Collection:** 337-341cl; **Smithsonian Institute:** Washington D.C.; **123br Society for Co-operation in Russian & Soviet Studies:** 281bl, hr; **Frank Spooner Pictures/Gamma:** Graham 370cl, T.Mackie 314cr, Rotolo 461cl, V.Shone 381bc, W.Volz

313br; **Staatliche Museen zu Berlin, PK Antikenammlung/BPK:** 260bs; **Standard Fireworks:** 409tl; **Steel Can Recycling Information Bureau:** 419; **Still Pictures:** B.C. Alexander 367c, N.Dickinson 388a, J.Schlesinger 388tr; **Tony Stone International:** 349cl, 350-9, 352-3, 355-6, 356-368cl, 377tr, 405bc, 428-9, 437c, Glen Allison 5r, 439tl, Chris Baker 186-7c, P.Berger 339cl, K.Biggs 405tr, Bryn Campbell 349bl, Paul Chesley 348cl, 345cr, 389, 462bl, B.Chittock 390tr, P.Correz 468c, R.Frenck 327a, Roy Giles 465cr, M.Gowan 382c, D.Hanson 354bc, D.Hiser 348bl, 353cl, 391c, A.Husmo 367b, 404cl, A.L'E Garsmeur 382bc, J.Murphy 466bc, S.Proehl 385cl, Olaf Soot 357tl, N.Turner 365cr; **Swift Pictures Library:** 252-3c; **Syngma:** J.Andersen 371d, T.Harber-Proken 470c, A.Gregory 370c, Gyori 376cl, James 365a; **Telegraph Colour Library:** 304cl, 402bc, Colorific/Claire Mayer, Camara Tres 358bl, Roger Ressemeyer, Wheeler 355tl, Masterfile/H.Blohm 351bl, 353cl, (John Foster 353a), J.Kraulus 352cl, v.c.l., 374br; **Tom Tom:** 425c; **Topham Picture Source:** 271bc; **Truck Magazine:** 459c, **University of Bristol:** Dr.Mervyn Miles 399r; **Courtesy of U.S. Navy:** US Marine Corps photo by Lance Cpl.Thomas P.Miller 5br, 468-9; **Jack Vartoogian:** 307tr; **Vauhall:** 445bl, **Vu Agence:** Christina Garcia Rodero 372cr, Max Whitaker 328cl; **Windmill Cinema Royal Library:** **610: Her Majesty The Queen:** 27c; ZEFA: 65bca, 192-3, 198bl, 229tr, 280s, 295tl, 312bl, 323cl, 329rs, 335cm, 335lr, 359ca, 364cl, 402tr, 406bl, 438c, 441c, 459br, 462bl, 465tr, Danno 30, 374cl, Davies 368tr, G.Deichmann/Translog 33b, T.Dimock 399bc, W.Eastgate 33b, J.Feingersch 409br, Freitag 160tr, Godel 351b, R.Hahn 401tr, Heintzel 168cl, c, Knight & Hunt 33c, W.McIntyre/Allstock 21, NASA 408tr, R.Nicholas 473tr, Rosenbach 27, Schlenker 358ca, Schroter 409tc, B.Simmons 312tl, M.Tortoli 123c, A.Von Humboldt 464cl, T.J.Zhejiang 344b; **Zinc Galvanising Association:** 443tl

All other images © Dorling Kindersley

For further information see www.dkimages.com

- tl - top left
- clb - centre left below
- tr - top right
- crb - centre right below
- cla - centre left above
- bl - bottom left
- cra - centre right above
- cr - bottom right
- tc - top centre
- ca - centre
- cb - centre below
- cl - centre left
- bc - bottom centre
- f - far